STC12C5410AD series MCU
STC12LE5410AD series MCU
Data Sheet

STC MCU Limited
www.STCMCU.com

Update date: 2011-7-15
6.4 How Interrupts Are Handled ................................................................. 139
6.5 External Interrupts .............................................................................. 140
6.6 Response Time .................................................................................. 144
6.7 Demo Programs about Interrupts (C and ASM) ................................... 145
   6.7.1 External Interrupt 0 (INT0) Demo Programs (C and ASM) ........ 145
   6.7.2 External Interrupt 1 (INT1) Demo Programs (C and ASM) ....... 149
   6.7.3 Programs of P3.4/T0 Interrupt (falling edge) used to wake up PD mode .... 153
   6.7.4 Programs of P3.5/T1 Interrupt (falling edge) used to wake up PD mode .... 155
   6.7.5 Program of P3.0/RxD Interrupt (falling edge) used to wake up PD mode .... 157
   6.7.6 Program of PCA Interrupt used to wake up Power Down mode ......... 160

Chapter 7. Timer/Counter 0/1 ................................................................. 164
7.1 Special Function Registers about Timer/Counter ................................ 164
7.2 Timer/Counter 0 Mode of Operation (Compatible with traditional 8051 MCU) .... 168
   7.2.1 Mode 0 (13-bit Timer/Counter) ....................................................... 168
   7.2.2 Mode 1 (16-bit Timer/Counter) and Demo Programs (C and ASM) ...... 169
   7.2.3 Mode 2 (8-bit Auto-Reload Mode) and Demo Programs (C and ASM) .. 173
   7.2.4 Mode 3 (Two 8-bit Timers/Couters) ................................................ 176
7.3 Timer/Counter 1 Mode of Operation .................................................. 177
   7.3.1 Mode 0 (13-bit Timer/Counter) ....................................................... 177
   7.3.2 Mode 1 (16-bit Timer/Counter) and Demo Programs (C and ASM) ...... 178
   7.3.3 Mode 2 (8-bit Auto-Reload Mode) and Demo Programs (C and ASM) .. 182
7.4 Programmable Clock Output and Demo Programs (C and ASM) ....... 185
   7.4.1 Timer 0 Programmable Clock-out on P1.0 and Demo Program(C and ASM). 187
   7.4.2 Timer 1 Programmable Clock-out on P1.1 and Demo Program(C and ASM). 190
7.5 Application note for Timer in practice ............................................... 193

Chapter 8. UART with Enhanced Function ........................................... 194
8.1 Special Function Registers about UART ............................................ 194
8.2 UART1 Operation Modes ................................................................. 198
   8.2.1 Mode 0: 8-Bit Shift Register ....................................................... 198
   8.2.2 Mode 1: 8-Bit UART with Variable Baud Rate ............................ 200
   8.2.3 Mode 2: 9-Bit UART with Fixed Baud Rate ................................. 202
   8.2.4 Mode 3: 9-Bit UART with Variable Baud Rate ............................ 204
8.3 Frame Error Detection .................................................................... 206
8.4 Multiprocessor Communications ....................................................... 206
8.5 Automatic Address Recognition ....................................................... 207
Chapter 9. Analog to Digital Converter .................................216
9.1 A/D Converter Structure .................................................216
9.2 Registers for ADC ........................................................218
9.3 Application Circuit of A/D Converter ..............................221
9.4 ADC Application Circuit for Key Scan .........................222
9.5 A/D reference voltage source ........................................223
9.6 Program using interrupts to demonstrate A/D Conversion ...224
9.7 Program using polling to demonstrate A/D Conversion .......230

Chapter 10. Programmable Counter Array(PCA) ..................236
10.1 SFRs related with PCA ..................................................236
10.2 PCA/PWM Structure ....................................................243
10.3 PCA Modules Operation Mode .....................................245
  10.3.1 PCA Capture Mode ................................................245
  10.3.2 16-bit Software Timer Mode ...................................246
  10.3.3 High Speed Output Mode .......................................247
  10.3.4 Pulse Width Modulator Mode (PWM mode) ...............248
10.4 Programs for PCA module extended external interrupt ...249
10.5 Demo Programs for PCA module acted as 16-bit Timer .....253
10.6 Programs for PCA module as 16-bit High Speed Output ...257
10.7 Demo Programs for PCA module as PWM Output (C and ASM) ... 261
10.8 Demo Program for PCA clock base on Timer 1 overflow rate ... 265
10.9 Using PWM achieve D/A Conversion function reference circuit ... 269

Chapter 11. Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) .........................270
11.1 Special Function Registers related with SPI ....................270
11.2 SPI Structure ............................................................273
11.3 SPI Data Communication .............................................274
  11.3.1 SPI Configuration .................................................274
  11.3.2 SPI Data Communication Modes .............................275
  11.3.3 SPI Data Modes ....................................................277
11.4 SPI Function Demo Programs (Single Master — Single Slave) .... 279
  11.4.1 SPI Function Demo Programs using Interrupts (C and ASM) .... 279
  11.4.2 SPI Function Demo Programs using Polling (C and ASM) ....... 285
Chapter 1. Introduction

STC12C5410AD is a single-chip microcontroller based on a high performance 1T architecture 8051 CPU, which is produced by STC MCU Limited. With the enhanced kernel, STC12C5410AD executes instructions in 1~6 clock cycles (about 8~12 times the rate of a standard 8051 device), and has a fully compatible instruction set with industrial-standard 8051 series microcontroller. In-System-Programming (ISP) and In-Application-Programming (IAP) support the users to upgrade the program and data in system. ISP allows the user to download new code without removing the microcontroller from the actual end product; IAP means that the device can write non-volatile data in Flash memory while the application program is running. The STC12C5410AD retains all features of the standard 80C51. In addition, the STC12C5410AD has a 9-sources, 4-priority-level interrupt structure, 10-bit ADC(100 thousands times per second), on-chip crystal oscillator, MAX810 special reset circuit, 4-channel PCA and PWM, SPI, a one-time enabled Watchdog Timer and so on.

1.1 Features

- Enhanced 8051 Central Processing Unit, 1T per machine cycle, faster 8~12 times than the rate of a standard 8051.
- Operating voltage range: 5.5V ~ 3.5V or 2.2V ~ 3.6V (STC12LE5410AD).
- Operating frequency range: 0-35MHz, is equivalent to standard 8051:0~420MHz
- On-chip 12K/10K/8K/6K/4K/2K/1K FLASH program memory with flexible ISP/IAP capability
- On-chip 512 byte RAM
- Power control: idle mode (can be waked up by any interrupt) and power-down mode (can be waked up by external interrupts).
- Code protection for flash memory access
- Excellent noise immunity, very low power consumption
- six 16-bit timer/counter, be compatible with Timer0/Timer1 of standard 8051, 4-channel PCA can be available as four timers.
- 9 vector-address, 4 level priority interrupt capability
- One enhanced UART with hardware address-recognition and frame-error detection function
- One 15 bits Watch-Dog-Timer with 8-bit pre-scaler (one-time-enabled)
- SPI Master/Slave communication interface
- Four channel Programmable Counter Array (PCA)
- 10-bit, 8-channel high-speed Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC), up to 100 thousands times per second
- Simple internal RC oscillator and external crystal clock
- Three power management modes: idle mode, slow down mode and power-down mode
- Power down mode can be woken-up by P3.2/INT0, P3.3/INT1, P3.4/T0, P3.5/T1, P3.0/RxD, P3.7/PCA0, and P3.5/PCA1, PCA2/P2.0, PCA3/P2.4
- Operation Temperature: -40 ~ + 85°C (industrial) / 0 ~ 75°C (Commercial)
- Common (27/23/15) programmable I/O ports are available
- Programmable clock output Function. T0 output the clock on P1.0, T1 output the clock on P1.1.
1.2 Block diagram

The CPU kernel of STC12C5410AD is fully compatible to the standard 8051 microcontroller, maintains all instruction mnemonics and binary compatibility. With some great architecture enhancements, STC12C5410AD executes the fastest instructions per clock cycle. Improvement of individual programs depends on the actual instructions used.
1.3 Pin Configurations

All packages meet the European Union RoHS standards. LQFP-32 also conform to the Green standard.

Packages such as SOP-20/28/32 and LQFP-32 are strongly recommended though the traditional DIP packages are steady supplied.

---

STC12C5410AD series (with A/D Converter), SOP-32

STC12C5410 series (without A/D Converter), SOP-32

LQFP-32 Package: length×width = 9mm×9mm, height < 1.6mm

---

STC12C5410AD series (with A/D Converter), LQFP-32

STC12C5410 series (without A/D Converter), LQFP-32
STC12C5410AD series (with A/D Converter), 28-Pin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pin</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>RST</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>VCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>RxD/P3.0</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>P1.7/SCLK/ADC7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>TxD/P3.1</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>P1.6/MISO/ADC6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>XTAL2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>P1.5/MOSI/ADC5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>XTAL1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>P1.4/S5/ADC4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>INT0/P3.2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>P1.3/ADC3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>INT1/P3.3</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>P1.2/ADC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ECI/T0/P3.4</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>P1.1/ADC0/CLKOUT0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>PWM1/PCA1/T1/P3.5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>P1.0/ADC0/CLKOUT0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Gnd</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P3.7/PCA0/PWM0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>P2.5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>P2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>P2.8</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>P2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>P2.9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>P3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>P3.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>P3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>P3.1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>P3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>P3.2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>P3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>P3.3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>P3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28 I/O ports

Super small package: TSSOP-28, 6.4mm×6.4mm

STC12C5410 series (without A/D Converter), 28-Pin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pin</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>RST</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>VCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>RxD/P3.0</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>P1.7/SCLK/ADC7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>TxD/P3.1</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>P1.6/MISO/ADC6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>XTAL2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>P1.5/MOSI/ADC5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>XTAL1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>P1.4/S5/ADC4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>INT0/P3.2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>P1.3/ADC3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>INT1/P3.3</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>P1.2/ADC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ECI/T0/P3.4</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>P1.1/ADC0/CLKOUT0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>PWM1/PCA1/T1/P3.5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>P1.0/ADC0/CLKOUT0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Gnd</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P3.7/PCA0/PWM0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>P2.5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>P2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>P2.8</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>P2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>P2.9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>P3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>P3.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>P3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>P3.1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>P3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>P3.2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>P3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>P3.3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>P3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28 I/O ports

Super small package: TSSOP-20, 6.4mm×6.4mm

STC12C5410AD series (with A/D Converter), 20-Pin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pin</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Pin</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>RST</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>VCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>RxD/P3.0</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>P1.7/SCLK/ADC7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>TxD/P3.1</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>P1.6/MISO/ADC6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>XTAL2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>P1.5/MOSI/ADC5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>XTAL1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>P1.4/S5/ADC4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>INT0/P3.2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>P1.3/ADC3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>INT1/P3.3</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>P1.2/ADC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ECI/T0/P3.4</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>P1.1/ADC0/CLKOUT0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>PWM1/PCA1/T1/P3.5</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>P1.0/ADC0/CLKOUT0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Gnd</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P3.7/PCA0/PWM0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>P2.5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>P2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>P2.8</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>P2.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>P2.9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>P3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>P3.0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>P3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>P3.1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>P3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>P3.2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>P3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>P3.3</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>P3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15 I/O ports
## 1.4 STC12C5410AD series Selection Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Operation Voltage (V)</th>
<th>Flash (Byte)</th>
<th>SRAM (Byte)</th>
<th>Timer T0&amp;T1</th>
<th>PCA Timer</th>
<th>Programmable Clock Output</th>
<th>U A R T</th>
<th>EEPROM</th>
<th>16-bit PCA/8-bit PWM D/A</th>
<th>A/D 8-ch</th>
<th>T0&amp;T1</th>
<th>SPI</th>
<th>Package of 20-Pin (15 I/O ports)</th>
<th>Package of 28-Pin (23 I/O ports)</th>
<th>Package of 32-Pin (27 I/O ports)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5401</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>1K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4-ch</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/SKDIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5401AD</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>1K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5402</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>2K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4-ch</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5402AD</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>2K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5404</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>4K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4-ch</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5404AD</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>4K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5406</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>6K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4-ch</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5406AD</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>6K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5408</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>8K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4-ch</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5408AD</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>8K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5410</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>10K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4-ch</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5410AD</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>10K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5412</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5412AD</td>
<td>5.5-3.5</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>10-bit</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>SOP/LSSOP/DIP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
<td>SOP/LQFP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Fax: 86-755-82905966
Tel: 86-755-82948412
www.STCMCU.com
1.5 STC12C5410AD series Minimum Application System

When the frequency of crystal oscillator is lower than 12MHz, it is suggested not to use C1 and R1 replaced by 1K resistor connect to ground. But R/C reset circuit is also suggest to reserve.

About crystals circuit:
If using internal R/C oscillator clock (4MHz ~ 8MHz, manufacturing error), XTAL1 and XTAL2 pin should be floated.
If External clock frequency is higher than 33MHz, it is recommended to directly use external active crystals which clock are input from XTAL1 pin and XTAL2 pin must be floated.
1.6 **STC12C5410AD series MCU Typical Application Circuit for ISP**

---

**STC12C5410AD series MCU (28 pin) Typical Application Circuit for ISP**

Users are suggested stay this interface on the system, which can be convenient download the users program online.

This circuit has been made as a STC12C5410AD series microcontroller ISP download programming tool.
Users in their target system, such as the P3.0/P3.1 through the RS-232 level shifter connected to the computer after the conversion of ordinary RS-232 serial port to connect the system programming / upgrading client software. If the user panel recommended no RS-232 level converter, should lead to a socket, with Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc four signal lines, so that the user system can be programmed directly. Of course, if the six signal lines can lead to Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0 as well, because you can download the program by P1.0/P1.1 ISP ban. If you can Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0/Reset seven signal lines leads to better, so you can easily use "offline download board (no computer)".

ISP programming on the Theory and Application Guide to see "STC12C5410AD Series MCU Development / Programming Tools Help"section. In addition, we have standardized programming download tool, the user can then program into the goal in the above systems, you can borrow on top of it RS-232 level shifter connected to the computer to download the program used to do. Programming a chip roughly be a few seconds, faster than the ordinary universal programmer much faster, there is no need to buy expensive third-party programmer?.

PC STC-ISP software downloaded from the website www.STCMCU.com
1.6.2 STC12C5410AD series MCU (20 pin) Typical Application Circuit for ISP

This circuit has been made as a STC12C5410AD series microcontroller ISP download programming tool.

If using internal R/C oscillator clock (4MHz ~ 8MHz, manufacturing error), XTAL1 and XTAL2 pin should be floated.

If External clock frequency is higher than 33MHz, it is recommended to directly use external active crystals which clock are input from XTAL1 pin and XTAL2 pin must be floated.

When the frequency of crystal oscillator is lower than 12MHz, it is suggested not to use C1 and R1 replaced by 1K resistor connect to ground. But R/C reset circuit is also suggest to reserve.
Users in their target system, such as the P3.0/P3.1 through the RS-232 level shifter connected to the computer after the conversion of ordinary RS-232 serial port to connect the system programming / upgrading client software. If the user panel recommended no RS-232 level converter, should lead to a socket, with Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc four signal lines, so that the user system can be programmed directly. Of course, if the six signal lines can lead to Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0 as well, because you can download the program by P1.0/P1.1 ISP ban. If you can Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0/Reset seven signal lines leads to better, so you can easily use "offline download board (no computer)".

ISP programming on the Theory and Application Guide to see "STC12C5410AD Series MCU Development / Programming Tools Help" section. In addition, we have standardized programming download tool, the user can then program into the goal in the above systems, you can borrow on top of it RS-232 level shifter connected to the computer to download the program used to do. Programming a chip roughly be a few seconds, faster than the ordinary universal programmer much faster, there is no need to buy expensive third-party programmer?.

PC STC-ISP software downloaded from the website www.STCMCU.com
1.6.3 STC12C5410AD series MCU (32 pin) Typical Application Circuit for ISP

Users are suggested hold this interface on the system, which can be convenient to download the users program online.

Download user procedure to STC MCU by the software STC-ISP programmer

The determinant key scanning circuit. Adding current limiting resistor n both sides of determinant is suggested.

24C02/12C bus OC doors open-drain circuits need to add pull-up resistors)

93C46 (SPI bus OC doors open-drain circuits need to add pull-up resistors)
## 1.7 Pin Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MNEMONIC</th>
<th>Pin Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P0.0</td>
<td>2, 6</td>
<td>common I/O port PORT0[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0.1</td>
<td>6, 10</td>
<td>common I/O port PORT0[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0.2</td>
<td>19, 23</td>
<td>common I/O port PORT0[2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0.3</td>
<td>22, 26</td>
<td>common I/O port PORT0[3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.0/ADC0/CLKOUT0</td>
<td>16, 20, 18, 12</td>
<td>P1.0 common I/O port PORT1[0]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC0 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLKOUT0 Programmable clock output of Timer/counter 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.1/ADC1/CLKOUT1</td>
<td>17, 21, 19, 13</td>
<td>P1.1 common I/O port PORT1[1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC1 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLKOUT1 Programmable clock output of Timer/counter 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.2/ADC2</td>
<td>18, 22, 20, 14</td>
<td>P1.2 common I/O port PORT1[2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC2 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.3/ADC3</td>
<td>20, 24, 21, 15</td>
<td>P1.3 common I/O port PORT1[3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC3 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.4/ADC4/SS</td>
<td>21, 25, 22, 16</td>
<td>P1.4 common I/O port PORT1[4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC4 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SS slave-select signal of serial peripheral interface, which is active low.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.5/ADC5/MOSI</td>
<td>23, 27, 23, 17</td>
<td>P1.5 common I/O port PORT1[5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC5 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MOSI Master Out, Slave In signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.6/ADC6/MISO</td>
<td>24, 28, 24, 18</td>
<td>P1.6 common I/O port PORT1[6]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC6 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MISO Master In, Slave Out signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1.7/ADC7/SCLK</td>
<td>25, 29, 25, 19</td>
<td>P1.7 common I/O port PORT1[7]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC7 Analog to Digital Converter Input channel 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SCLK The clock signal of serial peripheral interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MNEMONIC</td>
<td>Pin Number</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LQFP-32</td>
<td>SOP-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.0/PCA2/PWM2</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PCA2</td>
<td>PCA module 2 Capture input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PWM2</td>
<td>PWM module 2 output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.1</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.2</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.3</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.4/PCA3/PWM3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PCA3</td>
<td>PCA module 3 Capture input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PWM3</td>
<td>PWM module 3 output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.5</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.6</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2.7</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3.0/RxD</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RxD</td>
<td>Serial recive port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3.1/TxD</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TxD</td>
<td>Serial transmit port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3.2/INT0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INT0</td>
<td>External interrupt 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3.3/INT1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INT1</td>
<td>External interrupt 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3.4/T0/ECI</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>Timer/counter 0 input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ECI</td>
<td>PCA count input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3.5/T1/PCA1/PWM1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Timer/counter 1 input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PCA1</td>
<td>PCA module 1 Capture input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PWM1</td>
<td>PWM module 1 output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3.7/PCA0/PWM0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PCA0</td>
<td>PCA module 0 Capture input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PWM0</td>
<td>PWM module 0 output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RST</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XTLAL1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XTLAL2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCC</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gnd</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.8 Package Dimension Drawings

LQFP-32 OUTLINE PACKAGE

VARIATIONS (ALL DIMENSIONS SHOWN IN MM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOLS</th>
<th>MIN.</th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>MAX.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>1.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>1.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.254</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>8.80</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>9.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1</td>
<td>6.90</td>
<td>7.00</td>
<td>7.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>8.80</td>
<td>9.00</td>
<td>9.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>6.90</td>
<td>7.00</td>
<td>7.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.127</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ₀</td>
<td>0°</td>
<td>0°</td>
<td>10°</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTES:
1. All dimensions are in mm
2. Dim D1 AND E1 does not include plastic flash.
   Flash: Plastic residual around body edge after de junk/singulation
3. Dim b does not include dambar protrusion/intrusion.
4. Plating thickness 0.05~0.015 mm.
32-Pin Small Outline Package (SOP-32)
Dimensions in Millimeters

- **D** (20.98mm)
- **A**
- **A1**
- **A2**
- **b**
- **b1**
- **c**
- **D**
- **E**
- **E1**
- **e**
- **L**
- **L1**
- **L2**
- **R**
- **R1**
- **Φ**
- **z**

**COMMON DIMENSIONS**
(UNIT OF MEASURE = MILLIMETER)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>MIN</th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>MAX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>2.465</td>
<td>2.515</td>
<td>2.565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>2.100</td>
<td>2.300</td>
<td>2.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>0.356</td>
<td>0.406</td>
<td>0.456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>0.426</td>
<td>0.486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.254</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>20.88</td>
<td>20.98</td>
<td>21.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>9.980</td>
<td>10.180</td>
<td>10.380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>7.390</td>
<td>7.500</td>
<td>7.600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.700</td>
<td>0.800</td>
<td>0.900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1</td>
<td>1.303</td>
<td>1.403</td>
<td>1.503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.274</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.300</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Φ</td>
<td>0°</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.745</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
28-Pin Small Outline Package (SOP-28)
Dimensions in Millimeters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>MIN</th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>MAX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>2.465</td>
<td>2.515</td>
<td>2.565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>2.100</td>
<td>2.300</td>
<td>2.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>0.356</td>
<td>0.406</td>
<td>0.456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>0.426</td>
<td>0.486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.254</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>17.750</td>
<td>17.950</td>
<td>18.150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>10.100</td>
<td>10.300</td>
<td>10.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>7.424</td>
<td>7.500</td>
<td>7.624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.764</td>
<td>0.864</td>
<td>0.964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1</td>
<td>1.303</td>
<td>1.403</td>
<td>1.503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.274</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.300</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Φ</td>
<td>0°</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.745</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 28-Pin Plastic Dual-In-line Package (SKDIP-28)

Dimensions in Inches and Millimeters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>MIN</th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>MAX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>0.125</td>
<td>0.130</td>
<td>0.135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.060</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>1.385</td>
<td>1.390</td>
<td>1.400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.310</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>0.283</td>
<td>0.288</td>
<td>0.293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.115</td>
<td>0.130</td>
<td>0.150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ⁰</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eA</td>
<td>0.330</td>
<td>0.350</td>
<td>0.370</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UNIT: INCH 1 inch = 1000mil
20-Pin Small Outline Package (SOP-20)
Dimensions in Inches and (Millimeters)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>MIN</th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>MAX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>2.465</td>
<td>2.515</td>
<td>2.565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>2.100</td>
<td>2.300</td>
<td>2.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>0.426</td>
<td>0.486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>0.356</td>
<td>0.406</td>
<td>0.456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>0.234</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c1</td>
<td>0.224</td>
<td>0.254</td>
<td>0.274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>12.500</td>
<td>12.700</td>
<td>12.900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>10.206</td>
<td>10.306</td>
<td>10.406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>7.450</td>
<td>7.500</td>
<td>7.550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>1.270</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.800</td>
<td>0.864</td>
<td>0.900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1</td>
<td>1.303</td>
<td>1.403</td>
<td>1.503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.274</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.300</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Φ</td>
<td>0°</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10°</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.660</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20-Pin Plastic Dual Inline Package (DIP-20)
Dimensions in Inches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>MIN</th>
<th>NOM</th>
<th>MAX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>0.015</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>0.125</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>0.016</td>
<td>0.018</td>
<td>0.020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b1</td>
<td>0.058</td>
<td>0.060</td>
<td>0.064</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>0.008</td>
<td>0.010</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>1.012</td>
<td>1.026</td>
<td>1.040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>0.290</td>
<td>0.300</td>
<td>0.310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td>0.245</td>
<td>0.250</td>
<td>0.255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>0.090</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>0.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>0.120</td>
<td>0.130</td>
<td>0.140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θ°</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eA</td>
<td>0.355</td>
<td>0.355</td>
<td>0.375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.075</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UNIT: INCH 1 inch = 1000 mil
1.9 STC12C5410AD series MCU naming rules

STC12C5410AD series MCU naming rules

**Pin Number**
- e.g. 20, 28, 32

**Package type**
- e.g. SOP, LQFP, DIP, SKDIP, TSSOP

**Temperature range**
- I: Industrial, -40°C-85°C
- C: Commercial, 0°C-70°C

**Operating frequency**
- 35: Up to 35MHz
  - AD: Have ADC function, PWM and internal EEPROM
  - No words: no ADC function, but have PWM and internal EEPROM

**Program space**
- 02:2KB 04:4KB 06:6KB 08:8KB 10:10KB 12:12KB

**Operating Voltage**
- C: 5.5V~3.3V
- LE: 2.2V~3.6V

**STC 1T Series 8051 MCU**
- Speed is 8~12 times the traditional 8051

**STC12 xx 54 xx -- 35 x - xxxx xx**

- Pin Number
e.g. 20, 28, 32

- Package type
e.g. SOP, LQFP, DIP, SKDIP, TSSOP

- Temperature range
  - I: Industrial, -40°C-85°C
  - C: Commercial, 0°C-70°C

- Operating frequency
  - 35: Up to 35MHz

- AD: Have ADC function, PWM and internal EEPROM
- No words: no ADC function, but have PWM and internal EEPROM

- Program space
  - 02:2KB 04:4KB 06:6KB 08:8KB 10:10KB 12:12KB

- Operating Voltage
  - C: 5.5V~3.3V
  - LE: 2.2V~3.6V

- STC 1T Series 8051 MCU
  - Speed is 8~12 times the traditional 8051
1.10 Global Unique Identification Number (ID)

STC 1T MCU 12C5410AD series, each MCU has a unique identification number (ID). Users can use "MOV @Ri" instruction to read RAM unit F1~F7 to get the ID number after power on. If users need to use the unique identification number to encrypt their procedures, detecting the procedures not be illegally modified should be done first.

//The following example program written by C language is to read internal ID number

```c
#include<reg51.h>
#include<intrins.h>
sfr ISP_CONTR = 0xE7;
sbit MCU_Start_Led = P1^7;
#define Self_Define_ISP_Download_Command 0x22
#define RELOAD_COUNT 0xfb //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,9600bps

void serial_port_initial();
void send_UART(unsigned char);
void UART_Interrupt_Receive(void);
void soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor(void);
void delay(void);
void display_MCU_Start_Led(void);

void main(void)
{
    unsigned char i = 0;
    unsigned char j = 0;
    unsigned char idata *idata_point;
```
serial_port_initial(); //initialize serial port
// display_MCU_Start_Led(); //MCU begin to run when LED is be lighted
// send_UART(0x34);
// send_UART(0xa7);

idata_point = 0xF1;
for(j=0;j<=6; j++)
{
    i = *idata_point;
    send_UART(i);
    idata_point++;
}

while(1);
}

void serial_port_initial()
{
    SCON = 0x50; //0101,0000 8-bit variable baud rate, No parity
    TMOD = 0x21; //0011,0001 Timer1 as 8-bit auto-reload Timer
    TH1 = RELOAD_COUNT; //Set the auto-reload parameter
    TL1 = RELOAD_COUNT;
    TR1 = 1;
    ES = 1;
    EA = 1;
}

void send_UART(unsigned char i)
{
    ES = 0;
    TI = 0;
    SBUF = i;
    while(TI ==0);
    TI = 0;
    ES = 1;
}

void UART_IRQHandler(void) interrupt 4
{
    unsigned char k = 0;
    if(RI==1)
    {
        RI = 0;
        k = SBUF;
if(k==Self_Define_ISP_Download_Command)  //Self-define download command
    {
        delay();  //just delay 1 second
        delay();
        soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor();  //Soft rese to ISP Monitor
    }
    send_UART(k);
}  
else
{
    TI = 0;
}
}

void soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor(void)
{
    ISP_CONTR = 0x60;  //0110,0000  Soft rese to ISP Monitor
}
void delay(void)
{
    unsigned int j = 0;
    unsigned int g = 0;
    for(j=0;j<5;j++)
    {
        for(g=0;g<60000;g++)
        {
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
        }
    }
}
void display_MCU_Start_Led(void)
{
    unsigned char i = 0;
    for(i=0;i<3;i++)
    {
        MCU_Start_Led = 0;
        delay();
        MCU_Start_Led = 1;
        delay();
        MCU_Start_Led = 0;
    }
}
Chapter 2. Clock, Power Management and Reset

2.1 Clock

2.1.1 On-Chip R/C Clock and External Crystal/Clock are Optional in STC-ISP.exe

STC12C5410AD series is STC 1T MCU whose system clock is compatible with traditional 8051 MCU.

There are two clock sources available for STC12C5410AD. One is the clock from crystal oscillator and the other is from internal simple RC oscillator. The internal built-in RC oscillator can be used to replace the external crystal oscillator in the application which doesn't need an exact system clock. On-chip R/C clock is selected first in STC-ISP Writer/Programmer because the manufacturer's selection is on-chip R/C clock.

To enable the external crystal oscillator, user should enable the option "External Crystal/Clock" by STC-ISP Writer/Programmer.
2.1.2 Divider for System Clock

A clock divider (CLK_DIV) is designed to slow down the operation speed of STC12C5410AD, to save the operating power dynamically. User can slow down the MCU by means of writing a non-zero value to the CLKS[2:0] bits in the CLK_DIV register. This feature is especially useful to save power consumption in idle mode as long as the user changes the CLKS[2:0] to a non-zero value before entering the idle mode.

CLK_DIV register (Clock Divider)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR Name</th>
<th>SFR Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLK_DIV</td>
<td>C7H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>CLKS2</td>
<td>CLKS1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B2-B0 (CLKS2-CLKS0):

- 000 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is not divided (default state)
- 001 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 2.
- 010 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 4.
- 011 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 8.
- 100 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 16.
- 101 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 32.
- 110 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 64.
- 111 External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 128.
2.1.3 How to Know Internal RC Oscillator frequency (Internal clock frequency)

STC 1T MCU 12C5410AD series in addition to traditional external clock, but also the option of using the internal RC oscillator clock source. If select internal RC oscillator, external crystal can be saved. XTAL1 and XTAL2 floating. Relatively large errors due to internal clock, so high requirements on the timing or circumstances have serial communication is not recommended to use the internal oscillator. User can use “MOV @Ri” instruction read RAM unit FC~FF to get the internal oscillator frequency of the factory and read RAM unit F8~FB to get internal oscillator frequency of last used to download programs within the internal oscillator after power on.

// The following example program written by C language is to read internal R/C clock frequency
/*-----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited ---------------*/
/* --- Mobile: 13922809991 --------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 0755-82905966 --------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 0755-82948409 --------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com  --------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the  */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC   */
/*---------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
#include <reg51.h>
#include <intrins.h>
sfr ISP_CONTR = 0xE7;
sbit MCU_Start_Led = P1^7;
//unsigned char self_command_array[4] = {0x22,0x33,0x44,0x55};
#define Self_Define_ISP_Download_Command 0x22
#define RELOAD_COUNT 0xfb //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,9600bps

void serial_port_initial();
void send_UART(unsigned char);
void UART_Interrupt_Receive(void);
void soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor(void);
void delay(void);
void display_MCU_Start_Led(void);

void main(void)
{
    unsigned char i = 0;
    unsigned char j = 0;
    unsigned char *idata_point;
}
serial_port_initial(); //initialize serial port
// display_MCU_Start_Led(); //MCU begin to run when LED is be lighted
// send_UART(0x34);
// send_UART(0xa7);

idata_point = 0xFC;
for(j=0;j<=3;j++)
{
    i = *idata_point;
    send_UART(i);
    idata_point++;
}

while(1);

void serial_port_initial()
{
    SCON = 0x50; //0101,0000 8-bit variable baud rate, No parity
    TMOD = 0x21; //0011,0001 Timer1 as 8-bit auto-reload Timer
    TH1 = RELOAD_COUNT; //Set the auto-reload parameter
    TL1 = RELOAD_COUNT;
    TR1 = 1;
    ES = 1;
    EA = 1;
}

void send_UART(unsigned char i)
{
    ES = 0;
    TI = 0;
    SBUF = i;
    while(TI==0);
    TI = 0;
    ES = 1;
}

void UART_Interrupt_Receive(void) interrupt 4
{
    unsigned char k = 0;
    if(RI==1)
    {
        RI = 0;
        k = SBUF;
    }
if(k==Self_Define_ISP_Download_Command) //Self-define download command
{
    delay(); //just delay 1 second
    delay();
    soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor(); //Soft rese to ISP Monitor
}
send_UART(k);
} else
{
    TI = 0;
}
}

void soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor(void)
{
    ISP_CONTR = 0x60; //0110,0000 Soft rese to ISP Monitor
}

void delay(void)
{
    unsigned int j = 0;
    unsigned int g = 0;
    for(j=0;j<5;j++)
    {
        for(g=0;g<60000;g++)
        {
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
        }
    }
}

void display_MCU_Start_Led(void)
{
    unsigned char i = 0;
    for(i=0;i<3;i++)
    {
        MCU_Start_Led = 0;
        delay();
        MCU_Start_Led = 1;
        delay();
        MCU_Start_Led = 0;
    }
}
2.1.4 Programmable Clock Output

STC12C5410AD series MCU have two channel programmable clock outputs, they are Timer 0 programmable clock output CLKOUT0(P1.0) and Timer 1 programmable clock output CLKOUT1(P1.1).

There are some SFRs about programmable clock output as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit Address and Symbol</th>
<th>Value after Power-on or Reset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>Auxiliary register</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6</td>
<td>0000 00xxB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>CLK_Output Power down Wake-up</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>PCAWAKEUP RXD_PIN_IE T1_PIN_IE T0_PIN_IE - - STCLKO OSCCLKO</td>
<td>0000 xx00B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The statement (used in C language) of Special function registers AUXR/WAKE_CLKO:

```c
sfr AUXR    = 0x8E;    //The address statement of Special function register AUXR
sfr WAKE_CLKO = 0x8F;  //The address statement of SFR WAKE_CLKO
```

The statement (used in Assembly language) of Special function registers AUXR/WAKE_CLKO:

```assembly
AUXR EQU 0x8E    ;The address statement of Special function register AUXR
WAKE_CLKO EQU 0x8F ;The address statement of SFR WAKE_CLKO
```

1. **AUXR**: Auxiliary register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit name</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6 EADCI SPI ELVDI - -</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T0x12 : Timer 0 clock source bit.
- 0 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
- 1 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

T1x12 : Timer 1 clock source bit.
- 0 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
- 1 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

UART_M0x6 : Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0
- 0 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12.
- 1 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2.

UART_M0x6 : Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0
- 0 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12.
- 1 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2.

EADCI : Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter
- 0 : (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
- 1 : Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ESPI : Enable/Disable interrupt from Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
- 0 : (default) Inhibit the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
- 1 : Enable the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ELVDI : Enable/Disable interrupt from low-voltage sensor
- 0 : (default) Inhibit the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
- 1 : Enable the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
2. WAKE_CLKO: CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>PCAWAKEUP</td>
<td>RXD_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T1_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T0_PIN_IE</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>T1CLKO</td>
<td>T0CLKO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PCAWAKEUP: When set and the associated-PCA interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the CEXn pin of PCA function is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

RXD_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-UART interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the RXD pin (P3.0) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-Timer1 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.5) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T0_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-Timer0 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.4) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1CKLO: When set, P1.1 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 1. The clock rate is Timer 1 overflow rate divided by 2.

T0CKLO: When set, P1.0 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 0. The clock rate is Timer 0 overflow rate divided by 2.

2.1.4.1 Timer 0 Programmable Clock-out on P1.0

STC12C5410AD is able to generate a programmable clock output on P1.0. When T0CLKO/WAKE_CLKO.0 bit in WAKE_CLKO SFR is set, T0 timer overflow pulse will toggle P1.0 latch to generate a 50% duty clock. The frequency of clock-out = T0 overflow rate/2.

If C/T(TMOD.2) = 0, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\text{Frequency} = \frac{(\text{SYSclk})}{2^{16} - T0} / 2, \quad \text{when AUXR.7} / T0x12=1
\]

or

\[
\text{Frequency} = \frac{(\text{SYSclk})}{2^{16} - T0} / 2, \quad \text{when AUXR.7} / T0x12=0
\]

If C/T(TMOD.2) = 1, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Counter operation (input from external P3.4/T0 pin), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\text{Frequency} = \frac{T0_{\text{Pin_CLK}}}{2^{16} - T0} / 2
\]
2.1.4.2 Timer 1 Programmable Clock-out on P1.1

STC12C5410AD is able to generate a programmable clock output on P1.1. When T1CLKO/WAKE_CLKO.1 bit in WAKE_CLKO SFR is set, T1 timer overflow pulse will toggle P1.1 latch to generate a 50% duty clock. The frequency of clock-out = \( \frac{T1 \text{ overflow rate}}{2} \).

If \( C/T \) (TMOD.6) = 0, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\text{Frequency} = \begin{cases} 
\frac{\text{SYSclk}}{256 - \text{TH1}} & \text{when AUXR.6 / T0x12=1} \\
\frac{\text{SYSclk}}{12} / (256 - \text{TH1}) / 2 & \text{when AUXR.6 / T0x12=0}
\end{cases}
\]

If \( C/T \) (TMOD.6) = 1, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Counter operation (input from external P3.5/T1 pin), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\text{Frequency} = \frac{T1 \text{ Pin CLK}}{256-\text{TH1}} / 2
\]
2.2 Power Management Modes

The STC12C5410AD core has three software programmable power management mode: slow-down, idle and stop/power-down mode. The power consumption of STC12C5410AD series is about 2.7mA~7mA in normal operation, while it is lower than 0.1uA in stop/power-down mode and 1.8mA in idle mode.

Slow-down mode is controlled by clock divider register(CLK_DIV). Idle and stop/power-down is managed by the corresponding bit in Power control (PCON) register which is shown in below.

**SFR name**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SMOD**: Double baud rate of UART interface
0 Keep normal baud rate when the UART is used in mode 1,2 or 3.
1 Double baud rate bit when the UART is used in mode 1,2 or 3.

**SMOD0**: SM0/FE bit select for SCON.7; setting this bit will set SCON.7 as Frame Error function. Clearing it to set SCON.7 as one bit of UART mode selection bits.

**LVDF**: Pin Low-Voltage Flag. Once low voltage condition is detected (VCC power is lower than LVD voltage), it is set by hardware (and should be cleared by software).

**POF**: Power-On flag. It is set by power-off-on action and can only cleared by software.
Practical application: if it is wanted to know which reset the MCU is used, see the following figure.

GF1,GF0: General-purposed flag 1 and 0

**PD**: Stop Mode/Power-Down Select bit.
Setting this bit will place the STC12C5410AD MCU in Stop/Power-Down mode. Stop/Power-Down mode can be waked up by external interrupt. Because the MCU’s internal oscillator stopped in Stop/Power-Down mode, CPU, Timers, UARTs and so on stop to run, only external interrupt go on to work.

The following pins can wake up MCU from Stop/Power-Down mode: INT0/P3.2, INT1/P3.3, T0/P3.4, T1/P3.5, Rx/D/P3.0, PCA0/PWM0/P3.7, PCA1/PWM1/P3.5, PCA2/PWM2/P2.0, PCA3/PWM3/P2.4.

**IDL**: Idle mode select bit.
Setting this bit will place the STC12C5410AD in Idle mode. only CPU goes into Idle mode. (Shuts off clock to CPU, but clock to Timers, Interrupts, Serial Ports, and Analog Peripherals are still active.) The following pins can wake up MCU from Idle mode: INT0/P3.2, INT1/P3.3, T0/P3.4, T1/P3.5, Rx/D/P3.0. Besides, Timer0 and Timer1 and UARTs interrupt also can wake up MCU from idle mode.
2.2.1 Slow Down Mode

A divider is designed to slow down the clock source prior to route to all logic circuit. The operating frequency of internal logic circuit can therefore be slowed down dynamically, and then save the power.

User can slow down the MCU by means of writing a non-zero value to the CLKS[2:0] bits in the CLK_DIV register. This feature is especially useful to save power consumption in idle mode as long as the user changes the CLKS[2:0] to a non-zero value before entering the idle mode.

**CLK_DIV register (Clock Divider)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR Name</th>
<th>SFR Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLK_DIV</td>
<td>C7H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>CLKS2</td>
<td>CLKS1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B2-B0 (CLKS2-CLKS0):
- 000  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is not divided (default state)
- 001  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 2.
- 010  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 4.
- 011  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 8.
- 100  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 16.
- 101  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 32.
- 110  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 64.
- 111  External crystal/clock or On-Chip R/C clock is divided by 128.
2.2.2 Idle Mode

An instruction that sets IDL/PCON.0 causes that to be the last instruction executed before going into the idle mode, the internal clock is gated off to the CPU but not to the interrupt, timer, PCA, ADC, SPI, WDT and serial port functions. The PCA can be programmed either to pause or continue operating during Idle. The CPU status is preserved in its entirety: the RAM, Stack Pointer, Program Counter, Program Status Word, Accumulator, and all other registers maintain their data during Idle. The port pins hold the logical states they had at the time Idle was activated. Idle mode leaves the peripherals running in order to allow them to wake up the CPU when an interrupt is generated. Timer 0, Timer 1, PWM timer and UART will continue to function during Idle mode.

There are two ways to terminate the idle. Activation of any enabled interrupt will cause IDL/PCON.0 to be cleared by hardware, terminating the idle mode. The interrupt will be serviced, and following RETI, the next instruction to be executed will be the one following the instruction that put the device into idle.

The flag bits (GF0 and GF1) can be used to give an indication if an interrupt occurred during normal operation or during Idle. For example, an instruction that activates Idle can also set one or both flag bits. When Idle is terminated by an interrupt, the interrupt service routine can examine the flag bits.

The other way to wake-up from idle is to pull RESET high to generate internal hardware reset. Since the clock oscillator is still running, the hardware reset needs to be held active for only two machine cycles (24 oscillator periods) to complete the reset.
2.2.3  Stop / Power Down (PD) Mode and Demo Program (C and ASM)

An instruction that sets PD/PCON.1 cause that to be the last instruction executed before going into the Power-Down mode. In the Power-Down mode, the on-chip oscillator and the Flash memory are stopped in order to minimize power consumption. Only the power-on circuitry will continue to draw power during Power-Down. The contents of on-chip RAM and SFRs are maintained. The power-down mode can be woken-up by RESET pin, external interrupt INT0 – INT1, RXD pin, T0 pin, T1 pin and PCA input pins—PWM pins and PWM pins. When it is woken-up by RESET, the program will execute from the address 0x0000. Be carefully to keep RESET pin active for at least 10ms in order for a stable clock. If it is woken-up from I/O, the CPU will rework through jumping to related interrupt service routine. Before the CPU rework, the clock is blocked and counted until 32768 in order for denouncing the unstable clock. To use I/O wake-up, interrupt-related registers have to be enabled and programmed accurately before power-down is entered. Pay attention to have at least one “NOP” instruction subsequent to the power-down instruction if I/O wake-up is used. When terminating Power-down by an interrupt, the wake up period is internally timed. At the negative edge on the interrupt pin, Power-Down is exited, the oscillator is restarted, and an internal timer begins counting. The internal clock will be allowed to propagate and the CPU will not resume execution until after the timer has reached internal counter full. After the timeout period, the interrupt service routine will begin. To prevent the interrupt from re-triggering, the interrupt service routine should disable the interrupt before returning. The interrupt pin should be held low until the device has timed out and begun executing. The user should not attempt to enter (or re-enter) the power-down mode for a minimum of 4 us until after one of the following conditions has occurred: Start of code execution(after any type of reset), or Exit from power-down mode.

The following circuit can timing wake up MCU from power down mode when external interrupt sources do not exist

![Circuit Diagram]

Operation step:
1. I/O ports are first configured to push-pull output(strong pull-up) mode
2. Written 1s into ports I/O ports
3. The above circuit will charge the capacitor C1
4. Written 0s into ports I/O ports, MCU will go into power-down mode
5. The above circuit will discharge. When the electricity of capacitor C1 has been discharged less than 0.8V, external interrupt INTx pin will generate a falling edge and wake up MCU from power-down mode automatically.
The following example C program demonstrates that power-down mode be woken-up by external interrupt.

```c
#include <reg51.h>
#include <intrins.h>
sbit Begin_LED = P1^2; //Begin-LED indicator indicates system start-up
unsigned char Is_Power_Down = 0; //Set this bit before go into Power-down mode
sbit Is_Power_Down_LED_INT0 = P1^7; //Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT0
sbit Not_Power_Down_LED_INT0 = P1^6; //Not Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT0
sbit Is_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = P1^5; //Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT1
sbit Not_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = P1^4; //Not Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT1
sbit Power_Down_Wakeup_Pin_INT0 = P3^2; //Power-Down wake-up pin on INT0
sbit Power_Down_Wakeup_Pin_INT1 = P3^3; //Power-Down wake-up pin on INT1
sbit Normal_Work_Flashing_LED = P1^3; //Normal work LED indicator

void Normal_Work_Flashing (void);
void INT_System_init (void);
void INT0_Routine (void);
void INT1_Routine (void);

void main (void)
{
    unsigned char j = 0;
    unsigned char wakeup_counter = 0;
    Begin_LED = 0; //system start-up LED
    INT_System_init ( ); //Interrupt system initialization
    while(1)
    {
        P2 = wakeup_counter;
        wakeup_counter++;
        for(j=0; j<2; j++)
        {
            Normal_Work_Flashing( ); //System normal work
        }
    }
```

```c
#include <reg51.h>
#include <intrins.h>
sbit Begin_LED = P1^2; //Begin-LED indicator indicates system start-up
unsigned char Is_Power_Down = 0; //Set this bit before go into Power-down mode
sbit Is_Power_Down_LED_INT0 = P1^7; //Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT0
sbit Not_Power_Down_LED_INT0 = P1^6; //Not Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT0
sbit Is_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = P1^5; //Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT1
sbit Not_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = P1^4; //Not Power-Down wake-up LED indicator on INT1
sbit Power_Down_Wakeup_Pin_INT0 = P3^2; //Power-Down wake-up pin on INT0
sbit Power_Down_Wakeup_Pin_INT1 = P3^3; //Power-Down wake-up pin on INT1
sbit Normal_Work_Flashing_LED = P1^3; //Normal work LED indicator

void Normal_Work_Flashing (void);
void INT_System_init (void);
void INT0_Routine (void);
void INT1_Routine (void);

void main (void)
{
    unsigned char j = 0;
    unsigned char wakeup_counter = 0;
    Begin_LED = 0; //system start-up LED
    INT_System_init ( ); //Interrupt system initialization
    while(1)
    {
        P2 = wakeup_counter;
        wakeup_counter++;
        for(j=0; j<2; j++)
        {
            Normal_Work_Flashing( ); //System normal work
        }
    }
```
Is_Power_Down = 1;  //Set this bit before go into Power-down mode
PCON    = 0x02;  //after this instruction, MCU will be in power-down mode
    _nop_();
    _nop_();
    _nop_();
    _nop_();
}

void  INT_System_init (void)
{
    IT0  = 0;   /* External interrupt 0, low electrical level triggered */
    // IT0 = 1;   /* External interrupt 0, negative edge triggered */
    EX0  = 1;   /* Enable external interrupt 0
    IT1 = 0;   /* External interrupt 1, low electrical level triggered */
    // IT1 = 1;   /* External interrupt 1, negative edge triggered */
    EX1  = 1;   /* Enable external interrupt 1
    EA  = 1;   /* Set Global Enable bit
}

void  INT0_Routine (void) interrupt 0
{
    if (Is_Power_Down)
    {
        //Is_Power_Down ==1;  /* Power-Down wakeup on INT0 */
        Is_Power_Down = 0;
        Is_Power_Down(LED_INT0 = 0;
        /*open external interrupt 0 Power-Down wake-up LED indicator */
        while (Power_Down_Wakeup_Pin_INT0 == 0)
        {
            /* wait higher */
        }
        Is_Power_Down_LED_INT0 = 1;  /* close external interrupt 0 Power-Down wake-up LED indicator */
    }
    else
    {
        Not_Power_Down(LED_INT0 = 0;  /* open external interrupt 0 normal work LED */
        while (Power_Down_Wake upp_Pin_INT0 ==0)
        {
            /* wait higher */
        }
        Not_Power_Down_LED_INT0 = 1;  /* close external interrupt 0 normal work LED */
    }
}
void INT1_Routine (void) interrupt 2
{
    if (Is_Power_Down)
    {
        //Is_Power_Down==1;       /* Power-Down wakeup on INT1 */
        Is_Power_Down = 0;
        Is_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = 0;
        /*open external interrupt 1 Power-Down wake-up LED indicator */
        while (Power_Down_Wakeup_Pin_INT1 == 0)
        {
            /* wait higher */
        }
        Is_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = 1;
        /* close external interrupt 1 Power-Down wake-up LED indicator */
    }
    else
    {
        Not_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = 0;       /* open external interrupt 1 normal work LED */
        while (Power_Down_Wakeup_Pin_INT1 ==0)
        {
            /* wait higher */
        }
        Not_Power_Down_LED_INT1 = 1;      /* close external interrupt 1 normal work LED */
    }
}

void delay (void)
{
    unsigned int  j = 0x00;
    unsigned int  k = 0x00;
    for (k=0; k<2; ++k)
    {
        for (j=0; j<=30000; ++j)
        {
            _nop_( );
            _nop_( );
            _nop_( );
            _nop_( );
            _nop_( );
            _nop_( );
            _nop_( );
        }
    }
}
void Normal_Work_Flashing (void)
{
    Normal_Work_Flashing_LED = 0;
delay ( );
    Normal_Work_Flashing_LED = 1;
delay ( );
}

The following program also demonstrates that power-down mode or idle mode be woken-up by external interrupt, but is written in assembly language rather than C language.

;/*--------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited -------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU wake up Power-Down mode Demo -----*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC  */
/*-------------------------------------------------------------------*/
;************************************************************************
;Wake Up Idle and Wake Up Power Down
;************************************************************************
ORG 0000H
AJMP  MAIN
ORG 0003H
int0_interrupt:
    CLR    P1.7  ;open P1.7 LED indicator
    ACALL  delay  ;delay in order to observe
    CLR    EA  ;clear global enable bit, stop all interrupts
    RETI

ORG 0013H
int1_interrupt:
    CLR    P1.6  ;open P1.6 LED indicator
    ACALL  delay  ;delay in order to observe
    CLR    EA  ;clear global enable bit, stop all interrupts
    RETI

ORG 0100H
delay:
    CLR    A
    MOV    R0,    A
    MOV    R1,    A
    MOV    R2,    #02
delay_loop:
  DJNZ R0, delay_loop
  DJNZ R1, delay_loop
  DJNZ R2, delay_loop
  RET

main:
  MOV R3, #0 ;P1 LED increment mode changed
  ;start to run program

main_loop:
  MOV A, R3
  CPL A
  MOV P1, A
  ACALL delay
  INC R3
  MOV A, R3
  SUBB A, #18H
  JC main_loop
  MOV P1, #0FFH ;close all LED, MCU go into power-down mode
  CLR IT0 ;low electrical level trigger external interrupt 0
  ;SETB IT0 ;negative edge trigger external interrupt 0
  SETB EX0 ;enable external interrupt 0
  CLR IT1 ;low electrical level trigger external interrupt 1
  ;SETB IT1 ;negative edge trigger external interrupt 1
  SETB EX1 ;enable external interrupt 1
  SETB EA ;set the global enable
  ;if don't so, power-down mode cannot be wake up

 ;MCU will go into idle mode or power-down mode after the following instructions
  MOV PCON, #00000010B ;Set PD bit, power-down mode (PD = PCON.1)
  ;NOP
  ;NOP
  ;NOP
  ;MOV PCON, #00000001B ;Set IDL bit, idle mode (IDL = PCON.0)
  MOV P1, #0DFH ;1101,1111
  NOP
  NOP
  NOP
  WAIT1:
  SJMP WAIT1 ;dynamically stop

END
2.3 RESET Sources

In STC12C5410AD, there are 5 sources to generate internal reset. They are RST pin reset, software reset, On-chip power-on-reset (if delay 200mS after power-on reset, the reset mode is On-chip MAX810 POR timing delay which actually add 200mS delay after power-on reset), internal low-voltage detection reset and Watch-Dog-Timer reset.

2.3.1 RESET Pin

External RST pin reset accomplishes the MCU reset by forcing a reset pulse to RST pin from external. Asserting an active-high signal and keeping at least 24 cycles plus 10us on the RST pin generates a reset. If the signal on RST pin changed active-low level, MCU will end the reset state and start to run from the 0000H of user procedures.

2.3.2 Software RESET

Writing an “1” to SWRST bit in ISP_CONTR register will generate a internal reset.

ISP_CONTR: ISP/IAP Control Register

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR Name</th>
<th>SFR Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISP_CONTR</td>
<td>E7H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>ISPEN</td>
<td>SWBS</td>
<td>SWRST</td>
<td>CMD_FAIL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>WT2</td>
<td>WT1</td>
<td>WT0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ISPEN : ISP/IAP operation enable.
0 : Global disable all ISP/IAP program/erase/read function.
1 : Enable ISP/IAP program/erase/read function.
SWBS: software boot selection control bit
0 : Boot from main-memory after reset.
1 : Boot from ISP memory after reset.
SWRST: software reset trigger control.
0 : No operation
1 : Generate software system reset. It will be cleared by hardware automatically.
CMD_FAIL: Command Fail indication for ISP/IAP operation.
0 : The last ISP/IAP command has finished successfully.
1 : The last ISP/IAP command fails. It could be caused since the access of flash memory was inhibited.

;Software reset from user application program area (AP area) and switch to AP area to run program
MOV ISP_CONTR, #00100000B ;SWBS = 0(Select AP area), SWRST = 1(Software reset)
;Software reset from system ISP monitor program area (ISP area) and switch to AP area to run program
MOV ISP_CONTR, #00100000B ;SWBS = 0(Select AP area), SWRST = 1(Software reset)
;Software reset from user application program area (AP area) and switch to ISP area to run program
MOV ISP_CONTR, #01100000B ;SWBS = 1(Select ISP area), SWRST = 1(Software reset)
;Software reset from system ISP monitor program area (ISP area) and switch to ISP area to run program
MOV ISP_CONTR, #01100000B ;SWBS = 1(Select ISP area), SWRST = 1(Software reset)

This reset is to reset the whole system, all special function registers and I/O ports will be reset to the initial value.
2.3.3 Power-On Reset (POR)

When VCC drops below the detection threshold of POR circuit, all of the logic circuits are reset. When VCC goes back up again, an internal reset is released automatically after a delay of 32768 clocks. The nominal POR detection threshold is around 1.9V for 3V device and 3.3V for 5V device.

The Power-On flag, POF/PCON.4, is set by hardware to denote the VCC power has ever been less than the POR voltage. And, it helps users to check if the start of running of the CPU is from power-on or from hardware reset (RST-pin reset), software reset or Watchdog Timer reset. The POF bit should be cleared by software.

2.3.4 MAX810 power-on-Reset delay

There is another on-chip POR delay circuit s integrated on STC12C5410AD. This circuit is MAX810—sepcial reset circuit and is controlled by configuring STC-ISP Writer/Programmer shown in the next figure. MAX810 special reset circuit just add 200mS extra reset-delay-time after power-up reset. So it is another power-on reset.

2.3.5 Internal Low Voltage Detection Reset

Besides the POR voltage, there is a higher threshold voltage: the Low Voltage Detection (LVD) voltage for STC12C5410AD series. When the VCC power drops down to the LVD voltage, the Low voltage Flag, LVDF bit (PCON.5), will be set by hardware. (Note that during power-up, this flag will also be set, and the user should clear it by software for the following Low Voltage detecting.) This flag can also generate an interrupt if the enable bit of LVD interrupt is set to 1.

The threshold voltage of STC12C5410AD built-in low voltage detection reset is optional in STC-ISP Writer/Programmer. The detection voltage of 5V MCU of STC12C5410AD series is optional between 3.7V and 3.3V as shown in following figure.
The detection voltage of 3V MCU of STC12LE5410AD series is optional between 2.4V and 2.0V as shown in following figure.

Some SFRs related to Low voltage detection as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Addr</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
<th>Reset Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>Power Control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0011,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>Auxiliary Register</td>
<td>T0x12</td>
<td>T1x12</td>
<td>UART M0x6</td>
<td>EADC</td>
<td>ESPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0000,00xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>Interrupt Enable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0000,00000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>B8H</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority Low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PPCA_LVD</td>
<td>PADC_SPI</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>PT1</td>
<td>PX1</td>
<td>PT0</td>
<td>PX0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PPCA_LVDH</td>
<td>PADC_SPIH</td>
<td>PSH</td>
<td>PT1H</td>
<td>PX1H</td>
<td>PT0H</td>
<td>PX0H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PCON register** (Power Control Register)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>SMOD</td>
<td>SMOD0</td>
<td>LVDF</td>
<td>POF</td>
<td>GF1</td>
<td>GF0</td>
<td>PD</td>
<td>IDL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LVDF : Pin Low-Voltage Flag. Once low voltage condition is detected (VCC power is lower than LVD voltage), it is set by hardware (and should be cleared by software).
STC MCU Limited.

Mobile:(86)13922809991 Tel:086-755-82948412 Fax:86-755-82905966

www.STCMCU.com

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td></td>
<td>T0x12</td>
<td>T1x12</td>
<td>UART_M0x6</td>
<td>EADC1</td>
<td>ESPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AUXR: Auxiliary register** (Non bit-addressable)

T0x12: Timer 0 clock source bit.
- **0**: The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
- **1**: The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

T1x12: Timer 1 clock source bit.
- **0**: The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
- **1**: The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

UART_M0x6: Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0
- **0**: The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12.
- **1**: The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2.

EADCI: Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter
- **0**: (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
- **1**: Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ESPI: Enable/Disable interrupt from Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
- **0**: (default) Inhibit the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
- **1**: Enable the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ELVDI: Enable/Disable interrupt from low-voltage sensor
- **0**: (default) Inhibit the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
- **1**: Enable the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

**IE: Interrupt Enable Register**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td></td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>EPCA_LVD</td>
<td>EADC_SPI</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td>ET1</td>
<td>EX1</td>
<td>ET0</td>
<td>EX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enable Bit = 1 enables the interrupt.
Enable Bit = 0 disables it.

EA (IE.7): disables all interrupts. if EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged. if EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

EPCA_LVD (IE.6): Interrupt controller of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector
- **0**: Disable the interrupt of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector
- **1**: Enable the interrupt of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector
### IPH: Interrupt Priority High Register

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PPCA_LVDH</td>
<td>PADC_SPIH</td>
<td>PSH</td>
<td>PT1H</td>
<td>PX1H</td>
<td>PT0H</td>
<td>PX0H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IP: Interrupt Priority Register

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>B8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PPCA_LVD</td>
<td>PADC_SPI</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>PT1</td>
<td>PX1</td>
<td>PT0</td>
<td>PX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PPCA_LVDH, PPCA_LVD: Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt priority control bits.

- if PPCA_LVDH=0 and PPCA_LVD=0, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 0).
- if PPCA_LVDH=0 and PPCA_LVD=1, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 1).
- if PPCA_LVDH=1 and PPCA_LVD=0, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 2).
- if PPCA_LVDH=1 and PPCA_LVD=1, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 3).
2.3.6 Watch-Dog-Timer

The watch dog timer in STC12C5410AD consists of an 8-bit pre-scaler timer and an 15-bit timer. The timer is one-time enabled by setting EN_WDT(WDT_CONTR.5). Clearing EN_WDT can stop WDT counting. When the WDT is enabled, software should always reset the timer by writing 1 to CLR_WDT bit before the WDT overflows. If STC12C5410AD series MCU is out of control by any disturbance, that means the CPU can not run the software normally, then WDT may miss the "writing 1 to CLR_WDT" and overflow will come. An overflow of Watch-Dog-Timer will generate a internal reset.

WDT_CONTR: Watch-Dog-Timer Control Register

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WDT_CONTR</td>
<td>0E1H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>WDT_FLAG</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>EN_WDT</td>
<td>CLR_WDT</td>
<td>IDLE_WDT</td>
<td>PS2</td>
<td>PS1</td>
<td>PS0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WDT_FLAG : WDT reset flag.
0 : This bit should be cleared by software.
1 : When WDT overflows, this bit is set by hardware to indicate a WDT reset happened.

EN_WDT : Enable WDT bit. When set, WDT is started.
CLR_WDT : WDT clear bit. When set, WDT will recount. Hardware will automatically clear this bit.
IDLE_WDT : WDT IDLE mode bit. When set, WDT is enabled in IDLE mode. When clear, WDT is disabled in IDLE.

PS2, PS1, PS0 : WDT Pre-scale value set bit.

Pre-scale value of Watchdog timer is shown as the bellowed table :

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PS2</th>
<th>PS1</th>
<th>PS0</th>
<th>Pre-scale</th>
<th>WDT overflow Time @20MHz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>39.3 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>78.6 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>157.3 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>314.6 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>629.1 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>1.25 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>2.5 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>5 S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The WDT overflow time is determined by the following equation:

\[
\text{WDT overflow time} = \frac{12 \times \text{Pre-scale} \times 32768}{\text{SYSclk}}
\]

The SYSclk is 20MHz in the table above.
If SYSclk is 12MHz, the WDT overflow time is:

\[
\text{WDT overflow time} = \frac{12 \times \text{Pre-scale} \times 32768}{12000000} = \text{Pre-scale} \times \frac{393216}{12000000}
\]

WDT overflow time is shown as the belowed table when SYSclk is 12MHz:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PS2</th>
<th>PS1</th>
<th>PS0</th>
<th>Pre-scale</th>
<th>WDT overflow Time @12MHz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>65.5 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>131.0 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>262.1 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>524.2 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>1.0485 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>2.0971 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>4.1943 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>8.3886 S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WDT overflow time is shown as the bellowed table when SYSclk is 11.0592MHz:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PS2</th>
<th>PS1</th>
<th>PS0</th>
<th>Pre-scale</th>
<th>WDT overflow Time @11.0592MHz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>71.1 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>142.2 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>284.4 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>568.8 mS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>1.1377 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>2.2755 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>4.5511 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>9.1022 S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Options related with WDT in STC-ISP Writer/Programmer is shown in the following figure.
The following example is an assembly language program that demonstrates STC 1T Series MCU WDT.

; /*-------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------*/
; /* --- STC 1T Series MCU WDT Demo -------------------------------*/
; /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ----------------------------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the*/
; /* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC  */
; /*-------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; WDT overflow time = (12 × Pre-scale × 32768) / SYSclk

WDT_CONTR       EQU 0E1H  ;WDT address
WDT_TIME_LED    EQU P1.5  ;WDT overflow time LED on P1.5
                ;The WDT overflow time may be measured by the LED light time
WDT_FLAG_LED    EQU P1.7  ;WDT overflow reset flag LED indicator on P1.7
Last_WDT_Time_LED_Status EQU 00H  ;bit variable used to save the last status of WDT overflow time LED indicator

;WDT reset time, the SYSclk is 18.432MHz
;Pre_scale_Word   EQU 00111100B  ;open WDT, Pre-scale value is 32, WDT overflow time=0.68S
;Pre_scale_Word   EQU 00111101B  ;open WDT, Pre-scale value is 64, WDT overflow time=1.36S
;Pre_scale_Word   EQU 00111110B  ;open WDT, Pre-scale value is 128, WDT overflow time=2.72S
;Pre_scale_Word   EQU 00111111B  ;open WDT, Pre-scale value is 256, WDT overflow time=5.44S

ORG 0000H
AJMP MAIN
ORG 0100H

MAIN:

MOV A, WDT_CONTR  ;detection if WDT reset
ANL A, #10000000B
JNZ WDT_Reset

;WDT_CONTR.7=1, WDT reset, jump WDT reset subroutine
;WDT_CONTR.7=0, Power-On reset, cold start-up, the content of RAM is random

SETB Last_WDT_Time_LED_Status  ;Power-On reset
CLR WDT_TIME_LED  ;Power-On reset, open WDT overflow time LED
MOV WDT_CONTR, #Pre_scale_Word  ;open WDT
WAIT1:
  SJMP WAIT1 ; wait WDT overflow reset
  ; WDT_CONTR.7=1, WDT reset, hot start-up, the content of RAM is constant and just like before reset
WDT_Reset:
  CLR WDT_FLAG_LED ; WDT reset, open WDT overflow reset flag LED indicator
  JB Last_WDT_Time_LED_Status, Power_Off_WDT_TIME_LED
  ; when set Last_WDT_Time_LED_Status, close the corresponding LED indicator
  ; clear, open the corresponding LED indicator
  ; set WDT_TIME_LED according to the last status of WDT overflow time LED indicator
  CLR WDT_TIME_LED ; close the WDT overflow time LED indicator
  CPL Last_WDT_Time_LED_Status ; reverse the last status of WDT overflow time LED indicator

WAIT2:
  SJMP WAIT2 ; wait WDT overflow reset
Power_Off_WDT_TIME_LED:
  SETB WDT_TIME_LED ; close the WDT overflow time LED indicator
  CPL Last_WDT_Time_LED_Status ; reverse the last status of WDT overflow time LED indicator

WAIT3:
  SJMP WAIT3 ; wait WDT overflow reset
END
### 2.3.7 Warm Boot and Cold Boot Reset

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reset type</th>
<th>Reset source</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warm boot</td>
<td>WatchDog</td>
<td>System will reset to AP address 0000H and begin running user application program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reset Pin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20H → ISP_CONTR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60H → ISP_CONTR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold boot</td>
<td>Power-on</td>
<td>System will reset to ISP address 0000H and begin running ISP monitor program, if not detected legitimate ISP command, system will software reset to the user program area automatically.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3. Memory Organization

The STC12C5410AD series MCU has separate address space for Program Memory and Data Memory. The logical separation of program and data memory allows the data memory to be accessed by 8-bit addresses, which can be quickly stored and manipulated by the CPU.

Program memory (ROM) can only be read, not written to. In the STC12C5410AD series, all the program memory are on-chip Flash memory, and without the capability of accessing external program memory because of no External Access Enable (/EA) and Program Store Enable (/PSEN) signals designed.

Data memory occupies a separate address space from program memory. In the 12C5A60S2 series, there are 256 bytes internal scratch-pad RAM and 256 bytes of on-chip expanded RAM(XRAM). The high 128 bytes of 256 bytes internal scratch-pad RAM seemingly overlap with SFRs in address. Actually, they are distinguished by different addressing way. Similarly, STC12C5410AD series also have no the capability of accessing external data memory because of no the bus that access external data memory.

3.1 Program Memory

Program memory is the memory which stores the program codes for the CPU to execute. There is 1K/2K/4K /6K/8K/10K/12K-bytes of flash memory embedded for program and data storage. The design allows users to configure it as like there are three individual partition banks inside. They are called AP(application program) region, IAP (In-Application-Program) region and ISP (In-System-Program) boot region. AP region is the space that user program is resided. IAP(In-Application-Program) region is the nonvolatile data storage space that may be used to save important parameters by AP program. In other words, the IAP capability of STC12C5410AD provides the user to read/write the user-defined on-chip data flash region to save the needing in use of external EEPROM device. ISP boot region is the space that allows a specific program we calls “ISP program” is resided. Inside the ISP region, the user can also enable read/write access to a small memory space to store parameters for specific purposes. Generally, the purpose of ISP program is to fulfill AP program upgrade without the need to remove the device from system. STC12C5410AD hardware catches the configuration information since power-up duration and performs out-of-space hardware-protection depending on pre-determined criteria. The criteria is AP region can be accessed by ISP program only, IAP region can be accessed by ISP program and AP program, and ISP region is prohibited access from AP program and ISP program itself. But if the “ISP data flash is enabled”, ISP program can read/write this space. When wrong settings on ISP-IAP SFRs are done, The “out-of-space” happens and STC12C5410AD follows the criteria above, ignore the trigger command.

After reset, the CPU begins execution from the location 0000H of Program Memory, where should be the starting of the user’s application code. To service the interrupts, the interrupt service locations (called interrupt vectors) should be located in the program memory. Each interrupt is assigned a fixed location in the program memory. The interrupt causes the CPU to jump to that location, where it commences execution of the service routine. External Interrupt 0, for example, is assigned to location 0003H. If External Interrupt 0 is going to be used, its service routine must begin at location 0003H. If the interrupt is not going to be used, its service location is available as general purpose program memory.

The interrupt service locations are spaced at an interval of 8 bytes: 0003H for External Interrupt 0, 000BH for Timer 0, 0013H for External Interrupt 1, 001BH for Timer 1, etc. If an interrupt service routine is short enough (as is often the case in control applications), it can reside entirely within that 8-byte interval. Longer service routines can use a jump instruction to skip over subsequent interrupt locations, if other interrupts are in use.
3.2 Data Memory(SRAM)

3.2.1 On-chip Scratch-Pad RAM

Just the same as the conventional 8051 microcontroller, there are 256 bytes of SRAM data memory plus 128 bytes of SFR space available on the STC12C5410AD. The lower 128 bytes of data memory may be accessed through both direct and indirect addressing. The upper 128 bytes of data memory and the 128 bytes of SFR space share the same address space. The upper 128 bytes of data memory may only be accessed using indirect addressing. The 128 bytes of SFR can only be accessed through direct addressing. The lowest 32 bytes of data memory are grouped into 4 banks of 8 registers each. Program instructions call out these registers as R0 through R7. The RS0 and RS1 bits in PSW register select which register bank is in use. Instructions using register addressing will only access the currently specified bank. This allows more efficient use of code space, since register instructions are shorter than instructions that use direct addressing. The next 16 bytes (20H~2FH) above the register banks form a block of bit-addressable memory space. The 80C51 instruction set includes a wide selection of single-bit instructions, and the 128 bits in this area can be directly addressed by these instructions. The bit addresses in this area are 00H through 7FH.

All of the bytes in the Lower 128 can be accessed by either direct or indirect addressing while the Upper 128 can only be accessed by indirect addressing. SFRs include the Port latches, timers, peripheral controls, etc. These registers can only be accessed by direct addressing. Sixteen addresses in SFR space are both byte- and bit-addressable. The bit-addressable SFRs are those whose address ends in 0H or 8H.
### PSW register

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSW</td>
<td>D0H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>CY</td>
<td>AC</td>
<td>F0</td>
<td>RS1</td>
<td>RS0</td>
<td>OV</td>
<td>F1</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CY**: Carry flag.
This bit is set when the last arithmetic operation resulted in a carry (addition) or a borrow (subtraction). It is cleared to logic 0 by all other arithmetic operations.

**AC**: Auxiliary Carry Flag. (For BCD operations)
This bit is set when the last arithmetic operation resulted in a carry into (addition) or a borrow from (subtraction) the high order nibble. It is cleared to logic 0 by all other arithmetic operations.

**F0**: Flag 0. (Available to the user for general purposes)

**RS1**: Register bank select control bit 1.
**RS0**: Register bank select control bit 0.

[RS1, RS0] select which register bank is used during register accesses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RS1</th>
<th>RS0</th>
<th>Working Register Bank (R0~R7) and Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Bank 0(00H~07H)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bank 1(08H~0FH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Bank 2(10H~17H)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bank 3(18H~1FH)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OV**: Overflow flag.
This bit is set to 1 under the following circumstances:
- An ADD, ADDC, or SUBB instruction causes a sign-change overflow.
- A MUL instruction results in an overflow (result is greater than 255).
- A DIV instruction causes a divide-by-zero condition.
The OV bit is cleared to 0 by the ADD, ADDC, SUBB, MUL, and DIV instructions in all other cases.

**F1**: Flag 1. User-defined flag.

**P**: Parity flag.
This bit is set to logic 1 if the sum of the eight bits in the accumulator is odd and cleared if the sum is even.

---

**SP**: Stack Pointer.
The Stack Pointer Register is 8 bits wide. It is incremented before data is stored during PUSH and CALL executions. The stack may reside anywhere in on-chip RAM. On reset, the Stack Pointer is initialized to 07H causing the stack to begin at location 08H, which is also the first register (R0) of register bank 1. Thus, if more than one register bank is to be used, the SP should be initialized to a location in the data memory not being used for data storage. The stack depth can extend up to 256 bytes.
; Demo Program of internal common 256 bytes RAM

; /*---------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC MCU International Limited ------------*/
; /* --- STC 1T Series MCU internal common 256 bytes RAM Demo ---*/
; /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ----------------------*/
; /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ------------------------*/
; /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ------------------------*/
; /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the ---*/
; /* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC ---*/
; /*-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

TEST_CONST  EQU  5AH
; TEST_RAM   EQU  03H

ORG  0000H
LJMP  INITIAL

ORG  0050H
INITIAL:
  MOV  R0,  #253
  MOV  R1,  #3H

TEST_ALL_RAM:
  MOV  R2,  #0FFH
  TEST_ONE_RAM:
    MOV  A,  R2
    MOV  @R1,  A
    CLR  A
    CJNE  A,  2H,  ERROR_DISPLAY
    DJNZ  R2,  TEST_ONE_RAM
    INC  R1
    DJNZ  R0,  TEST_ALL_RAM

OK_DISPLAY:
  MOV  P1,  #11111110B

Wait1:
  SJMP  Wait1

ERROR_DISPLAY:
  MOV  A,  R1
  MOV  P1,  A

Wait2:
  SJMP  Wait2

END
3.2.2 Auxiliary RAM

There are 256 bytes of additional data RAM available on STC12C5410AD. They may be accessed by the instructions MOVX @Ri or MOVX @DPTR. The auxiliary RAM is the default target for the address range from 0x0000 to 0x01FF and can be indirectly accessed by move external instruction, “MOVX @Ri” and “MOVX @DPTR”.

For KEIL-C51 compiler, to assign the variables to be located at Auxiliary RAM, the “pdata” or “xdata” definition should be used. After being compiled, the variables declared by “pdata” and “xdata” will become the memories accessed by “MOVX @Ri” and “MOVX @DPTR”, respectively. Thus the STC12C5410AD hardware can access them correctly.

An example program for internal expanded RAM demo of STC12C5410AD:

```c
#include <reg52.h>
#include <intrins.h>        /* use _nop_() function */

sfr AUXR = 0x8e;          /* use _nop_() function */
sfr IPH  = 0xb7;           
sfr WDT_CONTR  = 0xe1;     
sfr ISP_DATA  = 0xe2;      
sfr ISP_ADDRH  = 0xe3;     
sfr ISP_ADDRRL = 0xe4;     
sfr ISP_CMD   = 0xe5;      
sfr ISP_TRIG  = 0xe6;      
sfr ISP_CONTR = 0xe7;      
```

---

STC MCU Limited. website: www.STCMCU.com
sbit ERROR_LED = P1^5;
sbit OK_LED = P1^7;

void main()
{
    unsigned int array_point = 0;

    /* Test_array_one[128], Test_array_two[128]*/
    unsigned char xdata Test_array_one[128] =
    {
        0x00, 0x01, 0x02, 0x03, 0x04, 0x05, 0x06, 0x07,
        0x08, 0x09, 0x0a, 0x0b, 0x0c, 0x0d, 0x0e, 0x0f,
        0x10, 0x11, 0x12, 0x13, 0x14, 0x15, 0x16, 0x17,
        0x18, 0x19, 0x1a, 0x1b, 0x1c, 0x1d, 0x1e, 0x1f,
        0x20, 0x21, 0x22, 0x23, 0x24, 0x25, 0x26, 0x27,
        0x28, 0x29, 0x2a, 0x2b, 0x2c, 0x2d, 0x2e, 0x2f,
        0x30, 0x31, 0x32, 0x33, 0x34, 0x35, 0x36, 0x37,
        0x38, 0x39, 0x3a, 0x3b, 0x3c, 0x3d, 0x3e, 0x3f,
        0x40, 0x41, 0x42, 0x43, 0x44, 0x45, 0x46, 0x47,
        0x48, 0x49, 0x4a, 0x4b, 0x4c, 0x4d, 0x4e, 0x4f,
        0x50, 0x51, 0x52, 0x53, 0x54, 0x55, 0x56, 0x57,
        0x58, 0x59, 0x5a, 0x5b, 0x5c, 0x5d, 0x5e, 0x5f,
        0x60, 0x61, 0x62, 0x63, 0x64, 0x65, 0x66, 0x67,
        0x68, 0x69, 0x6a, 0x6b, 0x6c, 0x6d, 0x6e, 0x6f,
        0x70, 0x71, 0x72, 0x73, 0x74, 0x75, 0x76, 0x77,
        0x78, 0x79, 0x7a, 0x7b, 0x7c, 0x7d, 0x7e, 0x7f,
    };

    unsigned char xdata Test_array_two[128] =
    {
        0x00, 0x01, 0x02, 0x03, 0x04, 0x05, 0x06, 0x07,
        0x08, 0x09, 0x0a, 0x0b, 0x0c, 0x0d, 0x0e, 0x0f,
        0x10, 0x11, 0x12, 0x13, 0x14, 0x15, 0x16, 0x17,
        0x18, 0x19, 0x1a, 0x1b, 0x1c, 0x1d, 0x1e, 0x1f,
        0x20, 0x21, 0x22, 0x23, 0x24, 0x25, 0x26, 0x27,
        0x28, 0x29, 0x2a, 0x2b, 0x2c, 0x2d, 0x2e, 0x2f,
        0x30, 0x31, 0x32, 0x33, 0x34, 0x35, 0x36, 0x37,
        0x38, 0x39, 0x3a, 0x3b, 0x3c, 0x3d, 0x3e, 0x3f,
        0x40, 0x41, 0x42, 0x43, 0x44, 0x45, 0x46, 0x47,
        0x48, 0x49, 0x4a, 0x4b, 0x4c, 0x4d, 0x4e, 0x4f,
        0x50, 0x51, 0x52, 0x53, 0x54, 0x55, 0x56, 0x57,
        0x58, 0x59, 0x5a, 0x5b, 0x5c, 0x5d, 0x5e, 0x5f,
        0x60, 0x61, 0x62, 0x63, 0x64, 0x65, 0x66, 0x67,
        0x68, 0x69, 0x6a, 0x6b, 0x6c, 0x6d, 0x6e, 0x6f,
        0x70, 0x71, 0x72, 0x73, 0x74, 0x75, 0x76, 0x77,
        0x78, 0x79, 0x7a, 0x7b, 0x7c, 0x7d, 0x7e, 0x7f,
    };

ERROR_LED = 1;
OK_LED = 1;
for(array_point=0; array_point<256; array_point++)
{
    if(Test_array_one[array_point]!=Test_array_two[array_point])
    {
        ERROR_LED = 0;
        OK_LED = 1;
        break;
    }
    else
    {
        OK_LED = 0;
        ERROR_LED = 1;
    }
}
while(1);
### 3.3 Special Function Registers

#### 3.3.1 Special Function Registers Address Map

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>0/8</th>
<th>1/9</th>
<th>2/A</th>
<th>3/B</th>
<th>4/C</th>
<th>5/D</th>
<th>6/E</th>
<th>7/F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0F8H</td>
<td>CH</td>
<td>CCAP0H</td>
<td>CCAP1H</td>
<td>CCAP2H</td>
<td>CCAP3H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0FFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0F0H</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>PCA_PWM0</td>
<td>PCA_PWM1</td>
<td>PCA_PWM2</td>
<td>PCA_PWM3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0F7H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0E8H</td>
<td>CL</td>
<td>CCAP0L</td>
<td>CCAP1L</td>
<td>CCAP2L</td>
<td>CCAP3L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0EFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0E0H</td>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>WDT_CONR</td>
<td>ISP_DATA</td>
<td>ISP_ADDRH</td>
<td>ISP_ADDRL</td>
<td>ISP_CMD</td>
<td>ISP_TRIG</td>
<td>ISP_CONTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0D8H</td>
<td>CCON</td>
<td>CMOD</td>
<td>CCAPM0</td>
<td>CCAPM1</td>
<td>CCAPM2</td>
<td>CCAPM3</td>
<td></td>
<td>0DFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0D0H</td>
<td>PSW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0D7H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0C8H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0CFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0COH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ADC_CONTR</td>
<td>ADC_DATA</td>
<td>CLK_DIV</td>
<td></td>
<td>0C7H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0B8H</td>
<td>IP</td>
<td></td>
<td>SADEN</td>
<td>ADC_LOW2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0BFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0B0H</td>
<td>P3</td>
<td>P3M0</td>
<td>P3M1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IPH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0B7H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0A8H</td>
<td>IE</td>
<td></td>
<td>SADDR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0AFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0A0H</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Don't use</td>
<td></td>
<td>0A7H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>098H</td>
<td>SCON</td>
<td></td>
<td>SBUF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>09FH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>090H</td>
<td>P1</td>
<td>P1M0</td>
<td>P1M1</td>
<td>P0M0</td>
<td>P0M1</td>
<td>P2M0</td>
<td>P2M1</td>
<td>097H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>088H</td>
<td>TCON</td>
<td>TMOD</td>
<td>TL0</td>
<td>TL1</td>
<td>TH0</td>
<td>TH1</td>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>WAKE_CLK0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>080H</td>
<td>P0</td>
<td>SP</td>
<td>DPL</td>
<td>DPH</td>
<td>SPSTAT</td>
<td>SPCTL</td>
<td>SPDAT</td>
<td>PCON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Bit Addressable**
- **Non Bit Addressable**
### 3.3.2 Special Function Registers Bits Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit Address and Symbol</th>
<th>Value after Power-on or Reset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P0</td>
<td>Port 0</td>
<td>80H</td>
<td>P0.7</td>
<td>P0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP</td>
<td>Stack Pointer</td>
<td>81H</td>
<td>0000 0111B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPTR</td>
<td>Data Pointer Low</td>
<td>82H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Data Pointer High</td>
<td>83H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPSTAT</td>
<td>SPI Status register</td>
<td>84H</td>
<td>00xx xxxxxB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPCTL</td>
<td>SPI control register</td>
<td>85H</td>
<td>0000 0100B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPDAT</td>
<td>SPI Data register</td>
<td>86H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>Power Control</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>0011 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCON</td>
<td>Timer Control</td>
<td>88H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMOD</td>
<td>Timer Mode</td>
<td>89H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL0</td>
<td>Timer Low 0</td>
<td>8AH</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL1</td>
<td>Timer Low 1</td>
<td>8BH</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH0</td>
<td>Timer High 0</td>
<td>8CH</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH1</td>
<td>Timer High 1</td>
<td>8DH</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>Auxiliary register</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>0000 xx00B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>Port 1</td>
<td>90H</td>
<td>P1.7</td>
<td>P1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1M0</td>
<td>P1 configuration 0</td>
<td>91H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1M1</td>
<td>P1 configuration 1</td>
<td>92H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0M0</td>
<td>P0 configuration 0</td>
<td>93H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P0M1</td>
<td>P0 configuration 1</td>
<td>94H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2M0</td>
<td>P2 configuration 0</td>
<td>95H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2M1</td>
<td>P2 configuration 1</td>
<td>96H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCON</td>
<td>Serial Control</td>
<td>98H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBUF</td>
<td>Serial Buffer</td>
<td>99H</td>
<td>xxxx xxxxB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>Port 2</td>
<td>A0H</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Interrupt Enable</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SADDR</td>
<td>Slave Address</td>
<td>A9H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>Port 3</td>
<td>B0H</td>
<td>P3.7</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3M0</td>
<td>P2 configuration 0</td>
<td>B1H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3M1</td>
<td>P3 configuration 1</td>
<td>B2H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority Low</td>
<td>B8H</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Address</td>
<td>Bit Address and Symbol</td>
<td>Value after Power-on or Reset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SADEN</td>
<td>Slave Address Mask</td>
<td>B9H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_CONTR</td>
<td>ADC Control</td>
<td>C5H</td>
<td>ADC_POWER SPEED1 SPEED0</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_DATA</td>
<td>ADC Result High</td>
<td>C6H</td>
<td>ADC_FLAG ADC_START CHS2</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_LOW2</td>
<td>ADC Result Low</td>
<td>BEH</td>
<td>CHS1 CHS0</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLK_DIV</td>
<td>Clock Divider</td>
<td>C7H</td>
<td>CLKS2 CLKS1 CLKS0</td>
<td>xxxx x000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSW</td>
<td>Program Status Word</td>
<td>D0H</td>
<td>CY AC F0 RS1 RS0 OV F1 P</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCON</td>
<td>PCA Control Register</td>
<td>D8H</td>
<td>CF CR - - CCF3 CCF2 CCF1</td>
<td>00xx 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMOD</td>
<td>PCA Mode Register</td>
<td>D9H</td>
<td>CIDL - - - CPS1 CPS0 ECF</td>
<td>00xx x000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM0</td>
<td>PCA Module 0 Mode Register</td>
<td>DAH</td>
<td>ECOM0 CAPP0 CAPN0 MAT0 TOG0 PWM0 ECCF0</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM1</td>
<td>PCA Module 1 Mode Register</td>
<td>DBH</td>
<td>ECOM1 CAPP1 CAPN1 MAT1 TOG1 PWM1 ECCF1</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM2</td>
<td>PCA Module 2 Mode Register</td>
<td>DCH</td>
<td>ECOM2 CAPP2 CAPN2 MAT2 TOG2 PWM2 ECCF2</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM3</td>
<td>PCA Module 3 Mode Register</td>
<td>DDH</td>
<td>ECOM3 CAPP3 CAPN3 MAT3 TOG3 PWM3 ECCF3</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>Accumulator</td>
<td>E0H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WDT_CONTR</td>
<td>Watch-Dog-Timer Control Register</td>
<td>E1H</td>
<td>WDT_FLAG - EN_WDT CLR_WDT IDLE_WDT PS2 PS1 PS0</td>
<td>xx00 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_DATA</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Data Register</td>
<td>E2H</td>
<td></td>
<td>1111 1111B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_ADDRH</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Address High</td>
<td>E3H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_ADDRL</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Address Low</td>
<td>E4H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_CMD</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Command Register</td>
<td>E5H</td>
<td>- - - - - MS1 MS0</td>
<td>xxxx x000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_TRIG</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Command Trigger</td>
<td>E6H</td>
<td></td>
<td>xxxx xxxxB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_CONTR</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Control Register</td>
<td>E7H</td>
<td>IAPEN SWBS SWRST CMD_FAIL WT2 WT1 WT0</td>
<td>0000 x000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CL</td>
<td>PCA Base Timer Low</td>
<td>E9H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP0L</td>
<td>PCA Module 0 capture register low</td>
<td>EAH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP1L</td>
<td>PCA Module 1 capture register low</td>
<td>EBH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP2L</td>
<td>PCA Module-2 capture register Low</td>
<td>ECH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Address</td>
<td>Bit Address and Symbol</td>
<td>Value after Power-on or Reset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP3L</td>
<td>PCA Module-3 capture register Low</td>
<td>EDH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>B Register</td>
<td>F0H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM0</td>
<td>PCA PWM mode auxiliary register 1</td>
<td>F2H</td>
<td>- - - - - - - - - -</td>
<td>xxxxx xx00B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM1</td>
<td>PCA PWM mode auxiliary register 1</td>
<td>F3H</td>
<td>- - - - - - - - - -</td>
<td>xxxxx xx00B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM2</td>
<td>PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 2</td>
<td>F4H</td>
<td>- - - - - - - - - -</td>
<td>xxxxx xx00B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM3</td>
<td>PCA PWM Mode Auxiliary Register 3</td>
<td>F5H</td>
<td>- - - - - - - - - -</td>
<td>xxxxx xx00B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>PCA Base Timer High</td>
<td>F9H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP0H</td>
<td>PCA module 0 capture register high</td>
<td>FAH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP1H</td>
<td>PCA module 1 capture register high</td>
<td>FBH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP2H</td>
<td>PCA Module-2 C capture register High</td>
<td>FCH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP3H</td>
<td>PCA Module-3 capture register High</td>
<td>FDH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some common SFRs of standard 8051 are shown as below.

**Accumulator**

ACC is the Accumulator register. The mnemonics for accumulator-specific instructions, however, refer to the accumulator simply as A.

**B-Register**

The B register is used during multiply and divide operations. For other instructions it can be treated as another scratch pad register.

**Stack Pointer**

The Stack Pointer register is 8 bits wide. It is incremented before data is stored during PUSH and CALL executions. While the stack may reside anywhere in on-chip RAM, the Stack Pointer is initialized to 07H after a reset. Therefore, the first value pushed on the stack is placed at location 0x08, which is also the first register (R0) of register bank 1. Thus, if more than one register bank is to be used, the SP should be initialized to a location in the data memory not being used for data storage. The stack depth can extend up to 256 bytes.

**Data Pointer Register (DPTR)**

The Data Pointer (DPTR) consists of a high byte (DPH) and a low byte (DPL). Its intended function is to hold a 16-bit address. It may be manipulated as a 16-bit register or as two independent 8-bit registers.

**Program Status Word (PSW)**

The program status word (PSW) contains several status bits that reflect the current state of the CPU. The PSW, shown below, resides in the SFR space. It contains the Carry bit, the Auxiliary Carry (for BCD operation), the two register bank select bits, the Overflow flag, a Parity bit and two user-definable status flags.

The Carry bit, other than serving the function of a Carry bit in arithmetic operations, also serves as the “Accumulator” for a number of Boolean operations.

The bits RS0 and RS1 are used to select one of the four register banks shown in the previous page. A number of instructions refer to these RAM locations as R0 through R7.

The Parity bit reflects the number of 1s in the Accumulator. P=1 if the Accumulator contains an odd number of 1s and otherwise P=0.
PSW register

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PSW</td>
<td>D0H</td>
<td></td>
<td>CY</td>
<td>AC</td>
<td>F0</td>
<td>RS1</td>
<td>RS0</td>
<td>OV</td>
<td>F1</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CY**: Carry flag.
This bit is set when the last arithmetic operation resulted in a carry (addition) or a borrow (subtraction). It is cleared to logic 0 by all other arithmetic operations.

**AC**: Auxilliary Carry Flag. (For BCD operations)
This bit is set when the last arithmetic operation resulted in a carry into (addition) or a borrow from (subtraction) the high order nibble. It is cleared to logic 0 by all other arithmetic operations.

**F0**: Flag 0. (Available to the user for general purposes)

**RS1**: Register bank select control bit 1.
**RS0**: Register bank select control bit 0.

---

[RS1  RS0] select which register bank is used during register accesses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RS1</th>
<th>RS0</th>
<th>Working Register Bank (R0~R7) and Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Bank 0 (00H~07H)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bank 1 (08H~0FH)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Bank 2 (10H~17H)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bank 3 (18H~1FH)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**OV**: Overflow flag.
This bit is set to 1 under the following circumstances:
- An ADD, ADDC, or SUBB instruction causes a sign-change overflow.
- A MUL instruction results in an overflow (result is greater than 255).
- A DIV instruction causes a divide-by-zero condition.

The OV bit is cleared to 0 by the ADD, ADDC, SUBB, MUL, and DIV instructions in all other cases.

**F1**: Flag 1. User-defined flag.

**P**: Parity flag.
This bit is set to logic 1 if the sum of the eight bits in the accumulator is odd and cleared if the sum is even.
Chapter 4. Configurable I/O Ports of STC12C5410AD series

4.1 I/O Ports Configurations

All I/O ports of STC12C5410AD may be independently configured to one of four modes by setting the corresponding bit in two mode registers PxMn (x=0 ~ 3, n=0, 1). The four modes are quasi-bidirectional (standard 8051 port output), push-pull output, input-only or open-drain output. All port pins default to quasi-bidirectional after reset. Each one has a Schmitt-triggered input for improved input noise rejection. Any port can drive 20mA current, but the whole chip had better drive lower than 90mA current.

Configure I/O ports mode

P3 Configure <P3.7, P3.6, P3.5, P3.4, P3.3, P3.2, P3.1, P3.0 port> (P3 address: B0H)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P3M0[7 : 0]</th>
<th>P3M1[7 : 0]</th>
<th>I/O ports Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>quasi_bidirectional (standard 8051 I/O port output)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sink Current up to 20mA, pull-up Current is 230μA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Because of manufactured error, the actual pull-up current is 250μA ~ 150μA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>push-pull output (strong pull-up output), current can be up to 20mA, resistors need to be added to restrict current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>input-only (high-impedance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Open Drain, internal pull-up resistors should be disabled and external pull-up resistors need to join.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: MOV P3M0, #10100000B  
MOV P3M1, #10010000B

;P3.7 in Open Drain mode, P3.5 in high-impedance input, P3.4 in strong push-pull output, P3.3/P3.2/P3.1/P3.0 in quasi_bidirectional/weak pull-up

P2 Configure <P2.7, P2.6, P2.5, P2.4, P2.3, P2.2, P2.1, P2.0 port> (P2 address: A0H)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P2M0[7 : 0]</th>
<th>P2M1[7 : 0]</th>
<th>I/O ports Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>quasi_bidirectional (standard 8051 I/O port output)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sink Current up to 20mA, pull-up Current is 230μA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Because of manufactured error, the actual pull-up current is 250μA ~ 150μA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>push-pull output (strong pull-up output), current can be up to 20mA, resistors need to be added to restrict current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>input-only (high-impedance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Open Drain, internal pull-up resistors should be disabled and external pull-up resistors need to join.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: MOV P2M0, #10100000B  
MOV P2M1, #11000000B

;P2.7 in Open Drain mode, P2.6 in strong push-pull output, P2.5 in high-impedance input, P2.4/P2.3/P2.2/P2.1/P2.0 in quasi_bidirectional/weak pull-up
P1 Configure <P1.7, P1.6, P1.5, P1.4, P1.3, P1.2, P1.1, P1.0 port> (P1 address: 90H)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P1M0[7 : 0]</th>
<th>P1M1[7 : 0]</th>
<th>I/O ports Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>quasi_bidirectional (standard 8051 I/O port output), Sink Current up to 20mA, pull-up Current is 230μA. Because of manufactured error, the actual pull-up current is 250uA ~ 150uA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>push-pull output (strong pull-up output, current can be up to 20mA, resistors need to be added to restrict current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>input-only (high-impedance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Open Drain, internal pull-up resistors should be disabled and external pull-up resistors need to join.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: MOV P1M0, #10100000B
MOV P1M1, #11000000B

;P1.7 in Open Drain mode, P1.6 in strong push-pull output, P1.5 in high-impedance input, P1.4/P1.3/P1.2/P1.1/P1.0 in quasi_bidirectional/weak pull-up

P0 Configure <P0.7, P0.6, P0.5, P0.4, P0.3, P0.2, P0.1, P0.0 port> (P0 address: 80H)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P0M0[7 : 0]</th>
<th>P0M1[7 : 0]</th>
<th>I/O ports Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>quasi_bidirectional (standard 8051 I/O port output), Sink Current up to 20mA, pull-up Current is 230μA. Because of manufactured error, the actual pull-up current is 250uA ~ 150uA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>push-pull output (strong pull-up output, current can be up to 20mA, resistors need to be added to restrict current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>input-only (high-impedance)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Open Drain, internal pull-up resistors should be disabled and external pull-up resistors need to join.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: MOV P0M0, #00001010B
MOV P0M1, #00001100B

;P0.3 in Open Drain mode, P0.2 in strong push-pull output, P0.1 in high-impedance input, P0.0 in quasi_bidirectional/weak pull-up

Some SFRs related with I/O ports are listed below.

**P3 register** (bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>B0H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P3.7</td>
<td>P3.6</td>
<td>P3.5</td>
<td>P3.4</td>
<td>P3.3</td>
<td>P3.2</td>
<td>P3.1</td>
<td>P3.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P3 register could be bit-addressable and set/cleared by CPU. And P3.7~P3.0 could be set/cleared by CPU.

**P3M0 register** (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P3M0</td>
<td>B1H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P3M0.7</td>
<td>P3M0.6</td>
<td>P3M0.5</td>
<td>P3M0.4</td>
<td>P3M0.3</td>
<td>P3M0.2</td>
<td>P3M0.1</td>
<td>P3M0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**P3M1 register** (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P3M1</td>
<td>B2H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P3M1.7</td>
<td>P3M1.6</td>
<td>P3M1.5</td>
<td>P3M1.4</td>
<td>P3M1.3</td>
<td>P3M1.2</td>
<td>P3M1.1</td>
<td>P3M1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### P2 register (bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>A0H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P2.7</td>
<td>P2.6</td>
<td>P2.5</td>
<td>P2.4</td>
<td>P2.3</td>
<td>P2.2</td>
<td>P2.1</td>
<td>P2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P2 register could be bit-addressable and set/cleared by CPU. And P2.7–P2.0 could be set/cleared by CPU.

### P2M0 register (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P2M0</td>
<td>95H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P2M0.7</td>
<td>P2M0.6</td>
<td>P2M0.5</td>
<td>P2M0.4</td>
<td>P2M0.3</td>
<td>P2M0.2</td>
<td>P2M0.1</td>
<td>P2M0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### P2M1 register (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P2M1</td>
<td>96H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P2M1.7</td>
<td>P2M1.6</td>
<td>P2M1.5</td>
<td>P2M1.4</td>
<td>P2M1.3</td>
<td>P2M1.2</td>
<td>P2M1.1</td>
<td>P2M1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### P1 register (bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>90H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P1.7</td>
<td>P1.6</td>
<td>P1.5</td>
<td>P1.4</td>
<td>P1.3</td>
<td>P1.2</td>
<td>P1.1</td>
<td>P1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P1 register could be bit-addressable and set/cleared by CPU. And P1.7–P1.0 could be set/cleared by CPU.

### P1M0 register (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1M0</td>
<td>91H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P1M0.7</td>
<td>P1M0.6</td>
<td>P1M0.5</td>
<td>P1M0.4</td>
<td>P1M0.3</td>
<td>P1M0.2</td>
<td>P1M0.1</td>
<td>P1M0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### P1M1 register (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1M1</td>
<td>92H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P1M1.7</td>
<td>P1M1.6</td>
<td>P1M1.5</td>
<td>P1M1.4</td>
<td>P1M1.3</td>
<td>P1M1.2</td>
<td>P1M1.1</td>
<td>P1M1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### P0 register (bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P0</td>
<td>80H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P0.7</td>
<td>P0.6</td>
<td>P0.5</td>
<td>P0.4</td>
<td>P0.3</td>
<td>P0.2</td>
<td>P0.1</td>
<td>P0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P0 register could be bit-addressable. And P0.3–P0.0 could be set/cleared by CPU.

### P0M0 register (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P0M0</td>
<td>93H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P0M0.7</td>
<td>P0M0.6</td>
<td>P0M0.5</td>
<td>P0M0.4</td>
<td>P0M0.3</td>
<td>P0M0.2</td>
<td>P0M0.1</td>
<td>P0M0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### P0M1 register (non bit addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P0M1</td>
<td>94H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>P0M1.7</td>
<td>P0M1.6</td>
<td>P0M1.5</td>
<td>P0M1.4</td>
<td>P0M1.3</td>
<td>P0M1.2</td>
<td>P0M1.1</td>
<td>P0M1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2 I/O ports Modes

4.2.1 Quasi-bidirectional I/O

Port pins in quasi-bidirectional output mode function similar to the standard 8051 port pins. A quasi-bidirectional port can be used as an input and output without the need to reconfigure the port. This is possible because when the port outputs a logic high, it is weakly driven, allowing an external device to pull the pin low. When the pin outputs low, it is driven strongly and able to sink a large current. There are three pull-up transistors in the quasi-bidirectional output that serve different purposes.

One of these pull-ups, called the “very weak” pull-up, is turned on whenever the port register for the pin contains a logic “1”. This very weak pull-up sources a very small current that will pull the pin high if it is left floating.

A second pull-up, called the “weak” pull-up, is turned on when the port register for the pin contains a logic “1” and the pin itself is also at a logic “1” level. This pull-up provides the primary source current for a quasi-bidirectional pin that is outputting a 1. If this pin is pulled low by the external device, this weak pull-up turns off, and only the very weak pull-up remains on. In order to pull the pin low under these conditions, the external device has to sink enough current to over-power the weak pull-up and pull the port pin below its input threshold voltage.

The third pull-up is referred to as the “strong” pull-up. This pull-up is used to speed up low-to-high transitions on a quasi-bidirectional port pin when the port register changes from a logic “0” to a logic “1”. When this occurs, the strong pull-up turns on for two CPU clocks, quickly pulling the port pin high.

![Quasi-bidirectional output](image-url)
4.2.2 Push-pull Output

The push-pull output configuration has the same pull-down structure as both the open-drain and the quasi-bidirectional output modes, but provides a continuous strong pull-up when the port register contains a logic “1”. The push-pull mode may be used when more source current is needed from a port output. In addition, input path of the port pin in this configuration is also the same as quasi-bidirectional mode.

![Push-pull output](image)

4.2.3 Input-only (High-Impedance) Mode

The input-only configuration is a Schmitt-triggered input without any pull-up resistors on the pin.

![Input-only Mode](image)

4.2.4 Open-drain Output

The open-drain output configuration turns off all pull-ups and only drives the pull-down transistor of the port pin when the port register contains a logic “0”. To use this configuration in application, a port pin must have an external pull-up, typically tied to VCC. The input path of the port pin in this configuration is the same as quasi-bidirectional mode.

![Open-drain output](image)
4.3 I/O port application notes

Traditional 8051 access I/O (signal transition or read status) timing is 12 clocks, STC12C5410AD series MCU is 4 clocks. When you need to read an external signal, if internal output a rising edge signal, for the traditional 8051, this process is 12 clocks, you can read at once, but for STC12C5410AD series MCU, this process is 4 clocks, when internal instructions is complete but external signal is not ready, so you must delay 1~2 nop operation.

When MCU is connected to a SPI or I2C or other open-drain peripherals circuit, you need add a 10K pull-up resistor.

Some IO port connected to a PNP transistor, but no pul-up resistor. The correct access method is IO port pull-up resistor and transistor base resistor should be consistent, or IO port is set to a strongly push-pull output mode.

Using IO port drive LED directly or matrix key scan, needs add a 470ohm to 1Kohm resistor to limit current.

4.4 Typical transistor control circuit

If I/O is configed as “weak” pull-up, you should add a external pull-up resistor R1(3.3K~10K ohm). If no pull-up resistor R1, proposal to add a 15K ohm series resistor R2 at least or config I/O as “push-pull” mode.

4.5 Typical diode control circuit

For weak pull-up / quasi-bidirectional I/O, use sink current drive LED, current limiting resistor as greater than 1K ohm, minimum not less than 470 ohm.

For push-pull / strong pull-up I/O, use drive current drive LED.
4.6 3V/5V hybrid system

When STC12C5410AD series 5V MCU connect to 3.3V peripherals. To prevent the 3.3V device can not afford to 5V voltage, the 5V MCU corresponding I/O should first add a 330 ohm current limiting resistor to 3.3 device I/O ports. And in initialization of procedures the 5V MCU corresponding I/O is set to open drain mode, disconnect the internal pull-up resistor, the corresponding 3.3V device I/O port add 10K ohm external pull-up resistor to the 3.3V device VCC, so high level to 3.3V and low to 0V, which can proper functioning.

When STC12LE5410AD series 3V MCU connect to 5V peripherals. To prevent the 3V MCU can not afford to 5V voltage, if the corresponding I/O port as input port, the port may be in an isolation diode in series, isolated high-voltage part. When the external signal is higher than MCU operating voltage, the diode cut-off, I/O have been pulled high by the internal pull-up resistor; when the external signal is low, the diode conduction, I/O port voltage is limited to 0.7V, it’s low signal to MCU.

When STC12LE5410AD series 3V MCU connect to 5V peripherals. To prevent the 3V MCU can not afford to 5V voltage, if the corresponding I/O port as output port, the port may be connect a NPN transistor to isolate high-voltage part. The circuit is shown as below.
4.7 How to make I/O port low after MCU reset

Traditional 8051 MCU power-on reset, the general IO port are weak pull-high output, while many practical applications require IO port remain low level after power-on reset, otherwise the system malfunction would be generated. For STC12C5410AD series MCU, IO port can add a pull-down resistor (1K/2K/3K), so that when power-on reset, although a weak internal pull-up to make MCU output high, but because of the limited capacity of the internal pull-up, it can not pull-high the pad, so this IO port is low level after power-on reset. If the I/O port need to drive high, you can set the IO model as the push-pull output mode, while the push-pull mode the drive current can be up to 20mA, so it can drive this I/O high.

![Diagram](image.png)

4.8 I/O status while PWM outputing

When I/O is used as PWM port, it’s status as bellow:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before PWM output</th>
<th>While PWM outputing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quasi-bidirectional</td>
<td>Push-Pull (Strong pull-high need 1K~10K limiting resistor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Push-Pull</td>
<td>Push-Pull (Strong pull-high need 1K~10K limiting resistor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input ony (Floating)</td>
<td>PWM Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open-drain</td>
<td>Open-drain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Diagram](image.png)
4.9 I/O drive LED application circuit

I/O dynamic scan driver 4 groups of digital tube Cathode circuit

I/O dynamic scan driver 4 groups of digital tube anode circuit
4.10 I/O immediately drive LCD application circuit

How to light on the LCD pixels:
When the pixels corresponding COM-side and SEG-side voltage difference is greater than 1/2VCC, this pixel is lit, otherwise off.

Contrl SEG-side (Segment):
I/O direct drive Segment lines, control Segment output high-level (VCC) or low-level (0V).

Contrl COM-side (Common):
I/O port and two 100K dividing resistors jointly controlled Common line, when the IO output "0", the Common-line is low level (0V), when the IO push-pull output "1", the Common line is high level (VCC), when IO as high-impedance input, the Common line is 1/2VCC.

Before MCU enter Power_Down mode, the I/O output high level, then Common side will have no leakage current.
4.11 Using A/D Conversion to scan key application circuit

This circuit can achieve a single key or combi key scan, resistance need to configure the actual needs.

This circuit use 10 keys spaced partial pressure, for each key, range of allowed error is +/-0.25V, it can effectively avoid failure of key detection because of resistance or temperature drift. If the requested key detection more stable and reliable, can reduce the number of buttons, to relax the voltage range of each key.
Chapter 5. Instruction System

5.1 Addressing Modes

Addressing modes are an integral part of each computer's instruction set. They allow specifying the source or destination of data in different ways, depending on the programming situation. There are five modes available:

- Immediate
- Direct
- Indirect
- Register
- Indexed

Immediate Constant (IMM)

The value of a constant can follow the opcode in the program memory. For example,

```
MOV A, #70H
```

loads the Accumulator with the hex digits 70. The same number could be specified in decimal number as 112.

Direct Addressing (DIR)

In direct addressing the operand is specified by an 8-bit address field in the instruction. Only 128 lowest bytes of internal data RAM and SFRs can be direct addressed.

Indirect Addressing (IND)

In indirect addressing the instruction specified a register which contains the address of the operand. Both internal and external RAM can be indirectly addressed.

The address register for 8-bit addresses can be R0 or R1 of the selected bank, or the Stack Pointer. The address register for 16-bit addresses can only be the 16-bit data pointer register – DPTR.

Register Instruction (REG)

The register banks, containing registers R0 through R7, can be accessed by certain instructions which carry a 3-bit register specification within the opcode of the instruction. Instructions that access the registers this way are code efficient because this mode eliminates the need of an extra address byte. When such instruction is executed, one of the eight registers in the selected bank is accessed.

Register-Specific Instruction

Some instructions are specific to a certain register. For example, some instructions always operate on the accumulator or data pointer, etc. No address byte is needed for such instructions. The opcode itself does it.

Index Addressing

Only program memory can be accessed with indexed addressing and it can only be read. This addressing mode is intended for reading look-up tables in program memory. A 16-bit base register (either DPTR or PC) points to the base of the table, and the accumulator is set up with the table entry number. Another type of indexed addressing is used in the conditional jump instruction.

In conditional jump, the destination address is computed as the sum of the base pointer and the accumulator.
5.2 Instruction Set Summary

The STC MCU instructions are fully compatible with the standard 8051's, which are divided among five functional groups:

- Arithmetic
- Logical
- Data transfer
- Boolean variable
- Program branching

The following tables provides a quick reference chart showing all the 8051 and STC 1T MCU instructions. Once you are familiar with the instruction set, this chart should prove a handy and quick source of reference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Byte</th>
<th>Execution clocks of 12T MCU</th>
<th>Execution clocks of STC 1T MCU</th>
<th>Efficiency improved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ARITHMETIC OPERATIONS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD A, Rn</td>
<td>Add register to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD A, direct</td>
<td>Add direct byte to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD A, @Ri</td>
<td>Add indirect RAM to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADD A, #data</td>
<td>Add immediate data to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDC A, Rn</td>
<td>Add register to Accumulator with Carry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDC A, direct</td>
<td>Add direct byte to Accumulator with Carry</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDC A, @Ri</td>
<td>Add indirect RAM to Accumulator with Carry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADDC A, #data</td>
<td>Add immediate data to Accumulator with Carry</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBB A, Rn</td>
<td>Subtract Register from Accumulator with borrow</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBB A, direct</td>
<td>Subtract direct byte from Accumulator with borrow</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBB A, @Ri</td>
<td>Subtract indirect RAM from Accumulator with borrow</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBB A, #data</td>
<td>Subtract immediate data from Accumulator with borrow</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INC A</td>
<td>Increment Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INC Rn</td>
<td>Increment register</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INC direct</td>
<td>Increment direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INC @Ri</td>
<td>Increment direct RAM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC A</td>
<td>Decrement Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC Rn</td>
<td>Decrement Register</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC direct</td>
<td>Decrement direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC @Ri</td>
<td>Decrement indirect RAM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INC DPTR</td>
<td>Increment Data Pointer</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUL AB</td>
<td>Multiply A &amp; B</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIV AB</td>
<td>Divide A by B</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9.6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA A</td>
<td>Decimal Adjust Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Byte</td>
<td>Execution clocks of 12T MCU</td>
<td>Execution clocks of STC 1T MCU</td>
<td>Efficiency improved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL</td>
<td>AND Register to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL</td>
<td>AND direct byte to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL</td>
<td>AND indirect RAM to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL</td>
<td>AND immediate data to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL</td>
<td>AND Accumulator to direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL</td>
<td>AND immediate data to direct byte</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL</td>
<td>OR register to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL</td>
<td>OR direct byte to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL</td>
<td>OR indirect RAM to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL</td>
<td>OR immediate data to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL</td>
<td>OR Accumulator to direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL</td>
<td>OR immediate data to direct byte</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRL</td>
<td>Exclusive-OR register to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRL</td>
<td>Exclusive-OR direct byte to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRL</td>
<td>Exclusive-OR indirect RAM to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRL</td>
<td>Exclusive-OR immediate data to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRL</td>
<td>Exclusive-OR Accumulator to direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRL</td>
<td>Exclusive-OR immediate data to direct byte</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLR</td>
<td>Clear Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPL</td>
<td>Complement Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RL</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator Left</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLC</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator Left through the Carry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator Right</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RRC</td>
<td>Rotate Accumulator Right through the Carry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWAP</td>
<td>Swap nibbles within the Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Byte</td>
<td>Execution clocks of 12T MCU</td>
<td>Execution clocks of STC 1T MCU</td>
<td>Efficiency improved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move register to Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move direct byte to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move indirect RAM to</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move immediate data to Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move Accumulator to register</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move direct byte to register</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move immediate data to register</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move Accumulator to direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move register to direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move direct byte to direct</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move indirect RAM to direct byte</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move immediate data to direct byte</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move Accumulator to indirect RAM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move direct byte to indirect RAM</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move immediate data to indirect RAM</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move immediate data to indirect RAM</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV</td>
<td>Move Code byte relative to DPTR to Acc</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX</td>
<td>Move Code byte relative to PC to Acc</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX</td>
<td>Move External RAM(8-bit addr) to Acc</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX</td>
<td>Move Acc to External RAM(8-bit addr)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOVX</td>
<td>Move External RAM(16-bit addr) to Acc</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUSH</td>
<td>Push direct byte onto stack</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP</td>
<td>POP direct byte from stack</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XCH</td>
<td>Exchange register with Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XCH</td>
<td>Exchange direct byte with Accumulator</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XCH</td>
<td>Exchange indirect RAM with Accumulator</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XCHD</td>
<td>Exchange low-order Digit indirect RAM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mnemonic</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Byte</td>
<td>Execution clocks of 12T MCU</td>
<td>Execution clocks of STC 1T MCU</td>
<td>Efficiency improved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BOOLEAN VARIABLE MANIPULATION</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLR C</td>
<td>Clear Carry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLR bit</td>
<td>Clear direct bit</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETB C</td>
<td>Set Carry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETB bit</td>
<td>Set direct bit</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPL C</td>
<td>Complement Carry</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPL bit</td>
<td>Complement direct bit</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL C, bit</td>
<td>AND direct bit to Carry</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANL C, /bit</td>
<td>AND complement of direct bit to Carry</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL C, bit</td>
<td>OR direct bit to Carry</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORL C, /bit</td>
<td>OR complement of direct bit to Carry</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV C, bit</td>
<td>Move direct bit to Carry</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOV bit, C</td>
<td>Move Carry to direct bit</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JC rel</td>
<td>Jump if Carry is set</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JNC rel</td>
<td>Jump if Carry not set</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JB bit, rel</td>
<td>Jump if direct bit is set</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JNB bit, rel</td>
<td>Jump if direct bit is not set</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JBC bit, rel</td>
<td>Jump if direct bit is set &amp; clear bit</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4.8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PROGRAM BRANCHING</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACALL addr11</td>
<td>Absolute Subroutine Call</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCALL addr16</td>
<td>Long Subroutine Call</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RET</td>
<td>Return from Subroutine</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RETI</td>
<td>Return from interrupt</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AJMP addr11</td>
<td>Absolute Jump</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LJMP addr16</td>
<td>Long Jump</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JMP @A+DPTR</td>
<td>Jump indirect relative to the DPTR</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JZ rel</td>
<td>Jump if Accumulator is Zero</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JNZ rel</td>
<td>Jump if Accumulator is not Zero</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJNE A,direct,rel</td>
<td>Compare direct byte to Acc and jump if not equal</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4.8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJNE A,#data,rel</td>
<td>Compare immediate to Acc and Jump if not equal</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJNE Rn,#data,rel</td>
<td>Compare immediate to register and Jump if not equal</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJNE @Ri,#data,rel</td>
<td>Compare immediate to indirect and jump if not equal</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4.8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DJNZ Rn, rel</td>
<td>Decrement register and jump if not Zero</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DJNZ direct, rel</td>
<td>Decrement direct byte and Jump if not Zero</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4.8x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOP</td>
<td>No Operation</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>12x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Instruction execution speed boost summary:
24 times faster execution speed  1
12 times faster execution speed  12
9.6 times faster execution speed  1
8 times faster execution speed  20
6 times faster execution speed  39
4.8 times faster execution speed  4
4 times faster execution speed  20
3 times faster execution speed  14
24 times faster execution speed  1

Based on the analysis of frequency of use order statistics, STC 1T series MCU instruction execution speed is faster than the traditional 8051 MCU 8 ~ 12 times in the same working environment.

Instruction execution clock count:
1 clock instruction  12
2 clock instruction  20
3 clock instruction  38
4 clock instruction  34
5 clock instruction  5
6 clock instruction  2
5.3 Instruction Definitions

**ACALL addr 11**

**Function:** Absolute Call

**Description:** ACALL unconditionally calls a subroutine located at the indicated address. The instruction increments the PC twice to obtain the address of the following instruction, then pushes the 16-bit result onto the stack (low-order byte first) and increments the Stack Pointer twice. The destination address is obtained by successively concatenating the five high-order bits of the incremented PC opcode bits 7-5, and the second byte of the instruction. The subroutine called must therefore start within the same 2K block of the program memory as the first byte of the instruction following ACALL. No flags are affected.

**Example:** Initially SP equals 07H. The label “SUBRTN” is at program memory location 0345H. After executing the instruction,

```
ACALL SUBRTN
```

at location 0123H, SP will contain 09H, internal RAM locations 08H and 09H will contain 25H and 01H, respectively, and the PC will contain 0345H.

**Bytes:** 2

**Cycles:** 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a10 a9 a8 a7 a6 a5 a4 a3 a2 a1 a0</td>
<td>ACALL (PC) ← (PC) + 2 (SP) ← (SP) + 1 ((SP) ← (PC7:0)) (SP) ← (PC15:8) (PC10:0) ← page address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADD A, <src-byte>**

**Function:** Add

**Description:** ADD adds the byte variable indicated to the Accumulator, leaving the result in the Accumulator. The carry and auxiliary-carry flags are set, respectively, if there is a carry-out from bit 7 or bit 3, and cleared otherwise. When adding unsigned integers, the carry flag indicates an overflow occurred.

OV is set if there is a carry-out of bit 6 but not out of bit 7, or a carry-out of bit 7 but not bit 6; otherwise OV is cleared. When adding signed integers, OV indicates a negative number produced as the sum of two positive operands, or a positive sum from two negative operands.

Four source operand addressing modes are allowed: register, direct register-indirect, or immediate.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds 0C3H (11000011B) and register 0 holds 0AAH (10101010B). The instruction,

```
ADD A,R0
```

will leave 6DH (01101101B) in the Accumulator with the AC flag cleared and both the carry flag and OV set to 1.
ADD  A,Rn
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 0 1 r r r
Operation: ADD
(A)←(A) + (Rn)

ADD  A,direct
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 direct address
Operation: ADD
(A)←(A) + (direct)

ADD  A,@Ri
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 i
Operation: ADD
(A)←(A) + ((Ri))

ADD  A,#data
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 immediate data
Operation: ADD
(A)←(A) + #data

ADDC  A,<src-byte>
Function: Add with Carry
Description: ADDC simultaneously adds the byte variable indicated, the Carry flag and the Accumulator, leaving the result in the Accumulator. The carry and auxiliary-carry flags are set, respectively, if there is a carry-out from bit 7 or bit 3, and cleared otherwise. When adding unsigned integers, the carry flag indicates an overflow occurred.
OV is set if there is a carry-out of bit 6 but not out of bit 7, or a carry-out of bit 7 but not out of bit 6; otherwise OV is cleared. When adding signed integers, OV indicates a negative number produced as the sum of two positive operands or a positive sum from two negative operands.
Four source operand addressing modes are allowed: register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate.
Example: The Accumulator holds 0C3H(11000011B) and register 0 holds 0AAH (10101010B) with the Carry. The instruction,
ADDC  A,R0
will leave 6EH (01101101B) in the Accumulator with the AC flag cleared and both the carry flag and OV set to 1.
ADDCA,Rn
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 1 1 r r r
Operation: ADDC
(A) ← (A) + (C) + (Rn)

ADDCA,direct
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 direct address
Operation: ADDC
(A) ← (A) + (C) + (direct)

ADDCA,Ri
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 i
Operation: ADDC
(A) ← (A) + (C) + ((Ri))

ADDCA,#data
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 0 immediate data
Operation: ADDC
(A) ← (A) + (C) + #data

AJMP addr 11
Function: Absolute Jump
Description: AJMP transfers program execution to the indicated address, which is formed at run-time by concatenating the high-order five bits of the PC (after incrementing the PC twice), opcode bits 7-5, and the second byte of the instruction. The destination must therefore be within the same 2K block of program memory as the first byte of the instruction following AJMP.
Example: The label “JMPADR” is at program memory location 0123H. The instruction, AJMP JMPADR
is at location 0345H and will load the PC with 0123H.
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 2
Encoding: a10 a9 a8 0 0 0 1 a7 a6 a5 a4 a3 a2 a1 a0
Operation: AJMP
(PC) ← (PC) + 2
(PC)10:0 ← page address
**ANL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>**

**Function:** Logical-AND for byte variables

**Description:** ANL performs the bitwise logical-AND operation between the variables indicated and stores the results in the destination variable. No flags are affected.

The two operands allow six addressing mode combinations. When the destination is the Accumulator, the source can use register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate addressing; when the destination is a direct address, the source can be the Accumulator or immediate data.

**Note:** When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch not the input pins.

**Example:** If the Accumulator holds 0C3H(11000011B) and register 0 holds 55H (01010101B) then the instruction,

ANL A,R0

will leave 41H (01000001B) in the Accumulator.

When the destination is a directly addressed byte, this instruction will clear combinations of bits in any RAM location or hardware register. The mask byte determining the pattern of bits to be cleared would either be a constant contained in the instruction or a value computed in the Accumulator at run-time. The instruction,

ANL Pl, #01110011B

will clear bits 7, 3, and 2 of output port 1.

**ANL A,Rn**

- **Bytes:** 1
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:** 0 1 0 1 l r r r
- **Operation:** ANL \( (A) \rightarrow (A) \land (Rn) \)

**ANL A,direct**

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:** 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1
- **Operation:** ANL \( (A) \rightarrow (A) \land (\text{direct}) \)

**ANL A,@Ri**

- **Bytes:** 1
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:** 0 1 0 1 0 1 i
- **Operation:** ANL \( (A) \rightarrow (A) \land ((\text{Ri})) \)
ANL  A,#data
Bytes:  2
Cycles:  1
Encoding:  0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0  immediate data
Operation:  ANL
           (A) ← (A) ∧ #data

ANL  direct,A
Bytes:  2
Cycles:  1
Encoding:  0 1 0 1 0 0 0  immediate data
Operation:  ANL
           (direct) ← (direct) ∧ (A)

ANL  direct,#data
Bytes:  3
Cycles:  2
Encoding:  0 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 1  immediate data
Operation:  ANL
           (direct) ← (direct) ∧ #data

ANL  C, <src-bit>
Function:  Logical-AND for bit variables
Description:  If the Boolean value of the source bit is a logical 0 then clear the carry flag; otherwise
leave the carry flag in its current state. A slash (“/”) preceding the operand in the assembly
language indicates that the logical complement of the addressed bit is used as the source
value, but the source bit itself is not affected. No other flags are affected.

Example:  Set the carry flag if, and only if, P1.0 = 1, ACC. 7 = 1, and OV = 0:

MOV  C, P1.0          ;LOAD CARRY WITH INPUT PIN STATE
ANL  C, ACC.7         ;AND CARRY WITH ACCUM. BIT.7
ANL  C, /OV           ;AND WITH INVERSE OF OVERFLOW FLAG

ANL  C, bit
Bytes:  2
Cycles:  2
Encoding:  1 0 0 0 0 0 1 0  immediate data
Operation:  ANL
           (C) ← (C) ∧ (bit)
ANL  C, /bit

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0
Operation: ADD
(C) ← (C) ∧ (bit)

CJNE  <dest-byte>, <src-byte>, rel

Function: Compare and Jump if Not Equal
Description: CJNE compares the magnitudes of the first two operands, and branches if their values are not equal. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the last instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the start of the next instruction. The carry flag is set if the unsigned integer value of <dest-byte> is less than the unsigned integer value of <src-byte>; otherwise, the carry is cleared. Neither operand is affected.

The first two operands allow four addressing mode combinations: the Accumulator may be compared with any directly addressed byte or immediate data, and any indirect RAM location or working register can be compared with an immediate constant.

Example: The Accumulator contains 34H, Register 7 contains 56H. The first instruction in the sequence

CJNE R7,#60H, NOT-EQ

sets the carry flag and branches to the instruction at label NOT-EQ. By testing the carry flag, this instruction determines whether R7 is greater or less than 60H.

If the data being presented to Port 1 is also 34H, then the instruction,

WAIT: CJNE A,P1,WAIT

clears the carry flag and continues with the next instruction in sequence, since the Accumulator does equal the data read from P1. (If some other value was being input on P1, the program will loop at this point until the P1 data changes to 34H.)
CJNE  A,#data,rel
Bytes: 3
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 0 1 1 0 1 0
Operation: (PC) ← (PC) + 3
IF (A) < > (data)
THEN
    (PC) ← (PC) + relative offset
IF (A) < (data)
THEN
    (C) ← 1
ELSE
    (C) ← 0

CJNE  Rn,#data,rel
Bytes: 3
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 0 1 1 1 r r r
Operation: (PC) ← (PC) + 3
IF (Rn) < > (data)
THEN
    (PC) ← (PC) + relative offset
IF (Rn) < (data)
THEN
    (C) ← 1
ELSE
    (C) ← 0

CJNE  @Ri,#data,rel
Bytes: 3
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 i
Operation: (PC) ← (PC) + 3
IF ((Ri)) < > (data)
THEN
    (PC) ← (PC) + relative offset
IF ((Ri)) < (data)
THEN
    (C) ← 1
ELSE
    (C) ← 0
CLR A

Function: Clear Accumulator
Description: The Accumulator is cleared (all bits set on zero). No flags are affected.
Example: The Accumulator contains 5CH (01011100B). The instruction,
CLR A
will leave the Accumulator set to 00H (00000000B).

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0
Operation: CLR
(A) ← 0

CLR bit

Function: Clear bit
Description: The indicated bit is cleared (reset to zero). No other flags are affected. CLR can operate on the carry flag or any directly addressable bit.
Example: Port 1 has previously been written with 5DH (01011101B). The instruction,
CLR P1.2
will leave the port set to 59H (01011001B).

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1
Operation: CLR
(C) ← 0

CLR C

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1
Operation: CLR
(C) ← 0

CLR bit

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 bit address
Operation: CLR
(bit) ← 0
### CPL A

**Function:** Complement Accumulator  
**Description:** Each bit of the Accumulator is logically complemented (one’s complement). Bits which previously contained a one are changed to a zero and vice-versa. No flags are affected.  
**Example:** The Accumulator contains 5CH (01011100B). The instruction,  

\[ \text{CPL A} \]

will leave the Accumulator set to 0A3H (10100011B).  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1111 0100</td>
<td>CPL (A) ← (A)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CPL bit

**Function:** Complement bit  
**Description:** The bit variable specified is complemented. A bit which had been a one is changed to zero and vice-versa. No other flags are affected. CLR can operate on the carry or any directly addressable bit.  

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output pin, the value used as the original data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pin.  
**Example:** Port 1 has previously been written with 5DH (01011101B). The instruction,  

\[ \text{CLR P1.1} \]

\[ \text{CLR P1.2} \]

will leave the port set to 59H (01011001B).  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1011 0011</td>
<td>CPL (C) ← (C)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
<th>Encoding</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1011 0010</td>
<td>CPL (bit) ← (bit)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Function:** Decimal-adjust Accumulator for Addition

**Description:** DA A adjusts the eight-bit value in the Accumulator resulting from the earlier addition of two variables (each in packed-BCD format), producing two four-bit digits. Any ADD or ADDC instruction may have been used to perform the addition.

If Accumulator bits 3-0 are greater than nine (xxxx1010-xxxx1111), or if the AC flag is one, six is added to the Accumulator producing the proper BCD digit in the low-order nibble. This internal addition would set the carry flag if a carry-out of the low-order four-bit field propagated through all high-order bits, but it would not clear the carry flag otherwise.

If the carry flag is now set or if the four high-order bits now exceed nine(1010xxxx-111xxxx), these high-order bits are incremented by six, producing the proper BCD digit in the high-order nibble. Again, this would set the carry flag if there was a carry-out of the high-order bits, but wouldn’t clear the carry. The carry flag thus indicates if the sum of the original two BCD variables is greater than 100, allowing multiple precision decimal addition. OV is not affected.

All of this occurs during the one instruction cycle. Essentially, this instruction performs the decimal conversion by adding 00H, 06H, 60H, or 66H to the Accumulator, depending on initial Accumulator and PSW conditions.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds the value 56H(01010110B) representing the packed BCD digits of the decimal number 56. Register 3 contains the value 67H (01100111B) representing the packed BCD digits of the decimal number 67. The carry flag is set. The instruction sequence.

\[
\text{ADDC A,R3} \\
\text{DA A}
\]

will first perform a standard twos-complement binary addition, resulting in the value 0BEH (10111110) in the Accumulator. The carry and auxiliary carry flags will be cleared.

The Decimal Adjust instruction will then alter the Accumulator to the value 24H (00100100B), indicating the packed BCD digits of the decimal number 24, the low-order two digits of the decimal sum of 56, 67, and the carry-in. The carry flag will be set by the Decimal Adjust instruction, indicating that a decimal overflow occurred. The true sum 56, 67, and 1 is 124.

BCD variables can be incremented or decremented by adding 01H or 99H. If the Accumulator initially holds 30H (representing the digits of 30 decimal), then the instruction sequence,

\[
\text{ADD A,#99H} \\
\text{DA A}
\]

will leave the carry set and 29H in the Accumulator, since 30+99=129. The low-order byte of the sum can be interpreted to mean 30 – 1 = 29.
DEC byte

**Function:** Decrement

**Description:** The variable indicated is decremented by 1. An original value of 00H will underflow to 0FFH. No flags are affected. Four operand addressing modes are allowed: accumulator, register, direct, or register-indirect.

*Note:* When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

**Example:** Register 0 contains 7FH (01111111B). Internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH contain 00H and 40H, respectively. The instruction sequence,

```
DEC @R0
DEC R0
DEC @R0
```

will leave register 0 set to 7EH and internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH set to 0FFH and 3FH.

DEC A

**Bytes:** 1

**Cycles:** 1

**Encoding:** 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0

**Operation:** DEC

\((A) \leftarrow (A) - 1\)

DEC Rn

**Bytes:** 1

**Cycles:** 1

**Encoding:** 0 0 0 1 l r r r

**Operation:** DEC

\((Rn) \leftarrow (Rn) - 1\)
DEC direct

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes: 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cycles: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation: DEC (direct) ← (direct) - 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DEC @Ri

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes: 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cycles: 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encoding: 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation: DEC ((Ri)) ← ((Ri)) - 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DIV AB

**Function:** Divide

**Description:** DIV AB divides the unsigned eight-bit integer in the Accumulator by the unsigned eight-bit integer in register B. The Accumulator receives the integer part of the quotient; register B receives the integer remainder. The carry and OV flags will be cleared.

**Exception:** if B had originally contained 00H, the values returned in the Accumulator and B-register will be undefined and the overflow flag will be set. The carry flag is cleared in any case.

**Example:** The Accumulator contains 251 (OFBH or 11111011B) and B contains 18 (12H or 00010010B). The instruction,

```
DIV     AB
```

will leave 13 in the Accumulator (0DH or 00001101B) and the value 17 (11H or 00010010B) in B, since 251 = (13×18) + 17. Carry and OV will both be cleared.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes: 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cycles: 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encoding: 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation: DIV (A)<em>{15:8} ← (A)/(B) (B)</em>{7:0} ← (A)/(B)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DJNZ <byte>, <rel-addr>

Function: Decrement and Jump if Not Zero

Description: DJNZ decrements the location indicated by 1, and branches to the address indicated by the second operand if the resulting value is not zero. An original value of 00H will underflow to 0FFH. No flags are affected. The branch destination would be computed by adding the signed relative-displacement value in the last instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the first byte of the following instruction.

The location decremented may be a register or directly addressed byte.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

Example: Internal RAM locations 40H, 50H, and 60H contain the values 01H, 70H, and 15H, respectively. The instruction sequence,

```
DJNZ 40H, LABEL_1
DJNZ 50H, LABEL_2
DJNZ 60H, LABEL_3
```

will cause a jump to the instruction at label LABEL_2 with the values 00H, 6FH, and 15H in the three RAM locations. The first jump was not taken because the result was zero.

This instruction provides a simple way of executing a program loop a given number of times, or for adding a moderate time delay (from 2 to 512 machine cycles) with a single instruction. The instruction sequence,

```
MOV R2,#8
TOOGLE: CPL P1.7
DJNZ R2, TOOGLE
```

will toggle P1.7 eight times, causing four output pulses to appear at bit 7 of output Port 1. Each pulse will last three machine cycles; two for DJNZ and one to alter the pin.

DJNZ Rn,rel

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 0 1 l r r r rel. address

Operation: DJNZ

(\(PC\) ← (\(PC\) + 2)
(\(Rn\) ← (\(Rn\)) − 1

\[\text{IF } (Rn) > 0 \text{ or } (Rn) < 0 \text{ THEN} \]

(\(PC\) ← (\(PC\)) + rel

DJNZ direct, rel

Bytes: 3
Cycles: 2

Encoding: 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 direct address rel. address
**INC** <byte>

**Function:** Increment

**Description:** INC increments the indicated variable by 1. An original value of 0FFH will overflow to 00H. No flags are affected. Three addressing modes are allowed: register, direct, or register-indirect.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

**Example:** Register 0 contains 7EH (011111110B). Internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH contain 0FFH and 40H, respectively. The instruction sequence,

```
INC @R0
INC R0
INC @R0
```

will leave register 0 set to 7FH and internal RAM locations 7EH and 7FH holding (respectively) 00H and 41H.

**INC A**

- **Bytes:** 1
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:** 0 0 0 0 | 0 1 0 0

**Operation:**

\[
\text{INC (A)} \leftarrow (A) + 1
\]

**INC Rn**

- **Bytes:** 1
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:** 0 0 0 0 | 1 r r r

**Operation:**

\[
\text{INC (Rn)} \leftarrow (Rn) + 1
\]

**INC direct**

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:** 0 0 0 0 | 0 1 0 1 [direct address]

**Operation:**

\[
\text{INC (direct)} \leftarrow (\text{direct}) + 1
\]
\begin{align*}
\text{INC } @Ri
\end{align*}

| Bytes: | 1 |
| Cycles: | 1 |
| Encoding: | \begin{array}{c}
0 \ 0 \ 0 \\
1 \ 1 \ i
\end{array} |
| Operation: | \begin{align*}
\text{INC} \\
((Ri)) \leftarrow ((Ri)) + 1
\end{align*} |

\begin{align*}
\text{INC DPR}
\end{align*}

| Function: | Increment Data Pointer |
| Description: | Increment the 16-bit data pointer by 1. A 16-bit increment (modulo $2^{16}$) is performed; an overflow of the low-order byte of the data pointer (DPL) from 0FFH to 00H will increment the high-order-byte (DPH). No flags are affected. This is the only 16-bit register which can be incremented. |
| Example: | Register DPH and DPL contains 12H and 0FEH, respectively. The instruction sequence, INC DPTR INC DPTR INC DPTR will change DPH and DPL to 13H and 01H. |

\begin{align*}
\text{Bytes:} & \quad 1 \\
\text{Cycles:} & \quad 2 \\
\text{Encoding:} & \quad \begin{array}{c}
1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \\
0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1
\end{array} \\
\text{Operation:} & \quad \begin{align*}
\text{INC} \\
(DPTR) \leftarrow (DPTR)+1
\end{align*}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{JB } \text{bit, rel}
\end{align*}

| Function: | Jump if Bit set |
| Description: | If the indicated bit is a one, jump to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the third instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the first byte of the next instruction. The bit tested is not modified. No flags are affected. |
| Example: | The data present at input port 1 is 11001010B. The Accumulator holds 56 (01010110B). The instruction sequence, JB P1.2, LABEL1 JB ACC.2, LABEL2 will cause program execution to branch to the instruction at label LABEL2. |

\begin{align*}
\text{Bytes:} & \quad 3 \\
\text{Cycles:} & \quad 2 \\
\text{Encoding:} & \quad \begin{array}{c}
0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \\
0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0
\end{array} \\
\text{Operation:} & \quad \begin{align*}
\text{JB} \\
(\text{PC}) \leftarrow (\text{PC}) + 3 \\
\text{IF } (\text{bit}) = 1 \\
\text{THEN} \\
(\text{PC}) \leftarrow (\text{PC}) + \text{rel}
\end{align*}
\end{align*}
JBC  bit, rel

**Function:** Jump if Bit is set and Clear bit

**Description:** If the indicated bit is one, branch to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next instruction. *The bit will not be cleared if it is already a zero.* The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the third instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the first byte of the next instruction. No flags are affected.

Note: When this instruction is used to test an output pin, the value used as the original data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pin.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds 56H (01010110B). The instruction sequence,

```
JBC  ACC.3, LABEL1
JBC  ACC.2, LABEL2
```

will cause program execution to continue at the instruction identified by the label LABEL2, with the Accumulator modified to 52H (01010010B).

**Bytes:** 3

**Cycles:** 2

**Encoding:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bit address</th>
<th>rel. address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 0 0 1</td>
<td>0 0 0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operation:**

```
JBC
(PC) ← (PC)+3
IF (bit) = 1
THEN
(bit) ← 0
(PC) ← (PC)+rel
```

JC  rel

**Function:** Jump if Carry is set

**Description:** If the carry flag is set, branch to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. No flags are affected.

**Example:** The carry flag is cleared. The instruction sequence,

```
JC  LABEL1
CPL  C
JC  LABEL2s
```

will set the carry and cause program execution to continue at the instruction identified by the label LABEL2.

**Bytes:** 2

**Cycles:** 2

**Encoding:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rel. address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 1 0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operation:**

```
JC
(PC) ← (PC)+2
IF (C) = 1
THEN
(PC) ← (PC)+rel
```
**JMP  @A+DPTR**

**Function:** Jump indirect

**Description:** Add the eight-bit unsigned contents of the Accumulator with the sixteen-bit data pointer, and load the resulting sum to the program counter. This will be the address for subsequent instruction fetches. Sixteen-bit addition is performed (modulo $2^{16}$): a carry-out from the low-order eight bits propagates through the higher-order bits. Neither the Accumulator nor the Data Pointer is altered. No flags are affected.

**Example:** An even number from 0 to 6 is in the Accumulator. The following sequence of instructions will branch to one of four AJMP instructions in a jump table starting at JMP_TBL:

```
MOV DPTR, #JMP_TBL
JMP @A+DPTR
```

JMP_TBL: AJMP LABEL0
AJMP LABEL1
AJMP LABEL2
AJMP LABEL3

If the Accumulator equals 04H when starting this sequence, execution will jump to label LABEL2. Remember that AJMP is a two-byte instruction, so the jump instructions start at every other address.

| Bytes: | 1 |
| Cycles: | 2 |

**Encoding:**

```
0 1 1 1 0 0 1 1
```

**Operation:**

\[
\text{JMP} \quad (\text{PC}) \rightarrow (A) + (\text{DPTR})
\]

---

**JNB  bit, rel**

**Function:** Jump if Bit is not set

**Description:** If the indicated bit is a zero, branch to the indicated address; otherwise proceed with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the third instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC to the first byte of the next instruction. *The bit tested is not modified.* No flags are affected.

**Example:** The data present at input port 1 is 11001010B. The Accumulator holds 56H (01010110B). The instruction sequence,

```
JNB P1.3, LABEL1
JNB ACC.3, LABEL2
```

will cause program execution to continue at the instruction at label LABEL2.

| Bytes: | 3 |
| Cycles: | 2 |

**Encoding:**

```
0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0
```

**Operation:**

\[
\text{JNB} \quad (\text{PC}) \rightarrow (\text{PC}) + 3
\]

\[
\text{IF} \quad (\text{bit}) = 0
\]

\[
\text{THEN} \quad (\text{PC}) \rightarrow (\text{PC}) + \text{rel}
\]

---
JNC rel

**Function:** Jump if Carry not set

**Description:** If the carry flag is a zero, branch to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice to point to the next instruction. The carry flag is not modified.

**Example:** The carry flag is set. The instruction sequence,

```
JNC LABEL1
CPL C
JNC LABEL2
```

will clear the carry and cause program execution to continue at the instruction identified by the label LABEL2.

| Bytes: | 2 |
| Cycles: | 2 |
| Encoding: | 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 |
| Operation: |

```
JNC
(PC) ← (PC)+ 2
IF (C) = 0
THEN (PC) ← (PC) + rel
```

JNZ rel

**Function:** Jump if Accumulator Not Zero

**Description:** If any bit of the Accumulator is a one, branch to the indicated address; otherwise proceed with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. The Accumulator is not modified. No flags are affected.

**Example:** The Accumulator originally holds 00H. The instruction sequence,

```
JNZ LABEL1
INC A
JNZ LABEL2
```

will set the Accumulator to 01H and continue at label LABEL2.

| Bytes: | 2 |
| Cycles: | 2 |
| Encoding: | 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 |
| Operation: |

```
JNZ
(PC) ← (PC)+ 2
IF (A) ≠ 0
THEN (PC) ← (PC) + rel
```
JZ rel

**Function:** Jump if Accumulator Zero

**Description:** If all bits of the Accumulator are zero, branch to the address indicated; otherwise proceed with the next instruction. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed relative-displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. The Accumulator is not modified. No flags are affected.

**Example:** The Accumulator originally contains 01H. The instruction sequence,

```
JZ LABEL1
DEC A
JZ LAEEL2
```

will change the Accumulator to 00H and cause program execution to continue at the instruction identified by the label LABEL2.

**Bytes:** 2

**Cycles:** 2

**Encoding:**

```
0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0
```

**Operation:**

```
JZ
(PC) ← (PC) + 2
IF (A) = 0 THEN (PC) ← (PC) + rel
```

LCALL addr16

**Function:** Long call

**Description:** LCALL calls a subroutine located at the indicated address. The instruction adds three to the program counter to generate the address of the next instruction and then pushes the 16-bit result onto the stack (low byte first), incrementing the Stack Pointer by two. The high-order and low-order bytes of the PC are then loaded, respectively, with the second and third bytes of the LCALL instruction. Program execution continues with the instruction at this address. The subroutine may therefore begin anywhere in the full 64K-byte program memory address space. No flags are affected.

**Example:** Initially the Stack Pointer equals 07H. The label “SUBRTN” is assigned to program memory location 1234H. After executing the instruction,

```
LCALL SUBRTN
```

at location 0123H, the Stack Pointer will contain 09H, internal RAM locations 08H and 09H will contain 26H and 01H, and the PC will contain 1234H.

**Bytes:** 3

**Cycles:** 2

**Encoding:**

```
0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0
```

**Operation:**

```
LCALL
(PC) ← (PC) + 3
(SP) ← (SP) + 1
((SP)) ← (PC)_{15:0}
(SP) ← (SP) + 1
((SP)) ← (PC)_{15:8}
(PC) ← addr_{15:0}
```
LJMP  addr16

**Function:** Long Jump

**Description:** LJMP causes an unconditional branch to the indicated address, by loading the high-order and low-order bytes of the PC (respectively) with the second and third instruction bytes. The destination may therefore be anywhere in the full 64K program memory address space. No flags are affected.

**Example:** The label “JMPADR” is assigned to the instruction at program memory location 1234H. The instruction,

LJMP  JMPADR

at location 0123H will load the program counter with 1234H.

**Bytes:** 3

**Cycles:** 2

**Encoding:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>addr15-addr8</th>
<th>addr7-addr0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>000100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operation:**

LJMP (PC) ← addr15-0

---

MOV  <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

**Function:** Move byte variable

**Description:** The byte variable indicated by the second operand is copied into the location specified by the first operand. The source byte is not affected. No other register or flag is affected.

This is by far the most flexible operation. Fifteen combinations of source and destination addressing modes are allowed.

**Example:** Internal RAM location 30H holds 40H. The value of RAM location 40H is 10H. The data present at input port 1 is 11001010B (0CAH).

MOV  R0, #30H    ; R0 ← 30H
MOV  A, @R0      ; A ← 40H
MOV  R1, A       ; R1 ← 40H
MOV  B, @R1      ; B ← 10H
MOV  @R1, P1     ; RAM (40H) ← 0CAH
MOV  P2, P1      ; P2 #0CAH

leaves the value 30H in register 0, 40H in both the Accumulator and register 1, 10H in register B, and 0CAH (11001010B) both in RAM location 40H and output on port 2.

**MOV  A,Rn**

**Bytes:** 1

**Cycles:** 1

**Encoding:**

| 1 l l 0 | l r r r |

**Operation:**

MOV (A) ← (Rn)
*MOV  A,direct
  Bytes:  2
  Cycles:  1
  Encoding:  1 1 1 0 0 1 0 1  [direct address]
  Operation:  MOV
              (A) ← (direct)

*MOV  A, ACC is not a valid instruction

MOV  A,@Ri
  Bytes:  1
  Cycles:  1
  Encoding:  1 1 1 0 0 1 1 i
  Operation:  MOV
              (A) ← ((Ri))

MOV  A,#data
  Bytes:  2
  Cycles:  1
  Encoding:  0 1 1 1 0 1 0 0  [immediate data]
  Operation:  MOV
              (A) ← #data

MOV  Rn, A
  Bytes:  1
  Cycles:  1
  Encoding:  1 1 1 1 1 r r r
  Operation:  MOV
              (Rn) ← (A)

MOV  Rn,direct
  Bytes:  2
  Cycles:  2
  Encoding:  1 0 1 0 1 r r r  [direct addr.]
  Operation:  MOV
              (Rn) ← (direct)

MOV  Rn,#data
  Bytes:  2
  Cycles:  1
  Encoding:  0 1 1 1 1 r r r  [immediate data]
  Operation:  MOV
              (Rn) ← #data
MOV direct, A
  Bytes: 2
  Cycles: 1
  Encoding: 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1  
  Operation: MOV (direct) ← (A)

MOV direct, Rn
  Bytes: 2
  Cycles: 2
  Encoding: 1 0 0 0 1 r r r  
  Operation: MOV (direct) ← (Rn)

MOV direct, direct
  Bytes: 3
  Cycles: 2
  Encoding: 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 1  
  Operation: MOV (direct) ← (direct)

MOV direct, @Ri
  Bytes: 2
  Cycles: 2
  Encoding: 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 i  
  Operation: MOV (direct) ← (Ri)

MOV direct, #data
  Bytes: 3
  Cycles: 2
  Encoding: 0 1 1 1 0 1 0 1  
  Operation: MOV (direct) ← #data

MOV @Ri, A
  Bytes: 1
  Cycles: 1
  Encoding: 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 i  
  Operation: MOV (Ri) ← (A)
### MOV @Ri, direct

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 2
- **Encoding:**
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>direct addr.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Operation:**
  
  MOV 
  
  ((Ri)) ← (direct)

### MOV @Ri, #data

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:**
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>immediate data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Operation:**
  
  MOV 
  
  ((Ri)) ← #data

### MOV <dest-bit>, <src-bit>

- **Function:** Move bit data
- **Description:** The Boolean variable indicated by the second operand is copied into the location specified by the first operand. One of the operands must be the carry flag; the other may be any directly addressable bit. No other register or flag is affected.

- **Example:**
  
  The carry flag is originally set. The data present at input Port 3 is 11000101B. The data previously written to output Port 1 is 35H (00110101B).

  ```
  MOV    P1.3, C  
  MOV    C, P3.3  
  MOV    P1.2, C  
  ```

  will leave the carry cleared and change Port 1 to 39H (00111001B).

### MOV C,bit

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:**
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bit address</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Operation:**
  
  MOV
  
  (C) ← (bit)

### MOV bit,C

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 2
- **Encoding:**
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bit address</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Operation:**
  
  MOV
  
  (bit) ← (C)
**MOV  D PTR , #data 16**

**Function:** Load Data Pointer with a 16-bit constant

**Description:** The Data Pointer is loaded with the 16-bit constant indicated. The 16-bit constant is loaded into the second and third bytes of the instruction. The second byte (DPH) is the high-order byte, while the third byte (DPL) holds the low-order byte. No flags are affected. This is the only instruction which moves 16 bits of data at once.

**Example:** The instruction, MOV  D PTR , #1234H will load the value 1234H into the Data Pointer: DPH will hold 12H and DPL will hold 34H.

| Bytes | 3 |
| Cycles | 2 |

**Encoding:**

```
1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0
```

**Operation:**

\[
\text{MOVC} \quad (\text{DPTR}) \leftarrow \text{#data}_{15:0} \\
\text{DPH} \quad \text{DPL} \leftarrow \text{#data}_{15:8} \quad \text{#data}_{7:0}
\]

**MOVC  A , @A+ <base-reg>**

**Function:** Move Code byte

**Description:** The MOVC instructions load the Accumulator with a code byte, or constant from program memory. The address of the byte fetched is the sum of the original unsigned eight-bit Accumulator contents and the contents of a sixteen-bit base register, which may be either the Data Pointer or the PC. In the latter case, the PC is incremented to the address of the following instruction before being added with the Accumulator; otherwise the base register is not altered. Sixteen-bit addition is performed so a carry-out from the low-order eight bits may propagate through higher-order bits. No flags are affected.

**Example:** A value between 0 and 3 is in the Accumulator. The following instructions will translate the value in the Accumulator to one of four values defined by the DB (define byte) directive.

REL-PC: INC  A  
        MOVC  A, @A+PC  
        RET  
        DB  66H  
        DB  77H  
        DB  88H  
        DB  99H

If the subroutine is called with the Accumulator equal to 01H, it will return with 77H in the Accumulator. The INC A before the MOVC instruction is needed to “get around” the RET instruction above the table. If several bytes of code separated the MOVC from the table, the corresponding number would be added to the Accumulator instead.

**MOVC  A, @A+DPTR**

| Bytes | 1 |
| Cycles | 2 |

**Encoding:**

```
1 0 0 1 0 0 1 1
```

**Operation:**

\[
\text{MOVC} \quad (A) \leftarrow ((A)+(\text{DPTR}))
\]
MOVC  A, @A + PC

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 0 0 0 1 1
Operation: MOVC
(PC) ← (PC)+1
(A) ← ((A)+(PC))

MOVC A, @A + PC

### MOVX <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

**Function:** Move External

**Description:** The MOVX instructions transfer data between the Accumulator and a byte of external data memory, hence the “X” appended to MOV. There are two types of instructions, differing in whether they provide an eight-bit or sixteen-bit indirect address to the external data RAM.

In the first type, the contents of R0 or R1 in the current register bank provide an eight-bit address multiplexed with data on P0. Eight bits are sufficient for external I/O expansion decoding or for a relatively small RAM array. For somewhat larger arrays, any output port pins can be used to output higher-order address bits. These pins would be controlled by an output instruction preceding the MOVX.

In the second type of MOVX instruction, the Data Pointer generates a sixteen-bit address. P2 outputs the high-order eight address bits (the contents of DPH) while P0 multiplexes the low-order eight bits (DPL) with data. The P2 Special Function Register retains its previous contents while the P2 output buffers are emitting the contents of DPH. This form is faster and more efficient when accessing very large data arrays (up to 64K bytes), since no additional instructions are needed to set up the output ports.

It is possible in some situations to mix the two MOVX types. A large RAM array with its high-order address lines driven by P2 can be addressed via the Data Pointer, or with code to output high-order address bits to P2 followed by a MOVX instruction using R0 or R1.

**Example:**
An external 256 byte RAM using multiplexed address/data lines (e.g., an Intel 8155 RAM/I/O/Timer) is connected to the 8051 Port 0. Port 3 provides control lines for the external RAM. Ports 1 and 2 are used for normal I/O. Registers 0 and 1 contain 12H and 34H. Location 34H of the external RAM holds the value 56H. The instruction sequence,

```c
MOVX A, @R1
MOVX @R0, A
```

copies the value 56H into both the Accumulator and external RAM location 12H.

MOVC A, @A + PC

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 0 0 1 1
Operation: MOVX
(A) ← ((Ri))
MOVX A,@DPTR
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 1 1 0 0 0 0
Operation: MOVX (A) ← ((DPTR))

MOVX @Ri, A
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 i
Operation: MOVX ((Ri)) ← (A)

MOVX @DPTR, A
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0
Operation: MOVX (DPTR) ← (A)

MUL AB
Function: Multiply
Description: MUL AB multiplies the unsigned eight-bit integers in the Accumulator and register B. The low-order byte of the sixteen-bit product is left in the Accumulator, and the high-order byte in B. If the product is greater than 255 (0FFH) the overflow flag is set; otherwise it is cleared. The carry flag is always cleared.

Example: Originally the Accumulator holds the value 80 (50H). Register B holds the value 160 (0A0H). The instruction,

MUL AB

will give the product 12,800 (3200H), so B is changed to 32H (00110010B) and the Accumulator is cleared. The overflow flag is set, carry is cleared.

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 4
Encoding: 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0
Operation: MUL
(A)_{15:0} ← (A)×(B)
(B)_{15:8}
NOP

Function: No Operation
Description: Execution continues at the following instruction. Other than the PC, no registers or flags are affected.
Example: It is desired to produce a low-going output pulse on bit 7 of Port 2 lasting exactly 5 cycles. A simple SETB/CLR sequence would generate a one-cycle pulse, so four additional cycles must be inserted. This may be done (assuming no interrupts are enabled) with the instruction sequence.

CLR P2.7
NOP
NOP
NOP
SETB P2.7

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Operation: NOP
(PC) ← (PC)+1

ORL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

Function: Logical-OR for byte variables
Description: ORL performs the bitwise logical-OR operation between the indicated variables, storing the results in the destination byte. No flags are affected.

The two operands allow six addressing mode combinations. When the destination is the Accumulator, the source can use register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate addressing; when the destination is a direct address, the source can be the Accumulator or immediate data.

Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.

Example: If the Accumulator holds 0C3H (11000011B) and R0 holds 55H (01010101B) then the instruction,

ORL A, R0

will leave the Accumulator holding the value 0D7H (11010111B). When the destination is a directly addressed byte, the instruction can set combinations of bits in any RAM location or hardware register. The pattern of bits to be set is determined by a mask byte, which may be either a constant data value in the instruction or a variable computed in the Accumulator at run-time. The instruction,

ORL P1, #00110010B

will set bits 5, 4, and 1 of output Port 1.
ORL A,Rn

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: \[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
r \\
r \\
\end{array}\]
Operation: ORL
(A) ← (A) ∨ (Rn)

ORL A,direct

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: \[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
1 \\
\end{array}\]
Operation: ORL
(A) ← (A) ∨ (direct)

ORL A,@Ri

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: \[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
i \\
\end{array}\]
Operation: ORL
(A) ← (A) ∨ ((Ri))

ORL A,#data

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: \[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
\end{array}\]
Operation: ORL
(A) ← (A) ∨ #data

ORL direct, A

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: \[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
\end{array}\]
Operation: ORL
(direct) ← (direct) ∨ (A)

ORL direct, #data

Bytes: 3
Cycles: 2
Encoding: \[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
1 \\
0 \\
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
1 \\
\end{array}\]
Operation: ORL
(direct) ← (direct) ∨ #data
### ORL C, <src-bit>

**Function:** Logical-OR for bit variables

**Description:** Set the carry flag if the Boolean value is a logical 1; leave the carry in its current state otherwise. A slash (“/”) preceding the operand in the assembly language indicates that the logical complement of the addressed bit is used as the source value, but the source bit itself is not affected. No other flags are affected.

**Example:** Set the carry flag if and only if P1.0 = 1, ACC. 7 = 1, or OV = 0:

- `MOV C, P1.0 ; LOAD CARRY WITH INPUT PIN P10`
- `ORL C, ACC.7 ; OR CARRY WITH THE ACC.BIT 7`
- `ORL C, /OV ; OR CARRY WITH THE INVERSE OF OV`

**ORL C, bit**

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 2
- **Encoding:**
  - Encoding: 0 1 1 1 0 0 1 0
  - bit address
- **Operation:**
  - ORL (C) ← (C) ∨ (bit)

**ORL C, /bit**

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 2
- **Encoding:**
  - Encoding: 1 0 1 0 0 0 0
  - bit address
- **Operation:**
  - ORL (C) ← (C) ∨ (bit)

### POP direct

**Function:** Pop from stack

**Description:** The contents of the internal RAM location addressed by the Stack Pointer is read, and the Stack Pointer is decremented by one. The value read is then transferred to the directly addressed byte indicated. No flags are affected.

**Example:** The Stack Pointer originally contains the value 32H, and internal RAM locations 30H through 32H contain the values 20H, 23H, and 01H, respectively. The instruction sequence,

- `POP DPH`
- `POP DPL`

will leave the Stack Pointer equal to the value 30H and the Data Pointer set to 0123H. At this point the instruction,

- `POP SP`

will leave the Stack Pointer set to 20H. Note that in this special case the Stack Pointer was decremented to 2FH before being loaded with the value popped (20H).

- **Bytes:** 2
- **Cycles:** 2
- **Encoding:**
  - Encoding: 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0
  - direct address
- **Operation:**
  - POP (direct) ← ((SP))
  - (SP) ← (SP) - 1
PUSH direct

Function: Push onto stack

Description: The Stack Pointer is incremented by one. The contents of the indicated variable is then copied into the internal RAM location addressed by the Stack Pointer. Otherwise no flags are affected.

Example: On entering interrupt routine the Stack Pointer contains 09H. The Data Pointer holds the value 0123H. The instruction sequence,

PUSH DPL
PUSH DPH

will leave the Stack Pointer set to 0BH and store 23H and 01H in internal RAM locations 0AH and 0BH, respectively.

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 direct address
Operation: PUSH (SP) ← (SP) + 1
((SP)) ← (direct)

RET

Function: Return from subroutine

Description: RET pops the high-and low-order bytes of the PC successively from the stack, decrementing the Stack Pointer by two. Program execution continues at the resulting address, generally the instruction immediately following an ACALL or LCALL. No flags are affected.

Example: The Stack Pointer originally contains the value 0BH. Internal RAM locations 0AH and 0BH contain the values 23H and 01H, respectively. The instruction,

RET

will leave the Stack Pointer equal to the value 09H. Program execution will continue at location 0123H.

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0
Operation: RET
(PC15:8) ← ((SP))
(SP) ← (SP) - 1
(PC7:0) ← ((SP))
(SP) ← (SP) - 1
RETI

**Function:** Return from interrupt

**Description:** RETI pops the high- and low-order bytes of the PC successively from the stack, and restores the interrupt logic to accept additional interrupts at the same priority level as the one just processed. The Stack Pointer is left decremented by two. No other registers are affected; the PSW is not automatically restored to its pre-interrupt status. Program execution continues at the resulting address, which is generally the instruction immediately after the point at which the interrupt request was detected. If a lower- or same-level interrupt had been pending when the RETI instruction is executed, that one instruction will be executed before the pending interrupt is processed.

**Example:** The Stack Pointer originally contains the value 0BH. An interrupt was detected during the instruction ending at location 0122H. Internal RAM locations 0AH and 0BH contain the values 23H and 01H, respectively. The instruction,

RETI

will leave the Stack Pointer equal to 09H and return program execution to location 0123H.

- **Bytes:** 1
- **Cycles:** 2
- **Encoding:** 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0
- **Operation:**

  
  \[
  \text{RETI} \\
  (PC_{15:8}) \leftarrow ((SP)) \\
  (SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1 \\
  (PC_{7:0}) \leftarrow ((SP)) \\
  (SP) \leftarrow (SP) - 1 
  \]

RL A

**Function:** Rotate Accumulator Left

**Description:** The eight bits in the Accumulator are rotated one bit to the left. Bit 7 is rotated into the bit 0 position. No flags are affected.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B). The instruction,

RL A

leaves the Accumulator holding the value 8BH (10001011B) with the carry unaffected.

- **Bytes:** 1
- **Cycles:** 1
- **Encoding:** 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 1
- **Operation:**

  
  \[
  \text{RL} \\
  (A_{n+1}) \leftarrow (A_n) \quad n = 0-6 \\
  (A_0) \leftarrow (A_7) 
  \]
**RLC A**

**Function:** Rotate Accumulator Left through the Carry flag

**Description:** The eight bits in the Accumulator and the carry flag are together rotated one bit to the left. Bit 7 moves into the carry flag; the original state of the carry flag moves into the bit 0 position. No other flags are affected.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B), and the carry is zero. The instruction, RLC A leaves the Accumulator holding the value 8BH (10001011B) with the carry set.

| Bytes: | 1 |
| Cycles: | 1 |

**Encoding:** 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1

**Operation:**
\[
\begin{align*}
RLC &\quad (A_{n+1}) \leftarrow (A_n) & n = 0-6 \\
(A_0) &\leftarrow (C) \\
(C) &\leftarrow (A_7)
\end{align*}
\]

**RR A**

**Function:** Rotate Accumulator Right

**Description:** The eight bits in the Accumulator are rotated one bit to the right. Bit 0 is rotated into the bit 7 position. No flags are affected.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B). The instruction, RR A leaves the Accumulator holding the value 0E2H (11100010B) with the carry unaffected.

| Bytes: | 1 |
| Cycles: | 1 |

**Encoding:** 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1

**Operation:**
\[
\begin{align*}
RR &\quad (A_n) \leftarrow (A_{n+1}) & n = 0 - 6 \\
(A_7) &\leftarrow (A_0)
\end{align*}
\]

**RRC A**

**Function:** Rotate Accumulator Right through the Carry flag

**Description:** The eight bits in the Accumulator and the carry flag are together rotated one bit to the right. Bit 0 moves into the carry flag; the original value of the carry flag moves into the bit 7 position. No other flags are affected.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B), and the carry is zero. The instruction, RRC A leaves the Accumulator holding the value 62H (01100010B) with the carry set.

| Bytes: | 1 |
| Cycles: | 1 |

**Encoding:** 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 1

**Operation:**
\[
\begin{align*}
RRC &\quad (A_{n+1}) \leftarrow (A_n) & n = 0-6 \\
(A_7) &\leftarrow (C) \\
(C) &\leftarrow (A_0)
\end{align*}
\]
SETB  <bit>

**Function:** Set bit

**Description:** SETB sets the indicated bit to one. SETB can operate on the carry flag or any directly addressable bit. No other flags are affected.

**Example:** The carry flag is cleared. Output Port 1 has been written with the value 34H (00110100B). The instructions,

\[
\text{SETB} \quad C \\
\text{SETB} \quad P1.0
\]

will leave the carry flag set to 1 and change the data output on Port 1 to 35H (00110101B).

**SETB  C**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cycles</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Encoding:**

```
01 10 1 0 0 1 1
```

**Operation:**

\[
\text{SETB} \quad (C) \leftarrow 1
\]

**SETB  bit**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cycles</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Encoding:**

```
01 10 1 0 0 1 0 bit address
```

**Operation:**

\[
\text{SETB} \quad (\text{bit}) \leftarrow 1
\]

**SJMP  rel**

**Function:** Short Jump

**Description:** Program control branches unconditionally to the address indicated. The branch destination is computed by adding the signed displacement in the second instruction byte to the PC, after incrementing the PC twice. Therefore, the range of destinations allowed is from 128 bytes preceding this instruction to 127 bytes following it.

**Example:** The label “RELADR” is assigned to an instruction at program memory location 0123H. The instruction,

\[
\text{SJMP} \quad \text{RELADR}
\]

will assemble into location 0100H. After the instruction is executed, the PC will contain the value 0123H.

*Note:* Under the above conditions the instruction following SJMP will be at 102H. Therefore, the displacement byte of the instruction will be the relative offset (0123H - 0102H) = 21H. Put another way, an SJMP with a displacement of 0FEH would be an one-instruction infinite loop.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cycles</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Encoding:**

```
1 0 0 0 0 0 0 rel. address
```

**Operation:**

\[
\text{SJMP} \quad (\text{PC}) \leftarrow (\text{PC})+2 \\
(\text{PC}) \leftarrow (\text{PC})+\text{rel}
\]
**SUBB A, <src-byte>**

**Function:** Subtract with borrow

**Description:** 
SUBB subtracts the indicated variable and the carry flag together from the Accumulator, leaving the result in the Accumulator. SUBB sets the carry (borrow) flag if a borrow is needed for bit 7, and clears C otherwise. (If C was set before executing a SUBB instruction, this indicates that a borrow was needed for the previous step in a multiple precision subtraction, so the carry is subtracted from the Accumulator along with the source operand). AC is set if a borrow is needed for bit 3, and cleared otherwise. OV is set if a borrow is needed into bit 6, but not into bit 7, or into bit 7, but not bit 6.

When subtracting signed integers OV indicates a negative number produced when a negative value is subtracted from a positive value, or a positive result when a positive number is subtracted from a negative number.

The source operand allows four addressing modes: register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate.

**Example:** The Accumulator holds 0C9H (11001001B), register 2 holds 54H (01010100B), and the carry flag is set. The instruction,

```
SUBB A, R2
```

will leave the value 74H (01110100B) in the accumulator, with the carry flag and AC cleared but OV set.

Notice that 0C9H minus 54H is 75H. The difference between this and the above result is due to the carry (borrow) flag being set before the operation. If the state of the carry is not known before starting a single or multiple-precision subtraction, it should be explicitly cleared by a CLR C instruction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBB A, Rn</th>
<th>Bytes: 1</th>
<th>Cycles: 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encoding:</td>
<td>1 0 0 1</td>
<td>l r r r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation:</td>
<td>SUBB</td>
<td>(A) (\text{\textbar} (A) - (C) - (Rn))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBB A, direct</th>
<th>Bytes: 2</th>
<th>Cycles: 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encoding:</td>
<td>1 0 0 1 0 1 0 1</td>
<td>direct address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation:</td>
<td>SUBB</td>
<td>(A) (\text{\textbar} (A) - (C) - (\text{direct}))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBB A, @Ri</th>
<th>Bytes: 1</th>
<th>Cycles: 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encoding:</td>
<td>1 0 0 1 0 1 1 i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation:</td>
<td>SUBB</td>
<td>(A) (\text{\textbar} (A) - (C) - ((Ri)))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBB A, #data

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0  immediate data
Operation: SUBB
(A) ← (A) - (C) - #data

SWAP A

Function: Swap nibbles within the Accumulator
Description: SWAP A interchanges the low- and high-order nibbles (four-bit fields) of the Accumulator (bits 3-0 and bits 7-4). The operation can also be thought of as a four-bit rotate instruction. No flags are affected.
Example: The Accumulator holds the value 0C5H (11000101B). The instruction, SWAP A leaves the Accumulator holding the value 5CH (01011100B).

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0
Operation: SWAP
(A3,0) ← (A7,4)

XCH A, <byte>

Function: Exchange Accumulator with byte variable
Description: XCH loads the Accumulator with the contents of the indicated variable, at the same time writing the original Accumulator contents to the indicated variable. The source/destination operand can use register, direct, or register-indirect addressing.
Example: R0 contains the address 20H. The Accumulator holds the value 3FH (00111111B). Internal RAM location 20H holds the value 75H (01110101B). The instruction, XCH A, @R0 will leave RAM location 20H holding the values 3FH (00111111B) and 75H (01110101B) in the accumulator.

XCH A, Rn

Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 1 0 0 1 r r r
Operation: XCH
(A) ← (Rn)

XCH A, direct

Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 1  direct address
Operation: XCH
(A) ← (direct)
XCH A, @Ri

Function: Exchange Digit

Description: XCHD exchanges the low-order nibble of the Accumulator (bits 3-0), generally representing a hexadecimal or BCD digit, with that of the internal RAM location indirectly addressed by the specified register. The high-order nibbles (bits 7-4) of each register are not affected. No flags are affected.

Example: R0 contains the address 20H. The Accumulator holds the value 36H (00110110B). Internal RAM location 20H holds the value 75H (01110101B). The instruction,
XCHD A, @R0
will leave RAM location 20H holding the value 76H (01110110B) and 35H (00110101B) in the accumulator.

XCHD A, @Ri

Function: Exchange Digit

Description: XCHD exchanges the low-order nibble of the Accumulator (bits 3-0), generally representing a hexadecimal or BCD digit, with that of the internal RAM location indirectly addressed by the specified register. The high-order nibbles (bits 7-4) of each register are not affected. No flags are affected.

Example: R0 contains the address 20H. The Accumulator holds the value 36H (00110110B). Internal RAM location 20H holds the value 75H (01110101B). The instruction,
XCHD A, @R0
will leave RAM location 20H holding the value 76H (01110110B) and 35H (00110101B) in the accumulator.

XRL <dest-byte>, <src-byte>

Function: Logical Exclusive-OR for byte variables

Description: XRL performs the bitwise logical Exclusive-OR operation between the indicated variables, storing the results in the destination. No flags are affected.

The two operands allow six addressing mode combinations. When the destination is the Accumulator, the source can use register, direct, register-indirect, or immediate addressing; when the destination is a direct address, the source can be the Accumulator or immediate data.

(Note: When this instruction is used to modify an output port, the value used as the original port data will be read from the output data latch, not the input pins.)

Example: If the Accumulator holds 0C3H (11000011B) and register 0 holds 0AAH (10101010B) then the instruction,
XRL A, R0
will leave the Accumulator holding the value 69H (01101001B).

When the destination is a directly addressed byte, this instruction can complement combination of bits in any RAM location or hardware register. The pattern of bits to be complemented is then determined by a mask byte, either a constant contained in the instruction or a variable computed in the Accumulator at run-time. The instruction,
XRL P1, #00110001B
will complement bits 5, 4 and 0 of output Port 1.
XRL    A, Rn
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 1 1 0 1 r r r
Operation: XRL
(A) ← (A) \( \land \) (Rn)

XRL    A, direct
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 1
Operation: XRL
(A) ← (A) \( \land \) (direct)

XRL    A, @Ri
Bytes: 1
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 i
Operation: XRL
(A) ← (A) \( \land \) ((Ri))

XRL    A, #data
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0
Operation: XRL
(A) ← (A) \( \land \) #data

XRL    direct, A
Bytes: 2
Cycles: 1
Encoding: 0 1 1 0 0 0 1 0
Operation: XRL
(direct) ← (direct) \( \land \) (A)

XRL    direct, #data
Bytes: 3
Cycles: 2
Encoding: 0 1 1 0 0 0 1 1
Operation: XRL
(direct) ← (direct) \( \land \) # data
Chapter 6. Interrupt System

STC12C5410AD series support 9 interrupt sources with four priority levels. The 9 interrupt sources are external interrupt 0(INT0), Timer 0 interrupt, external interrupt 1(INT1), Timer 1 interrupt, serial port 1(UART) interrupt, ADC and SPI interrupt, low voltage detector (LVD) and PCA interrupt. Each interrupt source has one or more associated interrupt-request flag(s) in SFRs. Associating with each interrupt vector, the interrupt sources can be individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing a bit (interrupt enable control bit) in the SFRs IE, CCON. However, interrupts must first be globally enabled by setting the EA bit (IE.7) to logic 1 before the individual interrupt enables are recognized. Setting the EA bit to logic 0 disables all interrupt sources regardless of the individual interrupt-enable settings.

If interrupts are enabled for the source, an interrupt request is generated when the interrupt-request flag is set. As soon as execution of the current instruction is complete, the CPU generates an LCALL to a predetermined address to begin execution of an interrupt service routine (ISR). Each ISR must end with an RETI instruction, which returns program execution to the next instruction that would have been executed if the interrupt request had not occurred. If interrupts are not enabled, the interrupt-pending flag is ignored by the hardware and program execution continues as normal. (The interrupt-pending flag is set to logic 1 regardless of the interrupt's enable/disable state.)

Each interrupt source has two corresponding bits to represent its priority. One is located in SFR named IPH and other in IP register. Higher-priority interrupt will be not interrupted by lower-priority interrupt request. If two interrupt requests of different priority levels are received simultaneously, the request of higher priority is serviced. If interrupt requests of the same priority level are received simultaneously, an internal polling sequence determine which request is serviced. The following table shows the internal polling sequence in the same priority level and the interrupt vector address.

### Interrupt Sources, vector address, priority and polling sequence Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interrupt Source</th>
<th>Interrupt Vector address</th>
<th>Priority within level</th>
<th>Interrupt Priority setting(IPH, IP)</th>
<th>Priority 0 (lowest)</th>
<th>Priority 1</th>
<th>Priority 2</th>
<th>Priority 3 (highest)</th>
<th>Interrupt Request</th>
<th>Interrupt Enable Control Bit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External interrupt 0 (INT0)</td>
<td>0003H</td>
<td>0(highest)</td>
<td>PX0H,PX0</td>
<td>0,0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
<td>1,0</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>IE0</td>
<td>EX0/EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer 0</td>
<td>000BH</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>PT0H,PT0</td>
<td>0,0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
<td>1,0</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>TF0</td>
<td>ET0/EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External interrupt 1 (INT1)</td>
<td>0013H</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>PX1H,PX1</td>
<td>0,0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
<td>1,0</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>IE1</td>
<td>EX1/EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer1</td>
<td>001BH</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>PT1H, PT1</td>
<td>0,0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
<td>1,0</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>TF1</td>
<td>ET1/EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UART</td>
<td>0023H</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>PSH, PS</td>
<td>0,0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
<td>1,0</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>RI+TI</td>
<td>ES/EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC/SPI</td>
<td>002BH</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>PADC_SPIH, PADC_SPI</td>
<td>0,0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
<td>1,0</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>ADC_FLAG+SPIF</td>
<td>(EADC1+ESPI)/ EADC_SPI/EA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA/ LVD</td>
<td>0033H</td>
<td>6(lowest)</td>
<td>PPCA_LVDH, PPCA_LVD</td>
<td>0,0</td>
<td>0,1</td>
<td>1,0</td>
<td>1,1</td>
<td>CF+CCFO+CCFI+CCF2+CCF3+LVDF</td>
<td>(ECF+ECFF0+ECCF1+ECCF2+ECCF3+ELVD)/ EPCA_LVD/EA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

www.STCMCU.com Mobile:(86)13922809991 Tel:086-755-82948412 Fax:86-755-82905966
In C language program, the interrupt polling sequence number is equal to interrupt number, for example,

```c
void  Int0_Routine(void)      interrupt 0;
void  Timer0_Routine(void)   interrupt 1;
void  Int1_Routine(void)     interrupt 2;
void  Timer1_Routine(void)   interrupt 3;
void  UART_Routine(void)     interrupt 4;
void  ADC_SPI_Routine(void)  interrupt 5;
void  PCA_LVD_Routine(void)  interrupt 6;
```
6.1 Interrupt Structure

The interrupt structure of STC12C5410AD series is shown as below.

![Interrupt Structure Diagram](image)

**Figure** STC12C5410AD series Interrupt Structure diagram
The External Interrupts INT0 and INT1 can each be either level-activated or transition-activated, depending on bits IT0 and IT1 in Register TCON. The flags that actually generate these interrupts are bits IE0 and IE1 in TCON. When an external interrupt is generated, the flag that generated it is cleared by the hardware when the service routine is vectored to if and only if the interrupt was transition-activated, otherwise the external requesting source is what controls the request flag, rather than the on-chip hardware.

The Timer 0 and Timer1 Interrupts are generated by TF0 and TF1, which are set by a rollover in their respective Timer/Counter registers in most cases. When a timer interrupt is generated, the flag that generated it is cleared by the on-chip hardware when the service routine is vectored to.

The Serial Port Interrupt is generated by the logical OR of RI and TI. Neither of these flags is cleared by hardware when the service routine is vectored to. In fact, the service routine will normally have to determine whether it was RI and TI that generated the interrupt, and the bit will have to be cleared by software.

The 2BH interrupt is shared by the logical “1” of SPI interrupt and ADC interrupt. Neither of these flags is cleared by hardware when the service routine is vectored to. The service routine should poll them to determine which one to request service and it will be cleared by software.

The 33H interrupt is shared by the logical “1” of PCA interrupt and LVD (Low-Voltage Detector) interrupt. Neither of these flags is cleared by hardware when the service routine is vectored to. The service routine should poll them to determine which one to request service and it will be cleared by software.

All of the bits that generate interrupts can be set or cleared by software, with the same result as though it had been set or cleared by hardware. In other words, interrupts can be generated or pending interrupts can be canceled in software.
## 6.2 Interrupt Register

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit Address and Symbol</th>
<th>Value after Power-on or Reset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Interrupt Enable</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority Low</td>
<td>B8H</td>
<td>PPCA_LVD</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority High</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td>PPCA_LVDH</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCON</td>
<td>Timer Control</td>
<td>88H</td>
<td>TF1 TR1 TR0 IE1 IT1 IE0 IT0</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCON</td>
<td>Serial Control</td>
<td>98H</td>
<td>SM0 FE SM1</td>
<td>0011 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>Auxiliary register</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6 EADC1 ESPI ELVD1</td>
<td>0000 00xxB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>Power Control</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>SMOD SMOD0 LVDF</td>
<td>0011 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_CONTR</td>
<td>ADC Control</td>
<td>C5H</td>
<td>ADC_POWER SPEED1</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCON</td>
<td>PCA Control Register</td>
<td>D8H</td>
<td>CF CR</td>
<td>00xx 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMOD</td>
<td>PCA Mode Register</td>
<td>D9H</td>
<td>CIDL</td>
<td>00xx 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM0</td>
<td>PCA Module 0 Mode Register</td>
<td>DAH</td>
<td>ECOM0</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM1</td>
<td>PCA Module 1 Mode Register</td>
<td>DBH</td>
<td>ECOM1</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM2</td>
<td>PCA Module 2 Mode Register</td>
<td>DCH</td>
<td>ECOM2</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM3</td>
<td>PCA Module 3 Mode Register</td>
<td>DDH</td>
<td>ECOM3</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPSTAT</td>
<td>SPI Status register</td>
<td>84H</td>
<td>SPIF WCOL</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 1. Interrupt Enable control Register IE and AUXR

#### IE: Interrupt Enable Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| IE (IE.7): | Enables or disables all interrupts. If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged. If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit. |
| EA (IE.7): | Enables or disables all interrupts. If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged. If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit. |
| EPCA_LVD (IE.6): | Enables or disables the interrupt of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector. |
| EADC_SPI (IE.5): | Enables or disables the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC). |
| ES (IE.4): | Enables or disables the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC). |
| ET1 (IE.3): | Enables or disables the interrupt of Timer 1. |
| EX1 (IE.2): | Enables or disables the interrupt of External Interrupt 1. |
| ET0 (IE.1): | Enables or disables the interrupt of Timer 0. |
| EX0 (IE.0): | Enables or disables the interrupt of External Interrupt 0. |

#### AUXR: Auxiliary register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| ELVDI: | Enable/Disable interrupt from low-voltage sensor |
| 0 : | (default) Inhibit the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU |
| 1 : | Enable the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU |

| ESPI: | Enable/Disable interrupt from Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) |
| 0 : | (default) Inhibit the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU |
| 1 : | Enable the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU |

| EADCI: | Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter |
| 0 : | (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU |
| 1 : | Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU |

| UART_M0x6: | Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0 |
| 0 : | The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12. |
| 1 : | The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2. |
1. **T1x12**: Timer 1 clock source bit.
   - 0: The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
   - 1: The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

2. **T0x12**: Timer 0 clock source bit.
   - 0: The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
   - 1: The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

### 2. Interrupt Priority control Registers IP and IPH

Each interrupt source of STC12C5410AD all can be individually programmed to one of four priority levels by setting or clearing the bits in Special Function Registers IP and IPH. A low-priority interrupt can itself be interrupted by a high-priority interrupt, but not by another low-priority interrupt. A high-priority interrupt can’t be interrupted by any other interrupt source.

#### IPH: Interrupt Priority High Register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PPCA_LVDH</td>
<td>PADC_SPIH</td>
<td>PSH</td>
<td>PT1H</td>
<td>PX1H</td>
<td>PT0H</td>
<td>PX0H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IP: Interrupt Priority Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>B8H</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PPCA_LVD</td>
<td>PADC_SPI</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>PT1</td>
<td>PX1</td>
<td>PT0</td>
<td>PX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PPCA_LVDH, PPCA_LVD**: Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt priority control bits.
- if PPCA_LVDH=0 and PPCA_LVD=0, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 0).
- if PPCA_LVDH=0 and PPCA_LVD=1, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 1).
- if PPCA_LVDH=1 and PPCA_LVD=0, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 2).
- if PPCA_LVDH=1 and PPCA_LVD=1, Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low voltage detector interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 3).

**PADC_SPIH, PADC_SPI**: Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt priority control bits.
- if PADC_SPIH=0 and PADC_SPI=0, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 0).
- if PADC_SPIH=0 and PADC_SPI=1, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 1).
- if PADC_SPIH=1 and PADC_SPI=0, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 2).
- if PADC_SPIH=1 and PADC_SPI=1, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority(priority 3).
PSH, PS: Serial Port 1 (UART1) interrupt priority control bits.
    if PSH=0 and PS=0, UART1 interrupt is assigned lowest priority (priority 0).
    if PSH=0 and PS=1, UART1 interrupt is assigned lower priority (priority 1).
    if PSH=1 and PS=0, UART1 interrupt is assigned higher priority (priority 2).
    if PSH=1 and PS=1, UART1 interrupt is assigned highest priority (priority 3).

PT1H, PT1: Timer 1 interrupt priority control bits.
    if PT1H=0 and PT1=0, Timer 1 interrupt is assigned lowest priority (priority 0).
    if PT1H=0 and PT1=1, Timer 1 interrupt is assigned lower priority (priority 1).
    if PT1H=1 and PT1=0, Timer 1 interrupt is assigned higher priority (priority 2).
    if PT1H=1 and PT1=1, Timer 1 interrupt is assigned highest priority (priority 3).

PX1H, PX1: External interrupt 1 priority control bits.
    if PX1H=0 and PX1=0, External interrupt 1 is assigned lowest priority (priority 0).
    if PX1H=0 and PX1=1, External interrupt 1 is assigned lower priority (priority 1).
    if PX1H=1 and PX1=0, External interrupt 1 is assigned higher priority (priority 2).
    if PX1H=1 and PX1=1, External interrupt 1 is assigned highest priority (priority 3).

PT0H, PT0: Timer 0 interrupt priority control bits.
    if PT0H=0 and PT0=0, Timer 0 interrupt is assigned lowest priority (priority 0).
    if PT0H=0 and PT0=1, Timer 0 interrupt is assigned lower priority (priority 1).
    if PT0H=1 and PT0=0, Timer 0 interrupt is assigned higher priority (priority 2).
    if PT0H=1 and PT0=1, Timer 0 interrupt is assigned highest priority (priority 3).

PX0H, PX0: External interrupt 0 priority control bits.
    if PX0H=0 and PX0=0, External interrupt 0 is assigned lowest priority (priority 0).
    if PX0H=0 and PX0=1, External interrupt 0 is assigned lower priority (priority 1).
    if PX0H=1 and PX0=0, External interrupt 0 is assigned higher priority (priority 2).
    if PX0H=1 and PX0=1, External interrupt 0 is assigned highest priority (priority 3).
3. TCON register: Timer/Counter Control Register (Bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCON</td>
<td>88H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>TF1</td>
<td>TR1</td>
<td>TF0</td>
<td>TR0</td>
<td>IE1</td>
<td>IT1</td>
<td>IE0</td>
<td>IT0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TF1: Timer/Counter 1 Overflow Flag. Set by hardware on Timer/Counter 1 overflow. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared by hardware when processor vectors to the Timer 1 interrupt routine.
- If TF1 = 0, No Timer 1 overflow detected.
- If TF1 = 1, Timer 1 has overflowed.

TR1: Timer/Counter 1 Run Control bit. Set/cleared by software to turn Timer/Counter on/off.
- If TR1 = 0, Timer 1 disabled.
- If TR1 = 1, Timer 1 enabled.

TF0: Timer/Counter 0 Overflow Flag. Set by hardware on Timer/Counter 0 overflow. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared by hardware when processor vectors to the Timer 0 interrupt routine.
- If TF0 = 0, No Timer 0 overflow detected.
- If TF0 = 1, Timer 0 has overflowed.

TR0: Timer/Counter 0 Run Control bit. Set/cleared by software to turn Timer/Counter on/off.
- If TR0 = 0, Timer 0 disabled.
- If TR0 = 1, Timer 0 enabled.

IE1: External Interrupt 1 Edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge/level defined by IT1 is detected. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared when the external interrupt 1 service routine has been processed.

IT1: External Interrupt 1 Type Select bit. Set/cleared by software to specify falling edge/low level triggered external interrupt 1.
- If IT1 = 0, INT1 is low level triggered.
- If IT1 = 1, INT1 is edge triggered.

IE0: External Interrupt 0 Edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge/level defined by IT0 is detected. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared when the external interrupt 0 service routine has been processed.

IT0: External Interrupt 0 Type Select bit. Set/cleared by software to specify falling edge/low level triggered external interrupt 0.
- If IT0 = 0, INT0 is low level triggered.
- If IT0 = 1, INT0 is edge triggered.
4. **SCON register**: Serial Port 1 (UART1) Control Register (Bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCON</td>
<td>98H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FE**: Framing Error bit. The SMOD0 bit must be set to enable access to the FE bit

- **0**: The FE bit is not cleared by valid frames but should be cleared by software.
- **1**: This bit set by the receiver when an invalid stop bit id detected.

**SM0,SM1**: Serial Port Mode Bit 0/1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SM0</th>
<th>SM1</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Baud rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8-bit shift register</td>
<td>SYSclk/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-bit UART</td>
<td>variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9-bit UART</td>
<td>SYSclk/64 or SYSclk/32 (SMOD=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9-bit UART</td>
<td>variable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SM2**: Enable the automatic address recognition feature in mode 2 and 3. If SM2=1, RI will not be set unless the received 9th data bit is 1, indicating an address, and the received byte is a Given or Broadcast address. In mode1, if SM2=1 then RI will not be set unless a valid stop bit was received, and the received byte is a Given or Broadcast address. In mode 0, SM2 should be 0.

**REN**: When set enables serial reception.

**TB8**: The 9th data bit which will be transmitted in mode 2 and 3.

**RB8**: In mode 2 and 3, the received 9th data bit will go into this bit.

**TI**: Transmit interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a byte of data has been transmitted by UART0 (after the 8th bit in 8-bit UART Mode, or at the beginning of the STOP bit in 9-bit UART Mode). When the UART0 interrupt is enabled, setting this bit causes the CPU to vector to the UART0 interrupt service routine. This bit must be cleared manually by software.

**RI**: Receive interrupt flag. Set to ‘1’ by hardware when a byte of data has been received by UART0 (set at the STOP bit sampling time). When the UART0 interrupt is enabled, setting this bit to ‘1’ causes the CPU to vector to the UART0 interrupt service routine. This bit must be cleared manually by software.
5. Register related with LVD interrupt: Power Control register PCON (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>SMOD</td>
<td>SMOD0</td>
<td>LVDF</td>
<td>POF</td>
<td>GF1</td>
<td>GF0</td>
<td>PD</td>
<td>IDL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SMOD: double Baud rate control bit.
- 0: Disable double Baud rate of the UART.
- 1: Enable double Baud rate of the UART in mode 1,2,or 3.

SMOD0: Frame Error select.
- 0: SCON.7 is SM0 function.
- 1: SCON.7 is FE function. Note that FE will be set after a frame error regardless of the state of SMOD0.

LVDF: Pin Low-Voltage Flag. Once low voltage condition is detected (VCC power is lower than LVD voltage), it is set by hardware (and should be cleared by software).

POF: Power-On flag. It is set by power-off-on action and can only cleared by software.

GF1: General-purposed flag 1

GF0: General-purposed flag 0

PD: Power-Down bit.

IDL: Idle mode bit.

IE: Interrupt Enable Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>EPCA_LVD</td>
<td>EADC_SPI</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td>ET1</td>
<td>EX1</td>
<td>ET0</td>
<td>EX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EA: disables all interrupts.
- If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged.
- If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

EPCA_LVD: Interrupt controller of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector.
- If EPCA_LVD = 0, Disable the interrupt of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector.
- If EPCA_LVD = 1, Enable the interrupt of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector.
6. **ADC_CONTR: AD Control register** (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADC_CONTR</td>
<td>C5H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>ADC_POWER</td>
<td>SPEED1</td>
<td>SPEED0</td>
<td>ADC_FLAG</td>
<td>ADC_START</td>
<td>CHS2</td>
<td>CHS1</td>
<td>CHS0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADC_POWER**: When clear, shut down the power of ADC block. When set, turn on the power of ADC block.

**ADC_FLAG**: ADC interrupt flag. It will be set by the device after the device has finished a conversion, and should be cleared by the user's software.

**ADC_START**: ADC start bit, which enable ADC conversion. It will automatically cleared by the device after the device has finished the conversion.

**IE**: Interrupt Enable Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>EPCA_LVD</td>
<td>EADC_SPI</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td>ET1</td>
<td>EX1</td>
<td>ET0</td>
<td>EX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EA**: disables all interrupts.

- If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged.
- If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

**EADC_SPI**: Interrupt controller of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).

- If EADC_SPI = 0, disable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).
- If EADC_SPI = 1, enable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).

7. **Register related with PCA interrupt**

**CCON: PCA Control Register** (bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCON</td>
<td>D8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>CF</td>
<td>CR</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>CCF3</td>
<td>CCF2</td>
<td>CCF1</td>
<td>CCF0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CF**: PCA Counter Overflow flag. Set by hardware when the counter rolls over. CF flags an interrupt if bit ECF in CMOD is set. CF may be set by either hardware or software but can only be cleared by software.

**CR**: PCA Counter Run control bit. Set by software to turn the PCA counter on. Must be cleared by software to turn the PCA counter off.

**CCF3**: PCA Module 3 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture occurs. Must be cleared by software.

**CCF2**: PCA Module 2 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture occurs. Must be cleared by software.

**CCF1**: PCA Module 1 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture occurs. Must be cleared by software.

**CCF0**: PCA Module 0 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture occurs. Must be cleared by software.
CMOD: PCA Mode Register (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CMOD</td>
<td>D9H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>CIDL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>CPS1</td>
<td>CPS0</td>
<td>ECF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CIDL: Counter Idle control. CIDL=0 programs the PCA Counter to continue functioning during idle mode. CIDL=1 programs it to be gated off during idle.

CPS1 ~ CPS0: PCA Counter Pulse Select bits.
- 0 0: Internal clock, fosc/12
- 0 1: Internal clock, fosc/2
- 0 0: Timer 0 overflow
- 0 1: External clock at ECI/P3.4 pin

ECF: PCA Enable Counter Overflow interrupt. ECF=1 enables CF bit in CCON to generate an interrupt.

CCAPMn register (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM0</td>
<td>DAH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ECOM0</td>
<td>CAPP0</td>
<td>CAPN0</td>
<td>MAT0</td>
<td>TOG0</td>
<td>PWM0</td>
<td>ECCF0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM1</td>
<td>DBH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ECOM1</td>
<td>CAPP1</td>
<td>CAPN1</td>
<td>MAT1</td>
<td>TOG1</td>
<td>PWM1</td>
<td>ECCF1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM2</td>
<td>DCH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ECOM2</td>
<td>CAPP2</td>
<td>CAPN2</td>
<td>MAT2</td>
<td>TOG2</td>
<td>PWM2</td>
<td>ECCF2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM3</td>
<td>DDH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ECOM3</td>
<td>CAPP3</td>
<td>CAPN3</td>
<td>MAT3</td>
<td>TOG3</td>
<td>PWM3</td>
<td>ECCF3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ECOMn: Enable Comparator. ECOMn=1 enables the comparator function.

CAPPn: Capture Positive, CAPPn=1 enables positive edge capture.

CAPNn: Capture Negative, CAPNn=1 enables negative edge capture.

MATn: Match. When MATn=1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCFn bit in CCON to be set.

TOGn: Toggle. When TOGn=1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CEXn pin to toggle.

PWMn: Pulse Width Modulation. PWMn=1 enables the CEXn pin to be used as a pulse width modulated output.

ECCFn: Enable CCF interrupt. Enables compare/capture flag CCFn in the CCON register to generate

IE: Interrupt Enable Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>EPCALVD</td>
<td>EADCSI</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td>ET1</td>
<td>EX1</td>
<td>ET0</td>
<td>EX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EA: disables all interrupts.

If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged.

If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

EPCALVD: Interrupt controller of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector.

If EPCALVD = 0, Disable the interrupt of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector.

If EPCALVD = 1, Enable the interrupt of Programmable Counter Array (PCA) and Low-Voltage Detector.
8. Register related with SPI interrupt: SPSTAT

SPI State register: SPSTAT (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPSTAT</td>
<td>CDH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>SPIF</td>
<td>WCOL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SPIF: SPI transfer completion flag.
When a serial transfer finishes, the SPIF bit is set and an interrupt is generated if all the EADC_SPI (IE.6) bit, ESPI bit (AUXR.3) and the EA (IE.7) bit are set. If SS is an input and is driven low when SPI is in master mode with SSIG = 0, SPIF will also be set to signal the “mode change”. The SPIF is cleared in software by “writing 1 to this bit”.

WCOL: SPI write collision flag.
The WCOL bit is set if the SPI data register, SPDAT, is written during a data transfer. The WCOL flag is cleared in software by “writing 1 to this bit”.

IE: Interrupt Enable Rgister (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>EPCA_LVD</td>
<td>EADC_SPI</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td>ET1</td>
<td>EX1</td>
<td>ET0</td>
<td>EX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EA: disables all interrupts.
If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged.
If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

EADC_SPI: Interrupt controller of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).
If EADC_SPI = 0, Disable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).
If EADC_SPI = 1, Enable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).

9. Interrupt register related with Power down wake-up: WAKE_CLKO (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>PCAWAKEUP</td>
<td>RXD_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T1_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T0_PIN_IE</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>T1CKLO T0CKLO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PCAWAKEUP: When set and the associated-PCA interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the CEXn pin of PCA function is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

RXD_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-UART interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the RXD pin (P3.0) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-Timer1 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.5) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T0_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-Timer0 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.4) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1CKLO: When set, P3.5 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 1. The clock rate is Timer 1 overflow rate divided by 2.

T0CKLO: When set, P3.4 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 0. The clock rate is Timer 0 overflow rate divided by 2.
6.3 Interrupt Priorities

Each interrupt source can also be individually programmed to one of four priority levels by setting or clearing the bits in Special Function Registers IP and IPH. A low-priority interrupt can itself be interrupted by a high-priority interrupt, but not by another low-priority interrupt. A high-priority interrupt can’t be interrupted by any other interrupt source.

If two requests of different priority levels are received simultaneously, the request of higher priority level is serviced. If requests of the same priority level are received simultaneously, an internal polling sequence determines which request is serviced. Thus within each priority level there is a second priority structure determined by the polling sequence, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Priority Within Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0. INT0</td>
<td>(highest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Timer 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. INT1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Timer 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. UART1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ADC_SPI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. PCA_LVD</td>
<td>(lowest)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the “priority within level” structure is only used to resolve simultaneous requests of the same priority level.

In C language program, the interrupt polling sequence number is equal to interrupt number, for example,

```c
void Int0_Routine(void) interrupt 0;
void Timer0_Routine(void) interrupt 1;
void Int1_Routine(void) interrupt 2;
void Timer1_Routine(void) interrupt 3;
void UART_Routine(void) interrupt 4;
void ADC_SPI_Routine(void) interrupt 5;
void PCA_LVD_Routine(void) interrupt 6;
```
6.4 How Interrupts Are Handled

External interrupt pins and other interrupt sources are sampled at the rising edge of each instruction \textit{OPcode fetch cycle}. The samples are polled during the next instruction \textit{OPcode fetch cycle}. If one of the flags was in a set condition of the first cycle, the second cycle of polling cycles will find it and the interrupt system will generate an hardware \texttt{LCALL} to the appropriate service routine as long as it is not blocked by any of the following conditions.

\textbf{Block conditions :}

- An interrupt of equal or higher priority level is already in progress.
- The current cycle (polling cycle) is not the final cycle in the execution of the instruction in progress.
- The instruction in progress is \texttt{RETI} or any write to the \texttt{IE}, \texttt{IP} and \texttt{IPH} registers.
- The ISP/IAP activity is in progress.

Any of these four conditions will block the generation of the hardware \texttt{LCALL} to the interrupt service routine. Condition 2 ensures that the instruction in progress will be completed before vectoring into any service routine. Condition 3 ensures that if the instruction in progress is \texttt{RETI} or any access to \texttt{IE}, \texttt{IP} or \texttt{IPH}, then at least one or more instruction will be executed before any interrupt is vectored to.

The polling cycle is repeated with the last clock cycle of each instruction cycle. Note that if an interrupt flag is active but not being responded to for one of the above conditions, if the flag is not still active when the blocking condition is removed, the denied interrupt will not be serviced. In other words, the fact that the interrupt flag was once active but not being responded to for one of the above conditions, if the flag is not still active when the blocking condition is removed, the denied interrupt will not be serviced. The interrupt flag was once active but not serviced is not kept in memory. Every polling cycle is new.

Note that if an interrupt of higher priority level goes active prior to the rising edge of the third machine cycle, then in accordance with the above rules it will be vectored to during fifth and sixth machine cycle, without any instruction of the lower priority routine having been executed.

Thus the processor acknowledges an interrupt request by executing a hardware-generated \texttt{LCALL} to the appropriate servicing routine. In some cases it also clears the flag that generated the interrupt, and in other cases it doesn’t. It never clears the Serial Port flags. This has to be done in the user’s software. It clears an external interrupt flag (\texttt{IE0} or \texttt{IE1}) only if it was transition-activated. The hardware-generated \texttt{LCALL} pushes the contents of the Program Counter onto the stack (but it does not save the PSW) and reloads the PC with an address that depends on the source of the interrupt being vectored to, as shown be low.
Execution proceeds from that location until the RETI instruction is encountered. The RETI instruction informs the processor that this interrupt routine is no longer in progress, then pops the top two bytes from the stack and reloads the Program Counter. Execution of the interrupted program continues from where it left off.

Note that a simple RET instruction would also have returned execution to the interrupted program, but it would have left the interrupt control system thinking an interrupt was still in progress.

6.5 External Interrupts

The external sources can be programmed to be level-activated or transition-activated by clearing or setting bit IT1 or IT0 in Register TCON. If ITx = 0, external interrupt x is triggered by a detected low at the INTx pin. If ITx=1, external interrupt x is edge-triggered. In this mode if successive samples of the INTx pin show a high in one cycle and a low in the next cycle, interrupt request flag IEx in TCON is set. Flag bit IEx then requests the interrupt.

Since the external interrupt pins are sampled once each machine cycle, an input high or low should hold for at least 12 system clocks to ensure sampling. If the external interrupt is transition-activated, the external source has to hold the request pin high for at least one machine cycle, and then hold it low for at least one machine cycle to ensure that the transition is seen so that interrupt request flag IEx will be set. IEx will be automatically cleared by the CPU when the service routine is called.

If the external interrupt is level-activated, the external source has to hold the request active until the requested interrupt is actually generated. Then it has to deactivate the request before the interrupt service routine is completed, or else another interrupt will be generated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Vector Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>External Interrupt 0</td>
<td>0003H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer 0</td>
<td>000BH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External Interrupt 1</td>
<td>0013H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timer 1</td>
<td>001BH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UART</td>
<td>0023H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC/SPI</td>
<td>002BH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA/LVD</td>
<td>0033H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Example:** Design an intrusion warning system using interrupts that sounds a 400Hz tone for 1 second (using a loudspeaker connected to P1.7) whenever a door sensor connected to INT0 makes a high-to-low transition.

Assembly Language Solution

```
ORG 0
LJMP MAIN ;3-byte instruction
LJMP INT0INT ;EXT 0 vector address
ORG 000BH ;Timer 0 vector
LJMP T0INT
ORG 001BH ;Timer 1 vector
LJMP T1INT
ORG 0030H

MAIN:
SETB IT0 ;negative edge activated
MOV TMOD, #11H ;16-bit timer mode
MOV IE, #81H ;enable EXT 0 only
SJMP $ ;now relax

; INT0INT:
MOV R7, #20 ;20 ' 5000 us = 1 second
SETB TF0 ;force timer 0 interrupt
SETB TF1 ;force timer 1 interrupt
SETB ET0 ;begin tone for 1 second
SETB ET1 ;enable timer interrupts
RETI

; T0INT:
CLR TR0 ;stop timer
DJNZ R7, SKIP ;if not 20th time, exit
CLR ET0 ;if 20th, disable tone
CLR ET1 ;disable itself
LJMP EXIT

SKIP:
MOV TH0, #HIGH (-50000) ;0.05sec. delay
MOV TL0, #LOW (-5000)
EXIT:
RETI

; T1INT:
CLR TR1
MOV TH1, #HIGH (-1250) ;count for 400Hz
MOV TL1, #LOW (-1250)
CPL P1.7 ;music maestro!
SETB TR1
RETI
END
```
C Language Solution

#include <REG51.H>  
/* SFR declarations */  
sbit outbit = P1^7;  
/* use variable outbit to refer to P1.7 */  
unsigned char R7;  
/* use 8-bit variable to represent R7 */  
main()
{
    IT0 = 1;  
/* negative edge activated */  
    TMOD = 0x11;  
/* 16-bit timer mode */  
    IE = 0x81;  
/* enable EXT 0 only */  
    while(1);
}

void INT0INT(void) interrupt 0
{
    R7 = 20;  
/* 20 x 5000us = 1 second */  
    TF0 = 1;  
/* force timer 0 interrupt */  
    TF1 = 1;  
/* force timer 1 interrupt */  
    ET0 = 1;  
/* begin tone for 1 second */  
    ET1 = 1;  
/* enable timer 1 interrupts */  
/* timer interrupts will do the work */
}

void T0INT(void) interrupt 1
{
    TR0 = 0;  
/* stop timer */  
    R7 = R7 - 1;  
/* decrement R7 */  
    if (R7 == 0)  
/* if 20th time, */
    {
        ET0 = 0;  
/* disable itself */  
        ET1 = 0;
    }
    else
    {
        TH0 = 0x3C;  
/* 0.05 sec. delay */  
        TL0 = 0xB0;
    }
}

void T1INT (void) interrupt 3
{
    TR0 = 0;
    TH1 = 0xFB;  
/* count for 400Hz */  
    TL1 = 0x1E;
    outbit = !outbit;  
/* music maestro! */  
    TR1 = 1;
}
In the above assembly language solution, five distinct sections are the interrupt vector locations, the main program, and the three interrupt service routines. All vector locations contain LJMP instructions to the respective routines. The main program, starting at code address 0030H, contains only four instructions. SETB IT0 configures the door sensing interrupt input as negative-edge triggered. MOV TMOD, #11H configures both timers for mode 1, 16-bit timer mode. Only the external 0 interrupt is enabled initially (MOV IE,#81H), so a "door-open" condition is needed before any interrupt is accepted. Finally, SJMP $ puts the main program in a do-nothing loop.

When a door-open condition is sensed (by a high-to-low transition of INT0), an external 0 interrupt is generated, INT0INT begins by putting the constant 20 in R7, then sets the overflow flags for both timers to force timer interrupts to occur.

Timer interrupt will only occur, however, if the respective bits are enabled in the IE register. The next two instructions (SETB ET0 and SETB ET1) enable timer interrupts. Finally, INT0INT terminates with a RETI to the main program.

Timer 0 creates the 1 second timeout, and Timer 1 creates the 400Hz tone. After INT0INT returns to the main program, timer interrupt are immediately generated (and accepted after one execution of SJMP $). Because of the fixed polling sequence, the Timer 0 interrupt is serviced first. A 1 second timeout is created by programming 20 repetitions of a 50,000 us timeout. R7 serves as the counter. Nineteen times out of 20, T0INT operates as follows. First, Timer 0 is turned off and R7 is decremented. Then, TH0/TL is reload with -50,000, the timer is turned back on, and the interrupt is terminated. On the 20th Timer 0 interrupt, R7 is decremented to 0 (1 second has elapsed). Both timer interrupts are disabled(CLR ET0, CLR ET1) and the interrupt is terminated. No further timer interrupts will be generated until the next "door-open" condition is sensed.

The 400Hz tone is programmed using Timer 1 interrupts. 400Hz requires a period of 1/400 = 2,500 us or 1,250 high-time and 1,250 us low-time. Each timer 1 ISR simply puts -1250 in TH1/TL1, complements the port bit driving the loudspeaker, then terminates.
6.6 Response Time

The INT0 and INTI levels are inverted and latched into the interrupt flags IE0 and IE1 at rising edge of every system clock cycle.

The Timer 0 and Timer 1 flags, TF0 and TF1, are set after which the timers overflow. The values are then polled by the circuitry at rising edge of the next system clock cycle.

If a request is active and conditions are right for it to be acknowledged, a hardware subroutine call to the requested service routine will be the next instruction to be executed. The call itself takes six system clock cycles. Thus, a minimum of seven complete system clock cycles elapse between activation of an external interrupt request and the beginning of execution of the first instruction of the service routine.

A longer response time would result if the request is blocked by one of the four previously listed conditions. If an interrupt of equal or higher priority level is already in progress, the additional wait time obviously depends on the nature of the other interrupt’s service routine. If the instruction in progress is not in its final cycle, the additional wait time cannot be more than 3 cycles, since the longest instructions (LCALL) are only 6 cycles long, and if the instruction in progress is RETI or an access to IE or IP, the additional wait time cannot be more than 5 cycles (a maximum of one more cycle to complete the instruction in progress, plus 6 cycles to complete the next instruction if the instruction is LCALL).

Thus, in a single-interrupt system, the response time is always more than 7 cycles and less than 12 cycles.
6.7 Demo Programs about Interrupts (C and ASM)

6.7.1 External Interrupt 0 (INT0) Demo Programs (C and ASM)

1. Demonstrate External Interrupt 0 triggered by Falling Edge

C program

```c
#include "reg51.h"

//External interrupt0 service routine
void extint0() interrupt 0 //INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
{
}

void main()
{
    IT0 = 1; //set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
    EX0 = 1; //enable INT0 interrupt
    EA = 1; //open global interrupt switch

    while (1);
}
```
Assembly program

;/*-----------------------------------------------*/
;/* STC MCU International Limited -----------------*/
;/* STC 1T Series MCU Ext0 (Falling edge) Demo -------*/
;/* Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------*/
;/* Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------*/
;/* Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------*/
;/* Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------*/
;/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
;/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
;/*-----------------------------------------------*/

;-----------------------------------------
;interrupt vector table

ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 0003H ;INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
LJMP EXINT0

;-----------------------------------------

ORG 0100H

MAIN:
MOV SP, #7FH ;initial SP
SETB IT0 ;set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
SETB EX0 ;enable INT0 interrupt
SETB EA ;open global interrupt switch
SJMP $

;-----------------------------------------
;External interrupt0 service routine

EXINT0:
RETI

;-----------------------------------------

END
2. Demonstrate the Power-Down Mode Waked up by Falling Edge of External Interrupt 0

C program

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

//External interrupt0 service routine
void exint0( ) interrupt 0 //INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
{
}

void main()
{
    IT0 = 1;                  //set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
    EX0 = 1;                  //enable INT0 interrupt
    EA = 1;                   //open global interrupt switch

    while (1)
    {
        INT0 = 1;              //ready read INT0 port
        while (!INT0);         //check INT0
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            PCON = 0x02;          //MCU power down
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            P1++;                  
    }
}
```

/* -------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited -------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by INT0 Demo --------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ---------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ----------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ----------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the ------*/
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC ------*/
/*---------------------------------------------------------------*/
Assembly program

/* *-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited ------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by INT0 Demo -------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ---------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC -------*/
/*--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

; interrupt vector table
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 0003H ;INT0, interrupt 0 (location at 0003H)
LJMP EXINT0

ORG 0100H

MAIN:
MOV SP,#7FH ;initial SP
SETB IT0 ;set INT0 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
SETB EX0 ;enable INT0 interrupt
SETB EA ;open global interrupt switch
LOOP:
SETB INT0 ;ready read INT0 port
JNB INT0,$ ;check INT0
NOP
NOP
MOV PCON,#02H ;MCU power down
NOP
NOP
CPL P1.0
SJMP LOOP

;External interrupt0 service routine

EXINT0:
RETI

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

END
6.7.2 External Interrupt 1 (INT1) Demo Programs (C and ASM)

1. Demostrate External Interrupt 1 triggered by Falling Edge

C program

```c
#include "reg51.h"

//External interrupt1 service routine
void ext1() interrupt 2            //INT1, interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
{
}

void main()
{
    IT1 = 1;                        //set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling only 0:Low level)
    EX1 = 1;                        //enable INT1 interrupt
    EA = 1;                         //open global interrupt switch

    while (1);
}
```
Assembly program

; /******************************************************************************************
; /* --- STC MCU International Limited ------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC 1T Series MCU Ext1(Falling edge) Demo ------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
; /* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
; /* ******************************************************************************************/

;---------------------------------------------------------------
interrupt vector table

ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 0013H ; INT1, interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
LJMP EXINT1

;---------------------------------------------------------------
ORG 0100H
MAIN:
MOV SP, #7FH ; initial SP
SETB IT1 ; set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
SETB EX1 ; enable INT1 interrupt
SETB EA ; open global interrupt switch
SJMP $

;---------------------------------------------------------------
; External interrupt 1 service routine
EXINT1:
RETI

;---------------------------------------------------------------
END
# include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

//External interrupt0 service routine
void exint1( ) interrupt 2
{
}

void main()
{
    IT1 = 1;                          //set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
    EX1 = 1;                          //enable INT1 interrupt
    EA = 1;                           //open global interrupt switch

    while (1)
    {
        INT1 = 1;                    //ready read INT1 port
        while (!INT1);               //check INT1
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        PCON = 0x02;                 //MCU power down
        P1++;
    }
}
Assembly program

/*------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by INT1 Demo --------------------------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ---------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC -------*/
/*-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

;-----------------------------------------
;Interrupt vector table
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 0013H ;INT1, interrupt 2 (location at 0013H)
LJMP EXINT1

;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0100H

MAIN:

MOV SP,#7FH ;initial SP
SETB IT1 ;set INT1 interrupt type (1:Falling 0:Low level)
SETB EX1 ;enable INT1 interrupt
SETB EA ;open global interrupt switch

LOOP:

SETB INT1 ;ready read INT1 port
JNB INT1,$ ;check INT1
NOP
NOP
MOV PCON,#02H ;MCU power down
NOP
NOP
CPL P1.0
SJMP LOOP

;-----------------------------------------
;External interrupt1 service routine

EXINT1:

RETI

;-----------------------------------------
END
6.7.3 Programs of P3.4/T0 Interrupt(falling edge) used to wake up PD mode

1. C program

```c
/*-------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited --------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by T0 Demo ----------------------------------------------------*/
/* ---This Interrupt will borrow Timer 0 interrupt request bit TF0 and Timer 0 interrupt vector address ----*/
/* ---So Timer 0 function should be disabled when this Interrupt is enabled ---------------------*/
/* ---The enable bit of this Interrupt is T0_PIN_IE / WAKE_CLKO.4 in WAKE_CLKO register --------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

sfr WAKE_CLKO = 0x8f;

//External interrupt0 service routine
void t0int() interrupt 1 //T0 interrupt, interrupt 1 (location at 000BH)
{
}

void main()
{
    WAKE_CLKO = 0x10; //enable P3.4/T0/INT falling edge wakeup MCU
    //from power-down mode
    //T0_PIN_IE (WAKE_CLKO.4) = 1
    ET0 = 1; //enable T0 interrupt
    EA = 1;  //open global interrupt switch

    while (1)
    {
        T0 = 1; //ready read T0 port
        while (!T0); //check T0
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        PCON = 0x02; //MCU power down
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        P1++;
    }
}
```
2. Assembly program
/* --- STC MCU International Limited ---------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by T0 Demo ------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- This Interrupt will borrow Timer 0 interrupt request bit TF0 and Timer 0 interrupt vector address */
/* --- So Timer 0 function should be disabled when this Interrupt is enabled --------------------------*/
/* --- The enable bit of this Interrupt is T0_PIN_IE / WAKE_CLKO.4 in WAKE_CLKO register -------------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which */
/* data and procedures from STC *---------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

WAKE_CLKO EQU 8FH
; interrupt vector table
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN
ORG 000BH ; T0 interrupt, interrupt 1 (location at 000BH)
LJMP T0INT

ORG 0100H
MAIN:
MOVE SP,#7FH ; initial SP
MOVE WAKE_CLKO, #10H ; enable P3.4/T0/INT falling edge wakeup MCU
; from power-down mode
; T0_PIN_IE (WAKE_CLKO.4) = 1
; enable T0 interrupt
; open global interrupt switch
SETB ET0
SETB EA

LOOP:
SETB T0 ; ready read T0 port
JNB T0, $ ; check T0
NOP
NOP
MOVE PCON, #02H ; MCU power down
NOP
NOP
CPL P1.0
SJMP LOOP

T0INT:
RETI

END
6.7.4 Programs of P3.5/T1 Interrupt(falling edge) used to wake up PD mode

1. C program

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

sfr WAKE_CLKO = 0x8f;

//External interrupt0 service routine
void t1int() interrupt 3              //T1 interrupt, interrupt 3 (location at 001BH)
{
}

void main()
{
    WAKE_CLKO = 0x20;             //enable P3.5/T1/INT falling edge wakeup MCU
    //from power-down mode

    ET1 = 1;                //enable T1 interrupt
    EA = 1;                 //open global interrupt switch

    while (1)
    {
        T1 = 1;                //ready read T1 port
        while (!T1);           //check T1
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        PCON = 0x02;            //MCU power down
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        P1++;
    }
}
```
2. Assembly program

/* --- STC MCU International Limited ---------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by T1 Demo ---------------------------------------------*/
/* ---This Interrupt will borrow Timer 1 interrupt request bit TF1 and Timer 1 interrupt vector address*/
/* ---So Timer 1 function should be disabled when this Interrupt is enabled ------------------------*/
/* ---The enable bit of this Interrupt is T1_PIN_IE / WAKE_CLKO.5 in WAKE_CLKO register ----------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com --------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which */
/* data and procedures from STC  ------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* WAKE_CLKO EQU 8FH                     */

; interrupt vector table

ORG      0000H
LJMP     MAIN

ORG      001BH ; T1 interrupt, interrupt 3 (location at 001BH)
LJMP     T1INT

ORG      0100H

MAIN:

MOV      SP, #7FH                  ; initial SP
MOV      WAKE_CLKO, #20H        ; enable P3.5/T1/INT falling edge wakeup MCU
MOV      PCON, #02H                ; MCU power down

; SETB ET1 ; enable T1 interrupt
; SETB EA ; open global interrupt switch

LOOP:

SETB T1               ; ready read T1 port
JNB      T1, S        ; check T1
NOP
NOP
MOV      PCON, #02H    ; MCU power down
NOP
NOP
CPL      P1.0
SJMP     LOOP

; T1 interrupt service routine

T1INT:

RETI

END
6.7.5 Program of P3.0/RxD Interrupt (falling edge) used to wake up PD mode

1. C program

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

//Declare SFR associated with the RxD
sfr WAKE_CLKO = 0x8F;

void uart_isr() interrupt 4 using 1 {
    if (RI)
        RI = 0;
}

void main()
{
    WAKE_CLKO = 0x40; //enable P3.0/RxD/INT falling edge wakeup MCU
    //from power-down mode
    RxD_PIN_IE (WAKE_CLKO.6) = 1
    ES = 1;
    EA = 1;
}
```
while (1)
{
    RXD = 1; // ready read RXD port
    while (!RXD); // check RXD
    _nop_();
    _nop_();
    PCON = 0x02; // MCU power down
    _nop_();
    _nop_();
P2++;}

2. Assembly program

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
; /* --- STC MCU International Limited--------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by RxD Demo -------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- This Interrupt will borrow RxD interrupt request bit RI and its interrupt vector address ----------------*/
; /* --- So UART function should be disabled when this Interrupt is enabled --------------------------------------*/
; /* --- The enable bit of this Interrupt is RXD_PIN_IE / WAKE_CLKO.6 in WAKE_CLKO register */
; /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
; *-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

; /* Declare SFR associated with the RxD */
WAKE_CLKO    EQU  8FH

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
ORG    0000H
LJMP   MAIN

ORG    0023H
UART_ISR:
    JBC    RI, EXIT ; clear RI flag
EXIT:
    RETI

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
ORG 0100H

MAIN:
MOV WAKE_CLKO, #40H ;enable P3.0/RxD falling edge wakeup MCU
;from power-down mode
;RxD_PIN_IE (WAKE_CLKO.6) = 1
SETB ES
SETB EA

LOOP:
SETB RXD ;ready read RXD port
JNB RXD, $ ;check RXD
NOP
NOP
MOV PCON, #02H ;MCU power down
NOP
NOP
CPL P1.0
SJMP LOOP

;-----------------------------------------

END
6.7.6 Program of PCA Interrupt used to wake up Power Down mode

1. C program

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA*/
sfr  WAKE_CLKO   =   0x8F; //PCA control register
sfr  CCON =   0xD8;        //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit  CCF0 =   CCON^0;      //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit  CCF1 =   CCON^1;      //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
sbit  CR =   CCON^6;       //PCA timer run control bit
sbit  CF =   CCON^7;       //PCA timer overflow flag
sfr  CMOD =   0xD9;        //PCA mode register
sfr  CL =   0xE9;          //PCA base timer LOW
sfr  CH =   0xF9;          //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr  CCAPM0=   0xDA;       //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr  CCAP0L =   0xEA;      //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr  CCAP0H =   0xFA;      //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr  CCAPM1=   0xDB;       //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr  CCAP1L =   0xEB;      //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr  CCAP1H =   0xFB;      //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr  CCAPM2=   0xDC;       //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr  CCAP2L =   0xFC;      //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr  CCAP2H =   0xEC;      //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr  CCAPM3=   0xDD;       //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr  CCAP3L =   0xED;      //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr  CCAP3H =   0xFD;      //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr  PCAPWM0 =   0xF2;     //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr  PCAPWM1 =   0xF3;     //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr  PCAPWM2 =   0xF4;     //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr  PCAPWM3 =   0xF5;     //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
```

---
sbit PCA_LED = P1^0;  //PCA test LED
sbit CCP0 = P3^7;

void PCA_isr() interrupt 7 using 1
{
    CCF0 = 0;                  //Clear interrupt flag
    PCA_LED = !PCA_LED;       //toggle the test pin while CCP0(P3.7) have a falling edge
}

void main()
{
    CCON = 0;                  //Initial PCA control register
    //PCA timer stop running
    //Clear CF flag
    //Clear all module interrupt flag
    CL = 0;                    //Reset PCA base timer
    CH = 0;
    CMOD = 0x00;               //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
    //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
    CCAPM0 = 0x11;             //PCA module-0 capture by a negative tigger on CCP0(P3.7)
    //and enable PCA interrupt

    // CCAPM0 = 0x21;          //PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CCP0(P3.7) and
    //enable PCA interrupt
    // CCAPM0 = 0x31;       //PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
    //on CCP0(P3.7) and enable PCA interrupt

    WAKE_CLKO = 0x80;        //enable PCA falling/raising edge wakeup MCU
    //from power-down mode

    CR = 1;                   //PCA timer start run
    EA = 1;

    while (1)
    {
        CCP0 = 1;                //ready read CCP0 port
        while (!CCP0);           //check CCP0
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        PCON = 0x02;             //MCU power down
        _nop_();
        _nop_();
        P2++;                   
    }
}
2 Assembly program

/************************************************************************/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU Power-Down wakeup by PCA Demo ----------------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/************************************************************************/

;Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
WAKE_CLKO  EQU  8FH

CCON       EQU  0D8H ;PCA control register
CCF0       BIT  CCON.0 ;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1       BIT  CCON.1 ;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR         BIT  CCON.6 ;PCA timer run control bit
CF         BIT  CCON.7 ;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD       EQU  0D9H ;PCA mode register
CL         EQU  0E9H ;PCA base timer LOW
CH         EQU  0F9H ;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0     EQU  0DAH ;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L     EQU  0EAH ;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H     EQU  0FAH ;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1     EQU  0DBH ;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L     EQU  0EBH ;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H     EQU  0FBH ;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM2     EQU  0DCH ;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2L     EQU  0ECH ;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2H     EQU  0FCH ;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM3     EQU  0DDH ;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3L     EQU  0EDH ;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP3H     EQU  0FDH ;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH

PCA_LED    BIT  P1.1 ;PCA test LED
CCP0       BIT  P1.3
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 003BH

PCA_ISR:
CLR CCF0 ;Clear interrupt flag
CPL PCA_LED ;toggle the test pin while CCP0(P3.7) have a falling edge
RETI

ORG 0100H

MAIN:
MOV CCON, #0 ;Initial PCA control register
;PCA timer stop running
;Clear CF flag
;Clear all module interrupt flag
CLR A ;
MOV CL, A ;Reset PCA base timer
MOV CH, A ;
MOV CMOD, #00H ;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
MOV CCAPM0, #11H ;PCA module-0 capture by a falling edge on CCP0(P1.3)
;and enable PCA interrupt
; MOV CCAPM0, #21H ;PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CCP0(P1.3)
;and enable PCA interrupt
; MOV CCAPM0, #31H ;PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
;on CCP0(P1.3) and enable PCA interrupt

MOV WAKE_CLKO, #80H ;enable PCA falling/raising edge wakeup MCU from
;power-down mode
SETB CR ;PCA timer start run
SETB EA

LOOP:
SETB CCP0 ;ready read CCP0 port
JNB CCP0, $ ;check CCP0
NOP
NOP
MOV PCON, #02H ;MCU power down
NOP
NOP
CPL P1.0
SJMP LOOP

END
Chapter 7. Timer/Counter 0/1

Timer 0 and timer 1 are like the ones in the conventional 8051, both of them can be individually configured as timers or event counters.

In the “Timer” function, the register is incremented every 12 system clocks or every system clock depending on AUXR.7(T0x12) bit and AUXR.6(T1x12). In the default state, it is fully the same as the conventional 8051. In the x12 mode, the count rate equals to the system clock.

In the “Counter” function, the register is incremented in response to a 1-to-0 transition at its corresponding external input pin, T0 or T1. In this function, the external input is sampled once at the positive edge of every clock cycle. When the samples show a high in one cycle and a low in the next cycle, the count is incremented. The new count value appears in the register during at the end of the cycle following the one in which the transition was detected. Since it takes 2 machine cycles (24 system clocks) to recognize a 1-to-0 transition, the maximum count rate is 1/24 of the system clock. There are no restrictions on the duty cycle of the external input signal, but to ensure that a given level is sampled at least once before it changes, it should be held for at least one full machine cycle.

In addition to the “Timer” or “Counter” selection, Timer 0 and Timer 1 have four operating modes from which to select. The “Timer” or “Counter” function is selected by control bits C/T in the Special Function Register TMOD. These two Timer/Counter have four operating modes, which are selected by bit-pairs (M1, M0) in TMOD. Modes 0, 1, and 2 are the same for both Timer/Counters. Mode 3 is different. The four operating modes are described in the following text.

7.1 Special Function Registers about Timer/Counter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit Address and Symbol</th>
<th>Value after Power-on or Reset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCON</td>
<td>Timer Control</td>
<td>88H</td>
<td>TF1 TR1 TF0 TR0 IE1 IT1 IE0 IT0</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMOD</td>
<td>Timer Mode</td>
<td>89H</td>
<td>GATE C/T M1 M0 GATE C/T M1 M0</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL0</td>
<td>Timer Low 0</td>
<td>8AH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TL1</td>
<td>Timer Low 1</td>
<td>8BH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH0</td>
<td>Timer High 0</td>
<td>8CH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH1</td>
<td>Timer High 1</td>
<td>8DH</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>Auxiliary register</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6 EADCIE SPI ELVDI</td>
<td>0000 00xxB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>PC_WAKEUP RXD_PIN_IE TX_PIN_IE RX_PIN_IE T1CLKO T0CLKO</td>
<td>0000 xx00B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **TCON register: Timer/Counter Control Register** (Bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCON</td>
<td>88H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TF1:** Timer/Counter 1 Overflow Flag. Set by hardware on Timer/Counter 1 overflow. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared by hardware when processor vectors to the Timer 1 interrupt routine.
- If TF1 = 0, No Timer 1 overflow detected.
- If TF1 = 1, Timer 1 has overflowed.

**TR1:** Timer/Counter 1 Run Control bit. Set/cleared by software to turn Timer/Counter on/off.
- If TR1 = 0, Timer 1 disabled.
- If TR1 = 1, Timer 1 enabled.

**TF0:** Timer/Counter 0 Overflow Flag. Set by hardware on Timer/Counter 0 overflow. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared by hardware when processor vectors to the Timer 0 interrupt routine.
- If TF0 = 0, No Timer 0 overflow detected.
- If TF0 = 1, Timer 0 has overflowed.

**TR0:** Timer/Counter 0 Run Control bit. Set/cleared by software to turn Timer/Counter on/off.
- If TR0 = 0, Timer 0 disabled.
- If TR0 = 1, Timer 0 enabled.

**IE1:** External Interrupt 1 Edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge/level defined by IT1 is detected. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared when the external interrupt 1 service routine has been processed.

**IT1:** External Interrupt 1 Type Select bit. Set/cleared by software to specify falling edge/low level triggered external interrupt 1.
- If IT1 = 0, INT1 is low level triggered.
- If IT1 = 1, INT1 is edge triggered.

**IE0:** External Interrupt 0 Edge flag. Set by hardware when external interrupt edge/level defined by IT0 is detected. The flag can be cleared by software but is automatically cleared when the external interrupt 0 service routine has been processed.

**IT0:** External Interrupt 0 Type Select bit. Set/cleared by software to specify falling edge/low level triggered external interrupt 0.
- If IT0 = 0, INT0 is low level triggered.
- If IT0 = 1, INT0 is edge triggered.
2. **TMOD register: Timer/Counter Mode Register**

TMOD address: 89H (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(MSB)</th>
<th>GATE</th>
<th>C/T</th>
<th>M1</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>(LSB)</th>
<th>GATE</th>
<th>C/T</th>
<th>M1</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timer 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Timer 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GATR/TMOD.7**: Timer/Counter Gate Control.
- If GATE/TMOD.7=0, Timer/Counter 1 enabled when TR1 is set irrespective of INT1 logic level;
- If GATE/TMOD.7=1, Timer/Counter 1 enabled only when TR1 is set AND INT1 pin is high.

**C/T/TMOD.6**: Timer/Counter 1 Select bit.
- If C/T/TMOD.6=0, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock);
- If C/T/TMOD.6=1, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Counter operation (input from external T1 pin).

**M1/TMOD.5 ~ M0/TMOD.4**: Timer 1 Mode Select bits.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M1</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>Operating Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Mode 0: 13-bit Timer/Counter for Timer 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mode 1: 16-bit Timer/Counter. TH1 and TL1 are cascaded; there is no prescaler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Mode 2: 8-bit auto-reload Timer/Counter. TH1 holds a value which is to be reloaded into TL1 each time it overflows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Timer/Counter 1 stopped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GATR/TMOD.3**: Timer/Counter Gate Control.
- If GATE/TMOD.3=0, Timer/Counter 0 enabled when TR0 is set irrespective of INT0 logic level;
- If GATE/TMOD.3=1, Timer/Counter 0 enabled only when TR0 is set AND INT0 pin is high.

**C/T/TMOD.2**: Timer/Counter 0 Select bit.
- If C/T/TMOD.2=0, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock);
- If C/T/TMOD.2=0, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Counter operation (input from external T0 pin).

**M1/TMOD.1 ~ M0/TMOD.0**: Timer 0 Mode Select bits.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M1</th>
<th>M0</th>
<th>Operating Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Mode 0: 13-bit Timer/Counter for Timer 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mode 1: 16-bit Timer/Counter. TH0 and TL0 are cascaded; there is no prescaler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Mode 2: 8-bit auto-reload Timer/Counter. TH0 holds a value which is to be reloaded into TL0 each time it overflows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mode3: TL0 is an 8-bit Timer/Counter controlled by the standard Timer 0 control bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>TH0 is an 8-bit timer only controlled by Timer 1 control bits.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. AUXR: Auxiliary register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>T0x12</td>
<td>T1x12</td>
<td>UART_M0x6</td>
<td>EADCI</td>
<td>ESPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T0x12 : Timer 0 clock source bit.
0 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
1 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

T1x12 : Timer 1 clock source bit.
0 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
1 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

UART_M0x6 : Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0
0 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12.
1 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2.

EADCI : Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter
0 : (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ESPI : Enable/Disable interrupt from Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
0 : (default) Inhibit the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ELVDI : Enable/Disable interrupt from low-voltage sensor
0 : (default) Inhibit the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

4. WAKE_CLKO: CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>PCAWAKEUP</td>
<td>RXD_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T1_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T0_PIN_IE</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>T1CLKO</td>
<td>T0CLKO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PCAWAKEUP: When set and the associated-PCA interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the CEXn pin of PCA function is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

RXD_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-UART interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the RXD pin (P3.0) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1_PIN_IE : When set and the associated-Timer1 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.5) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T0_PIN_IE : When set and the associated-Timer0 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.4) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1CLKO : When set, P3.5 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 1. The clock rate is Timer 1 overflow rate divided by 2.

T0CLKO : When set, P3.4 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 0. The clock rate is Timer 0 overflow rate divided by 2.
7.2 **Timer/Counter 0 Mode of Operation (Compatible with traditional 8051 MCU)**

Timer/Counter 0 can be configured for four modes by setting M1(TMOD.1) and M0(TMOD.0) in special function register TMOD.

**7.2.1 Mode 0 (13-bit Timer/Counter)**

**Mode 0**

In this mode, the timer 0 is configured as a 13-bit timer/counter. As the count rolls over from all 1s to all 0s, it sets the timer interrupt flag TF0. The counted input is enabled to the timer when TR0 = 1 and either GATE=0 or INT0 = 1.(Setting GATE = 1 allows the Timer to be controlled by external input INT0, to facilitate pulse width measurements.) TR0 is a control bit in the Special Function Register TCON. GATE is in TMOD.

The 13-Bit register consists of all 8 bits of TH0 and the lower 5 bits of TL0. The upper 3 bits of TL0 are indeterminate and should be ignored. Setting the run flag (TR0) does not clear the registers.

There are two different GATE bits. one for Timer 1 (TMOD.7) and one for Timer 0 (TMOD.3).

---

Diagram:

**Timer/Counter 0 Mode 0: 13-Bit Timer/Counter**
7.2.2 Mode 1 (16-bit Timer/Counter) and Demo Programs (C and ASM)

In this mode, the timer register is configured as a 16-bit register. As the count rolls over from all 1s to all 0s, it sets the timer interrupt flag TF0. The counted input is enabled to the timer when TR0 = 1 and either GATE=0 or INT0 = 1. (Setting GATE = 1 allows the Timer to be controlled by external input INT0, to facilitate pulse width measurements.) TR0 is a control bit in the Special Function Register TCON. GATE is in TMOD.

The 16-Bit register consists of all 8 bits of TH0 and the lower 8 bits of TL0. Setting the run flag (TR0) does not clear the registers.

Mode 1 is the same as Mode 0, except that the timer register is being run with all 16 bits.

There are two simple programs that demostrates Timer 0 as 16-bit Timer/Counter, one written in C language while other in Assembly language.

C Program:

```c
#include "reg51.h"

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

#define FOSC 18432000L
#define MODE 1T                      //Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
```
#ifdef MODE1T
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/1000) //1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode
#else
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/12/1000) //1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode
#endif

/* define SFR */
sfr AUXR = 0x8e; //Auxiliary register
sbit TEST_LED = P0^0; //work LED, flash once per second

/* define variables */
WORD count; //1000 times counter

void tm0_isr() interrupt 1 using 1
{
    TL0 = T1MS; //reload timer0 low byte
    TH0 = T1MS >> 8; //reload timer0 high byte
    if (count-- == 0)
    {
        count = 1000; //reset counter
        TEST_LED = ! TEST_LED; //work LED flash
    }
}

/* main program */
void main()
{
    #ifdef MODE1T
    AUXR = 0x80; //timer0 work in 1T mode
    #endif
    TMOD = 0x01; //set timer0 as mode1 (16-bit)
    TL0 = T1MS; //initial timer0 low byte
    TH0 = T1MS >> 8; //initial timer0 high byte
    TR0 = 1; //timer0 start running
    ET0 = 1; //enable timer0 interrupt
    EA = 1; //open global interrupt switch
    count = 0; //initial counter
    while (1); //loop
Assembly Program:

; *-------------------------------------------------------------------
; /* --- STC MCU International Limited ----------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC 1T Series 16-bit Timer Demo --------------------------------*/
; /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 --------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -------------------------------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
; /* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
; *-------------------------------------------------------------------*/

; /* define constants */
#define MODE1T               ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef MODE1T
T1MS        EQU 0B800H       ;1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode is (65536-18432000/1000)
#else
T1MS        EQU 0FA00H       ;1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode is (65536-18432000/12/1000)
#endif

; /* define SFR */
AUXR         DATA  8EH         ;Auxiliary register
TEST_LED     BIT   P1.0        ;work LED, flash once per second

; /* define variables */
COUNT   DATA  20H                ;1000 times counter (2 bytes)

;-----------------------------------------------
ORG      0000H
LJMP     MAIN
ORG      000BH
LJMP     TM0_ISR

;-----------------------------------------------

; /* main program */
MAIN:
#ifdef MODE1T
MOV      AUXR, #80H          ;timer0 work in 1T mode
#else
MOV      TMOD, #01H
MOV      TL0,   #LOW T1MS
MOV      TH0,   #HIGH T1MS
SETB     TR0              ;timer0 start running
SETB     ET0              ;enable timer0 interrupt
SETB     EA                ;open global interrupt switch
CLR      A
MOV      COUNT, A         ;initial counter
MOV      COUNT+1, A
SJMP    $
#endif
;-----------------------------------------------------------------------
; /* Timer0 interrupt routine */

TM0_ISR:

PUSH ACC
PUSH PSW
MOV TL0, #LOW T1MS ; reload timer0 low byte
MOV TH0, #HIGH T1MS ; reload timer0 high byte
MOV A, COUNT
ORL A, COUNT+1 ; check whether count(2byte) is equal to 0
JNZ SKIP
MOV COUNT, #LOW 1000 ; 1ms * 1000 -> 1s
MOV COUNT+1, #HIGH 1000
CPL TEST_LED ; work LED flash

SKIP:
CLR C
MOV A, COUNT ; count--
SUBB A, #1
MOV COUNT, A
MOV A, COUNT+1
SUBB A, #0
MOV COUNT+1, A
POP PSW
POP ACC
RETI

;-----------------------------------------------------------------------

END
7.2.3 Mode 2 (8-bit Auto-Reload Mode) and Demo Programs (C and ASM)

Mode 2 configures the timer register as an 8-bit counter (TL0) with automatic reload. Overflow from TL0 not only set TF0, but also reload TL0 with the content of TH0, which is preset by software. The reload leaves TH0 unchanged.

STC12C5410AD is able to generate a programmable clock output on P1.0. When T0CLKO/WAKE_CLKO.0 bit in WAKE_CLKO SFR is set, T0 timer overflow pulse will toggle P1.0 latch to generate a 50% duty clock. The frequency of clock-out = T0 overflow rate/2.

If C/T(TMOD.2) = 0, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\frac{(SYSclk)}{(256 - TH0)} / 2, \quad \text{when AUXR.7 / T0x12=1}
\]

or

\[
\frac{(SYSclk / 12)}{(256 - TH0)} / 2, \quad \text{when AUXR.7 / T0x12=0}
\]

If C/T(TMOD.2) = 1, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Counter operation (input from external P3.4/T0 pin), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\frac{T0\_Pin\_CLK}{(256-TH0)} / 2
\]
; T0 Interrupt (falling edge) Demo programs, where T0 operated in Mode 2 (8-bit auto-reload mode)
; The Timer Interrupt can not wake up MCU from Power-Down mode in the following programs

1. C program

#include "reg51.h"

sfr AUXR = 0x8e;  // Auxiliary register

// T0 interrupt service routine
void t0int( ) interrupt 1  // T0 interrupt (location at 000BH)
{
}

void main()
{
  AUXR = 0x80;  // timer0 work in 1T mode
  TMOD = 0x06;  // set timer0 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
  TL0 = TH0 = 0xff;  // fill with 0xff to count one time
  TR0 = 1;  // timer0 start run
  ET0 = 1;  // enable T0 interrupt
  EA = 1;  // open global interrupt switch

  while (1);
}
2. Assembly program

/*-----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited ---------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU T0(Falling edge) Demo ----------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ----------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*-----------------------------------------------*/

AUXR DATA 08EH ;Auxiliary register

;-----------------------------------------
;interrupt vector table
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 000BH ;T0 interrupt (location at 000BH)
LJMP T0INT

;-----------------------------------------

ORG 0100H

MAIN:
MOV SP, #7FH ;initial SP
MOV AUXR, #80H ;timer0 work in 1T mode
MOV TMOD, #06H ;set timer0 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
MOV A, #0FFH ;fill with 0xff to count one time
MOV TL0, A
MOV TH0, A
SETB TR0 ;timer0 start run
SETB ET0 ;enable T0 interrupt
SETB EA ;open global interrupt switch
SJMP $

;-----------------------------------------

;T0 interrupt service routine
T0INT:
RETI

;-----------------------------------------

END
7.2.4 Mode 3 (Two 8-bit Timers/Counters)

Timer 1 in Mode 3 simply holds its count, the effect is the same as setting TR1 = 0. Timer 0 in Mode 3 established TL0 and TH0 as two separate 8-bit counters. TL0 use the Timer 0 control bits: C/T, GATE, TR0, INT0 and TF0. TH0 is locked into a timer function (counting machine cycles) and takes over the use of TR1 from Timer 1. Thus, TH0 now controls the “Timer 1” interrupt.

Mode 3 is provided for applications requiring an extra 8-bit timer or counter. When Timer 0 is in Mode 3, Timer 1 can be turned on and off by switching it out of and into its own Mode 3, or can still be used by the serial port as a baud rate generator, or in fact, in any application not requiring an interrupt.

![Timer/Counter 0 Mode 3: Two 8-Bit Timers/Counters](image-url)
7.3 Timer/Counter 1 Mode of Operation

Timer/Counter 1 can be configured for three modes by setting M1(TM0.5) and M0(TM0.4) in special function register TMOD.

7.3.1 Mode 0 (13-bit Timer/Counter)

In this mode, the timer register is configured as a 13-bit register. As the count rolls over from all 1s to all 0s, it sets the timer interrupt flag TF1. The counted input is enabled to the timer when TR1 = 1 and either GATE=0 or INT1= 1. (Setting GATE = 1 allows the Timer to be controlled by external input INT1, to facilitate pulse width measurements.) TR0 is a control bit in the Special Function Register TCON. GATE is in TMOD.

The 13-Bit register consists of all 8 bits of TH1 and the lower 5 bits of TL1. The upper 3 bits of TL1 are indeterminate and should be ignored. Setting the run flag (TR1) does not clear the registers.
7.3.2 Mode 1 (16-bit Timer/Counter) and Demo Programs (C and ASM)

In this mode, the timer register is configured as a 16-bit register. As the count rolls over from all 1s to all 0s, it sets the timer interrupt flag TF1. The counted input is enabled to the timer when TR1 = 1 and either GATE=0 or INT1 = 1. (Setting GATE = 1 allows the Timer to be controlled by external input INT1, to facilitate pulse width measurements.) TR1 is a control bit in the Special Function Register TCON. GATE is in TMOD.

The 16-Bit register consists of all 8 bits of TH1 and the lower 8 bits of TL1. Setting the run flag (TR1) does not clear the registers.

Mode 1 is the same as Mode 0, except that the timer register is being run with all 16 bits.

There are another two simple programs that demonstrate Timer 1 as 16-bit Timer/Counter, one written in C language while other in Assembly language.

1. C Program

```c
#include "reg51.h"

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
```

---

Timer/Counter 1 Mode 1: 16-Bit Timer/Counter

There are another two simple programs that demonstrate Timer 1 as 16-bit Timer/Counter, one written in C language while other in Assembly language.
//define constants
#define FOSC 18432000L
#define MODE1T //Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef MODE1T
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/1000) //1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode
#else
#define T1MS (65536-FOSC/12/1000) //1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode
#endif

/* define SFR */
sfr AUXR = 0x8e; //Auxiliary register
sbit TEST_LED = P0^0; //work LED, flash once per second

/* define variables */
WORD count; //1000 times counter

/* Timer0 interrupt routine */
void tm1_isr() interrupt 3 using 1
{
  TL1 = T1MS; //reload timer1 low byte
  TH1 = T1MS >> 8; //reload timer1 high byte
  if (count-- == 0) //1ms * 1000 -> 1s
  {
    count = 1000; //reset counter
    TEST_LED = ! TEST_LED; //work LED flash
  }
}

/* main program */
void main()
{
  ifdef MODE1T
  AUXR = 0x40; //timer1 work in 1T mode
  #endif
  TMOD = 0x10; //set timer1 as mode1 (16-bit)
  TL1 = T1MS; //initial timer1 low byte
  TH1 = T1MS >> 8; //initial timer1 high byte
  TR1 = 1; //timer1 start running
  ET1 = 1; //enable timer1 interrupt
  EA = 1; //open global interrupt switch
  count = 0; //initial counter

  while (1); //loop
2. Assembly Program

;*********************************************************************
;* --- STC MCU International Limited ---------------------------------
;* --- STC 1T Series 16-bit Timer Demo -------------------------------
;* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------------
;* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ---------------------------------------------
;* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------------
;* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -------------------------------------------
;* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the  *
;* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC  *
;*-------------------------------------------------------------------

;* define constants */
#define  MODE1T  ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef MODE1T
    #define T1MS 0B800H  ;1ms timer calculation method in 1T mode is (65536-18432000/1000)
#else
    #define T1MS 0FA00H  ;1ms timer calculation method in 12T mode is (65536-18432000/12/1000)
#endif

;* define SFR */
AUXR DATA 8EH  ;Auxiliary register
TEST_LED BIT P1.0  ;work LED, flash once per second

;* define variables */
COUNT DATA 20H  ;1000 times counter (2 bytes)

;-----------------------------------------------
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN
ORG 001BH
LJMP TM1_ISR

;-----------------------------------------------

;* main program */
MAIN:  
#ifdef MODE1T
    #ifdef MODE1T
        MOV AUXR, #40H  ;timer1 work in 1T mode
    #endif
#endif
MOV TMOD, #10H  ;set timer1 as mode1 (16-bit)
MOV TL1, #LOW T1MS  ;initial timer1 low byte
MOV TH1, #HIGH T1MS  ;initial timer1 high byte
SETB TR1  ;timer1 start running
SETB ET1  ;enable timer1 interrupt
SETB EA  ;open global interrupt switch
CLR A
MOV COUNT, A
MOV COUNT+1,A  ;initial counter
SJMPS
;-----------------------------------------------

/* Timer1 interrupt routine */

TM1_ISR:

    PUSH    ACC
    PUSH    PSW
    MOV     TL1, #LOW T1MS
             ;reload timer1 low byte
    MOV     TH1, #HIGH T1MS
             ;reload timer1 high byte
    MOV     A, COUNT
    ORL     A, COUNT+1
             ;check whether count(2byte) is equal to 0
    JNZ     SKIP
    MOV     COUNT, #LOW 1000
             ;1ms * 1000 -> 1s
    MOV     COUNT+1,#HIGH 1000
    CPL     TEST_LED
             ;work LED flash

SKIP:

    CLR     C
    MOV     A, COUNT
             ;count--
    SUBB    A, #1
    MOV     COUNT, A
    MOV     A, COUNT+1
    SUBB    A, #0
    MOV     COUNT+1,A
    POP     PSW
    POP     ACC
    RETI

;-----------------------------------------------

END
7.3.3 Mode 2 (8-bit Auto-Reload Mode) and Demo Programs (C and ASM)

Mode 2 configures the timer register as an 8-bit counter (TL1) with automatic reload. Overflow from TL1 not only set TFx, but also reload TL1 with the content of TH1, which is preset by software. The reload leaves TH1 unchanged.

STC12C5410AD is able to generate a programmable clock output on P1.1. When T1CLKO/WAKE_CLKO.1 bit in WAKE_CLKO SFR is set, T1 timer overflow pulse will toggle P1.1 latch to generate a 50% duty clock. The frequency of clock-out = $\frac{\text{SYSclk}}{2}$.

If $C/T (\text{TMOD.6}) = 0$, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

- $(\text{SYSclk}) / (256 – \text{TH1}) / 2$, when AUXR.6 / T0x12=1
- or $(\text{SYSclk} / 12) / (256 – \text{TH1}) / 2$, when AUXR.6 / T0x12=0

If $C/T (\text{TMOD.6}) = 1$, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Counter operation (input from external P3.5/T1 pin), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

- $\frac{\text{T1 Pin_CLK}}{256-\text{TH1}} / 2$
; T1 Interrupt (falling edge) Demo programs, where T1 operated in Mode 2 (8-bit auto-reload mode)

; The Timer Interrupt can not wake up MCU from Power-Down mode in the following programs

1. C program

/*---------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited */
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU T1(Falling edge) Demo */
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 */
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 */
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 */
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com */
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*---------------------------------------------*/

#include "reg51.h"

sfr AUXR = 0x8e;    // Auxiliary register

// T1 interrupt service routine
void t1int() interrupt 3
{
}

void main()
{
    AUXR = 0x40;    // timer1 work in 1T mode
    TMOD = 0x60;    // set timer1 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
    TL1 = TH1 = 0xff;    // fill with 0xff to count one time
    TR1 = 1;    // timer1 start run
    ET1 = 1;    // enable T1 interrupt
    EA = 1;    // open global interrupt switch

    while (1);
}
2. Assembly program

/*-------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited --------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU T1(Falling edge) Demo */
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ----------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ----------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC    */
/*-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

AUXR DATA 08EH ;Auxiliary register

;-----------------------------------------
;interrupt vector table

ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 001BH ;T1 interrupt (location at 001BH)
LJMP T1INT

;-----------------------------------------
MAIN:

ORG 0100H

MOV SP, #7FH ;initial SP
MOV AUXR, #40H ;timer1 work in 1T mode
MOV TMOD, #60H ;set timer1 as counter mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
MOV A, #0FFH
MOV TL1, A ;fill with 0xff to count one time
MOV TH1, A

SETB TR1 ;timer1 start run
SETB ET1 ;enable T1 interrupt
SETB EA ;open global interrupt switch
SJMP $ ;-----------------------------------------

;T1 interrupt service routine

T1INT:

RETI ;-----------------------------------------

END

;-----------------------------------------
7.4 Programmable Clock Output and Demo Programs (C and ASM)

STC12C5410AD series MCU have two channel programmable clock outputs, they are Timer 0 programmable clock output CLKOUT0(P1.0) and Timer 1 programmable clock output CLKOUT1(P1.1).

There are some SFRs about programmable clock output as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit Address and Symbol</th>
<th>Value after Power-on or Reset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>Auxiliary register</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6</td>
<td>0000 00xxB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>PC_AWAKEUP RXD_PIN_IE T1_PIN_IE T0_PIN_IE TICLK0 T0CLKO</td>
<td>0000 xx00B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The statement (used in C language) of Special function registers AUXR/WAKE_CLKO:

sfr AUXR = 0x8E; // The address statement of Special function register AUXR
sfr WAKE_CLKO = 0x8F; // The address statement of SFR WAKE_CLKO

The statement (used in Assembly language) of Special function registers AUXR/WAKE_CLKO:

AUXR EQU 0x8E ; The address statement of Special function register AUXR
WAKE_CLKO EQU 0x8F ; The address statement of SFR WAKE_CLKO

1. AUXR: Auxiliary register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6</td>
<td>EADC1</td>
<td>ESPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T0x12 : Timer 0 clock source bit.
0 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
1 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

T1x12 : Timer 1 clock source bit.
0 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU
1 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU

UART_M0x6 : Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0
0 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12.
1 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2.

UART_M0x6 : Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0
0 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12.
1 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2.

EADC1 : Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter
0 : (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ESPI : Enable/Disable interrupt from Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
0 : (default) Inhibit the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ELVDI : Enable/Disable interrupt from low-voltage sensor
0 : (default) Inhibit the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
2. **WAKE_CLKO: CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register** (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>PCAWAKEUP</td>
<td>RXD_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T1_PIN_IE</td>
<td>T0_PIN_IE</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PCAWAKEUP**: When set and the associated-PCA interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the CEXn pin of PCA function is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

**RXD_PIN_IE**: When set and the associated-UART interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the RXD pin (P3.0) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

**T1_PIN_IE**: When set and the associated-Timer1 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.5) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

**T0_PIN_IE**: When set and the associated-Timer0 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.4) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

**LVD_WAKE**: When set and the associated-LVD interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the CMPIN pin is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

**T1CKLO**: When set, P3.5 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 1. The clock rate is Timer 1 overflow rate divided by 2.

**T0CKLO**: When set, P3.4 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 0. The clock rate is Timer 0 overflow rate divided by 2.
7.4.1 Timer 0 Programmable Clock-out on P1.0 and Demo Program(C and ASM)

STC12C5410AD is able to generate a programmable clock output on P1.0. When T0CLKO/ WAKE_CLKO.0 bit in WAKE_CLKO SFR is set, T0 timer overflow pulse will toggle P1.0 latch to generate a 50% duty clock. The frequency of clock-out = T0 overflow rate/2.

If C/T(TMOD.2) = 0, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\text{Frequency} = \frac{(\text{SYSelk})}{2(256 - \text{TH0})}, \quad \text{when AUXR.7 / T0x12=1}
\]

or

\[
\text{Frequency} = \frac{(\text{SYSelk} / 12)}{2(256 - \text{TH0})}, \quad \text{when AUXR.7 / T0x12=0}
\]

If C/T(TMOD.2) = 1, Timer/Counter 0 is set for Counter operation (input from external P3.4/T0 pin), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

\[
\text{Frequency} = \frac{T0\_Pin\_CLK}{2(256-\text{TH0})}
\]

The following programs demostrate Program Clock Output on P1.0 pin when Timer 0 operates as 8-bit auto-reload Timer/Counter.

1. C Program:

```c
#include "reg51.h"
//define constants
#define FOSC 18432000L
#define MODE 1T //Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
```
ifndef  MODE 1T
#define  F38_4KHz  (256-FOSC/2/38400)  //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode
#else
#define  F38_4KHz  (256-FOSC/2/12/38400)  //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode
#endif

/* define SFR */
sfr  AUXR       = 0x8e;                //Auxiliary register
sfr  WAKE_CLKO  = 0x8f;                //wakeup and clock output control register
sbit  T0CLKO    = P1^0;                //timer0 clock output pin

//--------------------------------------------------------------
/* main program */
void main()
{
ifndef MODE1T
    AUXR  = 0x80;                     //timer0 work in 1T mode
#endif
    TMOD  = 0x02;                     //set timer0 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
    TL0   = F38_4KHz;                 //initial timer0
    TH0   = F38_4KHz;                 //initial timer0
    TR0   = 1;                          //timer0 start running
    WAKE_CLKO = 0x01;                //enable timer0 clock output

    while (1);                        //loop
}

2. Assembly Program:
;/*--------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------------*/
;/* --- STC 1T Series Programmable Clock Output Demo -------------*/
;/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -------------- ----------------------------*/
;/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ------------------------------------------*/
;/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
;/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
;/*-----------------------------------*/

;define constants */
#define  MODE 1T                      ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
```c
#ifdef MODE 1T
F38_4KHz EQU 010H ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode is (256-18432000/2/38400)
#else
F38_4KHz EQU 0ECH ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode (256-18432000/2/12/38400)
#endif

/* define SFR */

AUXR      DATA     08EH ;Auxiliary register
WAKE_CLKO   DATA     08FH ;wakeup and clock output control register
T0CLKO   BIT      P1.0 ;timer0 clock output pin

;-----------------------------------------------
ORG  0000H
LJMP     MAIN
;-----------------------------------------------

;/* main program */
MAIN:
#ifdef MODE1T
    #ifdef
        MOV  AUXR, #80H ;timer0 work in 1T mode
    #endif
endif
    MOV  TMOD, #02H ;set timer0 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
    MOV  TL0,   #F38_4KHz ;initial timer0
    MOV  TH0,   #F38_4KHz ;initial timer0
    SETB  TR0
            MOV  WAKE_CLKO,  #01H ;enable timer0 clock output

    SJMP $
endif
;-----------------------------------------------

END
```
7.4.2 Timer 1 Programmable Clock-out on P1.1 and Demo Program (C and ASM)

STC12C5410AD is able to generate a programmable clock output on P1.1. When T1CLKO/WAKE_CLKO.1 bit in WAKE_CLKO SFR is set, T1 timer overflow pulse will toggle P1.1 latch to generate a 50% duty clock. The frequency of clock-out = T1 overflow rate/2.

If C/T (TMOD.6) = 0, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Timer operation (input from internal system clock), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

$$\frac{\text{SYSclk}}{256-\text{TH1}} \div 2$$, when AUXR.6 / T0x12=1

or

$$\frac{\text{SYSclk}}{12} \div 2$$, when AUXR.6 / T0x12=0

If C/T (TMOD.6) = 1, Timer/Counter 1 is set for Conter operation (input from external P3.5/T1 pin), the Frequency of clock-out is as following:

$$\frac{\text{T1_Pin_CLK}}{256-\text{TH1}} \div 2$$

The following programs demonstrate Program Clock Output on Timer 1 pin when Timer 1 operates as 8-bit auto-reload Timer/Counter.

1. C Program:

```c
#include "reg51.h"

/*-----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited ---------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series Programmable Clock Output Demo */
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 --------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*-----------------------------------------------*/

#include "reg51.h"

//-----------------------------------------------
```
/* define constants */
#define FOSC 18432000L
//Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode
#ifdef MODE 1T
#define F38_4KHz (256-FOSC/2/38400) //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode
#else
#define F38_4KHz (256-FOSC/2/12/38400) //38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode
#endif

/* define SFR */
sfr AUXR = 0x8e; //Auxiliary register
sfr WAKE_CLKO = 0x8f; //wakeup and clock output control register
sbit T1CLKO = P1^1; //timer1 clock output pin

/* main program */
void main()
{
#ifdef MODE1T
AUXR = 0x40; //timer1 work in 1T mode
#endif
TMOD = 0x20; //set timer1 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
TL1 = F38_4KHz; //initial timer1
TH1 = F38_4KHz; //initial timer1
TR1 = 1; //timer1 start running
WAKE_CLKO = 0x02; //enable timer1 clock output

while (1); //loop
2. Assembly Program:

`;-----------------------------------------------------------------`
`;--- STC MCU International Limited ---------------------------------------`
`;--- STC 1T Series Programmable Clock Output Demo -------------------`
`;--- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------------------------`
`;--- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------------------------`
`;--- Tel: 86-755-82948412 --------------------------------------------------`
`;--- Web: www.STCMCU.com -------------------------------------------------`
`;-----------------------------------------------------------------`

`; define constants */
#define MODE 1T ;Timer clock mode, comment this line is 12T mode, uncomment is 1T mode

#define MODE 1T

ifdef MODE 1T
F38_4KHz EQU 010H ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 1T mode is (256-18432000/2/38400)
#else
F38_4KHz EQU 0ECH ;38.4KHz frequency calculation method of 12T mode (256-18432000/2/12/38400)
#endif

`; define SFR */
AUXR DATA 08EH ;Auxiliary register
WAKE_CLKO DATA 08FH ;wakeup and clock output control register
T1CLKO BIT P1.1 ;timer1 clock output pin

;-----------------------------------------------------------------

ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

;-----------------------------------------------------------------`
`; main program */
MAIN:
ifdef MODE 1T
ifdef
MOV AUXR, #40H ;timer1 work in 1T mode
#endif

MOV TMOD, #20H ;set timer1 as mode2 (8-bit auto-reload)
MOV TL1, #F38_4KHz ;initial timer1
MOV TH1, #F38_4KHz ;initial timer1
SETB TR1

MOV WAKE_CLKO, #02H ;enable timer1 clock output

SJMP $

;-----------------------------------------------------------------`

END
7.5 Application note for Timer in practice

(1) Real-time Timer

Timer/Counter start running. When the Timer/Counter is overflow, the interrupt request generated, this action handle by the hardware automatically, however, the process which from propose interrupt request to respond interrupt request requires a certain amount of time, and that the delay interrupt request on-site with the environment varies, it normally takes three machine cycles of delay, which will bring real-time processing bias. In most occasions, this error can be ignored, but for some real-time processing applications, which require compensation.

Such as the interrupt response delay, for timer mode 0 and mode 1, there are two meanings: the first, because of the interrupt response time delay of real-time processing error; the second, if you require multiple consecutive timing, due to interruption response delay, resulting in the interrupt service program once again sets the count value is delayed by several count cycle.

If you choose to use Timer/Counter mode 1 to set the system clock, these reasons will produce real-time error for this situation, you should use dynamic compensation approach to reducing error in the system clock, compensation method can refer to the following example program.

```
CLR EA    ;disable interrupt
MOV A, TLx  ;read TLx
ADD A, #LOW   ;LOW is low byte of compensation value
MOV TLx, A   ;update TLx
MOV A, THx  ;read THx
ADDC A, #HIGH ;HIGH is high byte of compensation value
MOV THx, A   ;update THx
SETB EA    ;enable interrupt
```

(2) Dynamic read counts

When dynamic read running timer count value, if you do not pay attention to could be wrong, this is because it is not possible at the same time read the value of the TLx and THx. For example the first reading TLx then THx, because the timer is running, after reading TLx, TLx carry on the THx produced, resulting in error; Similarly, after the first reading of THx then TLx, also have the same problems.

A kind of way avoid reading wrong is first reading THx then TLx and read THx once more, if the THx twice to read the same value, then the read value is correct, otherwise repeat the above process. Realization method reference to the following example code.

```
RDTM: MOV A, THx           ;save THx to ACC
      MOV R0, TLx             ;save TLx to R0
      CJNE A, THx, RDTM       ;read THx again and compare with the previous value
      MOV R1, A               ;save THx to R1
```

Chapter 8. UART with Enhanced Function

The serial port is full duplex, meaning it can transmit and receive simultaneously. It is also receive-buffered, meaning it can commence reception of a second byte before a previously received byte has been read from the receive register. (However, if the first byte still hasn’t been read by the time reception of the second byte is complete, one of the bytes will be lost). The serial port receive and transmit share the same SFR – SBUF, but actually there is two SBUF in the chip, one is for transmit and the other is for receive.

The serial port (UART) can be operated in 4 different modes: Mode 0 provides synchronous communication while Modes 1, 2, and 3 provide asynchronous communication. The asynchronous communication operates as a full-duplex Universal Asynchronous Receiver and Transmitter (UART), which can transmit and receive simultaneously and at different baud rates.

Serial communication involves the transmission of bits of data through only one communication line. The data are transmitted bit by bit in either synchronous or asynchronous format. Synchronous serial communication transmits the whole block of characters in synchronization with a reference clock while asynchronous serial communication randomly transmits one character at any time, independent of any clock.

8.1 Special Function Registers about UART

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit Address and Symbol</th>
<th>Value after Power-on or Reset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>Auxiliary register</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>T0x12 T1x12 UART_M0x6 EADC1 SPI ELVDI - -</td>
<td>0000 00xxB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCON</td>
<td>Serial Control</td>
<td>98H</td>
<td>SM0/FE SM1 SM2 REN TB8 RB8 TI RI</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBUF</td>
<td>Serial Buffer</td>
<td>99H</td>
<td>xxxx xxxxB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>Power Control</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>SMOD SMOD0 LVDF POF GF1 GF0 PD IDL</td>
<td>0011 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Interrupt Enable</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>EA EPCA_LVD EADC_SPI ES ET1 EX1 ET0 EX0</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority Low</td>
<td>B8H</td>
<td>- PPCA_LVD PADC_LVD PS PT1 PX1 PT0 PX0</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority High</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td>- PPCA_LVDH PADC_LVDH PSH PT1H PX1H PT0H PX0H</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SADEN</td>
<td>Slave Address Mask</td>
<td>B9H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SADDR</td>
<td>Slave Address</td>
<td>A9H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>CLK_Output Power down Wake-up control register</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td>PCAWAKEUP RxD_PIN_IE T1_PIN_IE T0_PIN_IE - - T1CLKO T0CLKO</td>
<td>x000 xx00B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Serial Port 1 (UART1) Control Register: SCON and PCON

Serial port 1 of STC12C5410AD series has two control registers: Serial port control register (SCON) and PCON which used to select Baud-Rate

**SCON: Serial port Control Register** (Bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCON</td>
<td>98H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>SM0/FE</td>
<td>SM1</td>
<td>SM2</td>
<td>REN</td>
<td>TB8</td>
<td>RB8</td>
<td>TI</td>
<td>RI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FE: Framing Error bit. The SMOD0 bit must be set to enable access to the FE bit

0: The FE bit is not cleared by valid frames but should be cleared by software.
1: This bit set by the receiver when an invalid stop bit detected.

SM0,SM1 : Serial Port Mode Bit 0/1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SM0</th>
<th>SM1</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Baud rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8-bit shift register</td>
<td>SYSclk/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-bit UART</td>
<td>variable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9-bit UART</td>
<td>SYSclk/64 or SYSclk/32 (SMOD=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9-bit UART</td>
<td>variable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SM2 : Enable the automatic address recognition feature in mode 2 and 3. If SM2=1, RI will not be set unless the received 9th data bit is 1, indicating an address, and the received byte is a Given or Broadcast address. In mode1, if SM2=1 then RI will not be set unless a valid stop Bit was received, and the received byte is a Given or Broadcast address. In mode 0, SM2 should be 0.

REN : When set enables serial reception.

TB8 : The 9th data bit which will be transmitted in mode 2 and 3.

RB8 : In mode 2 and 3, the received 9th data bit will go into this bit.

TI : Transmit interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a byte of data has been transmitted by UART0 (after the 8th bit in 8-bit UART Mode, or at the beginning of the STOP bit in 9-bit UART Mode). When the UART0 interrupt is enabled, setting this bit causes the CPU to vector to the UART0 interrupt service routine. This bit must be cleared manually by software.

RI : Receive interrupt flag. Set to ‘1’ by hardware when a byte of data has been received by UART0 (set at the STOP bit sampling time). When the UART0 interrupt is enabled, setting this bit to ‘1’ causes the CPU to vector to the UART0 interrupt service routine. This bit must be cleared manually by software.

SMOD/PCON.7 in PCON register can be used to set whether the baud rates of mode 1, mode2 and mode 3 are doubled or not.

**PCON: Power Control register** (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>SMOD</td>
<td>SMOD0</td>
<td>LVDF</td>
<td>POF</td>
<td>GF1</td>
<td>GF0</td>
<td>PD</td>
<td>IDL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SMOD: double Baud rate control bit.

0 : Disable double Baud rate of the UART.
1 : Enable double Baud rate of the UART in mode 1,2,or 3.

SMOD0: Frame Error select.

0 : SCON.7 is SM0 function.
1 : SCON.7 is FE function. Note that FE will be set after a frame error regardless of the state of SMOD0.
2. SBUF: Serial port 1 Data Buffer register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SBUF</td>
<td>99H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is used as the buffer register in transmission and reception. The serial port buffer register (SBUF) is really two buffers. Writing to SBUF loads data to be transmitted, and reading SBUF accesses received data. These are two separate and distinct registers, the transmit write-only register, and the receive read-only register.

3. AUXR: Auxiliary register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>T0x12</td>
<td>T1x12</td>
<td>UART_M0x6</td>
<td>EADC1</td>
<td>ESPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0x12 : Timer 0 clock source bit.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 : The clock source of Timer 0 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1x12 : Timer 1 clock source bit.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/12. It will compatible to the traditional 80C51 MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 : The clock source of Timer 1 is SYSclk/1. It will drive the T0 faster than a traditional 80C51 MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UART_M0x6 : Baud rate select bit of UART1 while it is working under Mode-0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/12.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 : The baud-rate of UART in mode 0 is SYSclk/2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EADC1 : Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 : (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 : Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESPI : Enable/Disable interrupt from Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 : (default) Inhibit the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 : Enable the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELVDI : Enable/Disable interrupt from low-voltage sensor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 : (default) Inhibit the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 : Enable the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Slave Address Control registers SADEN and SADDR

SADEN: Slave Address Mask register
SADDR: Slave Address register

SADDR register is combined with SADEN register to form Given/Broadcast Address for automatic address recognition. In fact, SADEN function as the "mask" register for SADDR register. The following is the example for it.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SADDR} &= 1100\ 0000 \\
\text{SADEN} &= 1111\ 1101 \\
\text{Given} &= 1100\ 00x0
\end{align*}
\]

The Given slave address will be checked except bit 1 is treated as "don't care".

The Broadcast Address for each slave is created by taking the logical OR of SADDR and SADEN. Zero in this result is considered as "don't care" and a Broadcast Address of all "don't care". This disables the automatic address detection feature.
5. Power down wake-up register: WAKE_CLKO (Non bit-Addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WAKE_CLKO</td>
<td>8FH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PCAWAKEUP: When set and the associated-PCA interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the CEXn pin of PCA function is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

RXD_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-UART interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the RXD pin (P3.0) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-Timer1 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.5) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T0_PIN_IE: When set and the associated-Timer0 interrupt control registers is configured correctly, the T1 pin (P3.4) is enabled to wake up MCU from power-down state.

T1CKLO: When set, P3.5 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 1. The clock rate is Timer 1 overflow rate divided by 2.

T0CKLO: When set, P3.4 is enabled to be the clock output of Timer 0. The clock rate is Timer 0 overflow rate divided by 2.

6. Registers related with UART1 interrupt: IE, IP and IPH

IE: Interrupt Enable Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EA: disables all interrupts.
- If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged.
- If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

ES: Serial port 1 (UART1) interrupt enable bit.
- If ES = 0, Serial port (UART) interrupt will be disabled.
- If ES = 1, Serial port (UART) interrupt is enabled.

IPH: Interrupt Priority High Register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PSH, PS: Serial Port (UART) interrupt priority control bits.
- If PSH=0 and PS=0, UART interrupt is assigned lowest priority (priority 0).
- If PSH=0 and PS=1, UART interrupt is assigned lower priority (priority 1).
- If PSH=1 and PS=0, UART interrupt is assigned higher priority (priority 2).
- If PSH=1 and PS=1, UART interrupt is assigned highest priority (priority 3).
8.2 UART1 Operation Modes

The serial port 1 (UART) can be operated in 4 different modes which are configured by setting SM0 and SM1 in SFR SCON. Mode 1, Mode 2 and Mode 3 are asynchronous communication. In Mode 0, UART1 is used as a simple shift register.

8.2.1 Mode 0: 8-Bit Shift Register

Mode 0, selected by writing 0s into bits SM1 and SM0 of SCON, puts the serial port into 8-bit shift register mode. Serial data enters and exits through RXD. TXD outputs the shift clock. Eight data bits are transmitted/received with the least-significant (LSB) first. The baud rate is fixed at 1/12 the System clock cycle in the default state. If AUXR.5(UART_M0x6) is set, the baud rate is 1/2 System clock cycle.

Transmission is initiated by any instruction that uses SBUF as a destination register. The “write to SBUF” signal also loads a “1” into the 9th position of the transmit shift register and tells the TX Control block to commence a transmission. The internal timing is such that one full system clock cycle will elapse between "write to SBUF," and activation of SEND.

SEND transfers the output of the shift register to the alternate output function line of P3.0, and also transfers Shift Clock to the alternate output function line of P3.1. At the falling edge of the Shift Clock, the contents of the shift register are shifted one position to the right.

As data bits shift out to the right, “0” come in from the left. When the MSB of the data byte is at the output position of the shift register, then the “1” that was initially loaded into the 9th position is just to the left of the MSB, and all positions to the left of that contains zeroes. This condition flags the TX Control block to do one last shift and then deactivate SEND and set TI. Both of these actions occur after "write to SBUF".

Reception is initiated by the condition REN=1 and RI=0. After that, the RX Control unit writes the bits 11111110 to the receive shift register, and in the next clock phase activates RECEIVE. RECEIVE enables SHIFT CLOCK to the alternate output function line of P3.1. At RECEIVE is active, the contents of the receive shift register are shifted to the left one position. The value that comes in from the right is the value that was sampled at the P3.0 pin the rising edge of Shift clock.

As data bits come in from the right, “1”s shift out to the left. When the “0” that was initially loaded into the right-most position arrives at the left-most position in the shift register, it flags the RX Control block to do one last shift and load SBUF. Then RECEIVE is cleared and RI is set.
Mobile:(86)13922809991  Tel:86-755-82948412  Fax:86-755-82905966

STC MCU Limited.

www.STCMCU.com

INTERNAL BUS

WRITE TO SBUF

SEND

SHIFT

RXD(DATA OUT)

TXD(SHIFT CLOCK)

TI

WRITE TO SCON(CLEAR RI)

RI

RECEIVE

SHIFT

RXD(DATA IN)

TXD(SHIFT CLOCK)

Serial Port Mode 0
8.2.2 Mode 1: 8-Bit UART with Variable Baud Rate

10 bits are transmitted through TXD or received through RXD. The frame data includes a start bit(0), 8 data bits and a stop bit(1). One receive, the stop bit goes into RB8 in SFR – SCON. The baud rate is determined by the Timer 1 or BRT overflow rate.

Baud rate in mode 1 = \( \frac{2^{SMOD}}{32} \times \) Timer 1 overflow rate

When \( T1 \times 12 = 0 \), Timer 1 overflow rate = \( \frac{SYSck}{12 \times (256-TH1)} \);
When \( T1 \times 12 = 1 \), Timer 1 overflow rate = \( \frac{SYSck}{(256-TH1)} \);

Transmission is initiated by any instruction that uses SBUF as a destination register. The “write to SBUF” signal also loads a “1” into the 9th bit position of the transmit shift register and flags the TX Control unit that a transmission is requested. Transmission actually happens at the next rollover of divided-by-16 counter. Thus the bit times are synchronized to the divided-by-16 counter, not to the “write to SBUF” signal.

The transmission begins with activation of \( \text{SEND} \), which puts the start bit at TXD. One bit time later, DATA is activated, which enables the output bit of the transmit shift register to TXD. The first shift pulse occurs one bit time after that.

As data bits shift out to the right, zeroes are clocked in from the left. When the MSB of the data byte is at the output position of the shift register, then the 1 that was initially loaded into the 9th position is just to the left of the MSB, and all positions to the left of that contain zeroes. This condition flags the TX Control unit to do one last shift and then deactivate \( \text{SEND} \) and set TI. This occurs at the 10th divide-by-16 rollover after “write to SBUF.”

Reception is initiated by a 1-to-0 transition detected at RXD. For this purpose, RXD is sampled at a rate of 16 times the established baud rate. When a transition is detected, the divided-by-16 counter is immediately reset, and 1FH is written into the input shift register. Resetting the divided-by-16 counter aligns its roll-overs with the boundaries of the incoming bit times.

The 16 states of the counter divide each bit time into 16ths. At the 7th, 8th and 9th counter states of each bit time, the bit detector samples the value of RXD. The value accepted is the value that was seen in at least 2 of the 3 samples. This is done to reject noise. In order to reject false bits, if the value accepted during the first bit time is not a 0, the receive circuits are reset and the unit continues looking for another 1-to-0 transition. This is to provide rejection of false start bits. If the start bit is valid, it is shifted into the input shift register, and reception of the rest of the frame proceeds.

As data bits come in from the right, “1”s shift out to the left. When the start bit arrives at the left most position in the shift register, which is a 9-bit register in Mode 1, it flags the RX Control block to do one last shift, load SBUF and RB8, and set RI. The signal to load SBUF and RB8 and to set RI is generated if, and only if, the following conditions are met at the time the final shift pulse is generated.

1) \( \text{RI}=0 \) and
2) Either \( \text{SM2}=0 \), or the received stop bit = 1

If either of these two conditions is not met, the received frame is irretrievably lost. If both conditions are met, the stop bit goes into RB8, the 8 data bits go into SBUF, and RI is activated. At this time, whether or not the above conditions are met, the unit continues looking for a 1-to-0 transition in RXD.
8.2.3 Mode 2: 9-Bit UART with Fixed Baud Rate

11 bits are transmitted through TXD or received through RXD. The frame data includes a start bit(0), 8 data bits, a programmable 9th data bit and a stop bit(1). On transmit, the 9th data bit comes from TB8 in SCON. On receive, the 9th data bit goes into RB8 in SCON. The baud rate is programmable to either 1/32 or 1/64 the System clock cycle.

\[
\text{Baud rate in mode 2} = \left(\frac{2^{\text{SMOD}}}{64}\right) \times \text{SYSclock}
\]

Transmission is initiated by any instruction that uses SBUF as a destination register. The “write to SBUF” signal also loads TB8 into the 9th bit position of the transmit shift register and flags the TX Control unit that a transmission is requested. Transmission actually happens at the next rollover of divided-by-16 counter. Thus the bit times are synchronized to the divided-by-16 counter, not to the “write to SBUF” signal.

The transmission begins when \(/\text{SEND}\) is activated, which puts the start bit at TXD. One bit time later, DATA is activated, which enables the output bit of the transmit shift register to TXD. The first shift pulse occurs one bit time after that. The first shift clocks a “1”(the stop bit) into the 9th bit position on the shift register. Thereafter, only “0”s are clocked in. As data bits shift out to the right, “0”s are clocked in from the left. When TB8 of the data byte is at the output position of the shift register, then the stop bit is just to the left of TB8, and all positions to the left of that contains “0”s. This condition flags the TX Control unit to do one last shift, then deactivate \(/\text{SEND}\) and set TI. This occurs at the 11th divided-by-16 rollover after “write to SBUF”.

Reception is initiated by a 1-to-0 transition detected at RXD. For this purpose, RXD is sampled at a rate of 16 times whatever baud rate has been established. When a transition is detected, the divided-by-16 counter is immediately reset, and IFFH is written into the input shift register.

At the 7th, 8th and 9th counter states of each bit time, the bit detector samples the value of RXD. The value accepted is the value that was seen in at least 2 of the 3 samples. This is done to reject noise. In order to reject false bits, if the value accepted during the first bit time is not a 0, the receive circuits are reset and the unit continues looking for another 1-to-0 transition. If the start bit is valid, it is shifted into the input shift register, and reception of the rest of the frame proceeds.

As data bits come in from the right, “1”s shift out to the left. When the start bit arrives at the leftmost position in the shift register, (which is a 9-bit register in Mode-2 and 3), it flags the RX Control block to do one last shift, load SBUF and RB8, and set RI. The signal to load SBUF and RB8 and to set RI is generated if, and only if, the following conditions are met at the time the final shift pulse is generated:

1) RI=0 and
2) Either SM2=0, or the received 9th data bit = 1

If either of these two conditions is not met, the received frame is irretrievably lost. If both conditions are met, the stop bit goes into RB8, the first 8 data bits go into SBUF, and RI is activated. At this time, whether or not the above conditions are met, the unit continues looking for a 1-to-0 transition at the RXD input.

Note that the value of received stop bit is irrelevant to SBUF, RB8 or RI.
Serial Port Mode 2
8.2.4 Mode 3: 9-Bit UART with Variable Baud Rate

Mode 3 is the same as mode 2 except the baud rate is variable.

\[ \text{Baud rate in mode 3} = \left( \frac{2^{\text{SMOD}}}{32} \right) \times \text{Timer 1 overflow rate} \]

- When \( T1x12=0 \), Timer 1 overflow rate = \( \frac{\text{SYSclk}}{12/(256-TH1)} \);
- When \( T1x12=1 \), Timer 1 overflow rate = \( \frac{\text{SYSclk}}{(256-TH1)} \);

In all four modes, transmission is initiated by any instruction that use SBUF as a destination register. Reception is initiated in mode 0 by the condition \( \text{RI} = 0 \) and \( \text{REN} = 1 \). Reception is initiated in the other modes by the incoming start bit with 1-to-0 transition if \( \text{REN}=1 \).
Serial Port Mode 3
8.3 Frame Error Detection

When used for frame error detect, the UART looks for missing stop bits in the communication. A missing bit will set the FE bit in the SCON register. The FE bit shares the SCON.7 bit with SM0 and the function of SCON.7 is determined by PCON.6(SMOD0). If SMOD0 is set then SCON.7 functions as FE. SCON.7 functions as SM0 when SMOD0 is cleared. When used as FE, SCON.7 can only be cleared by software. Refer to the following figure.

![UART Frame Error Detection](image)

8.4 Multiprocessor Communications

Modes 2 and 3 have a special provision for multiprocessor communications. In these modes 9 data bits are received. The 9th one goes into RB8. Then comes a stop bit. The port can be programmed such that when the stop bit is received, the serial port interrupt will be activated only if RB8 = 1. This feature is enabled by setting bit SM2 in SCON. A way to use this feature in multiprocessor systems is as follows.

When the master processor wants to transmit a block of data to one of several slaves, it first sends out an address byte which identifies the target slave. An address byte differs from a data byte in that the 9th bit is 1 in an address byte and 0 in a data byte. With SM2 = 1, no slave will be interrupted by a data byte. An address byte, however, will interrupt all slaves, so that each slave can examine the received byte and see if it is being addressed. The addressed slave will clear its SM2 bit and prepare to receive the data bytes that will be coming. The slaves that weren’t being addressed leave their SM2s set and go on about their business, ignoring the coming data bytes.

SM2 has no effect in Mode 0, and in Mode 1 can be used to check the validity of the stop bit. In a Mode 1 reception, if SM2 = 1, the receive interrupt will not be activated unless a vailid stop bit is received.
8.5 Automatic Address Recognition

Automatic Address Recognition is a feature which allows the UART to recognize certain addresses in the serial bit stream by using hardware to make the comparisons. This feature saves a great deal of software overhead by eliminating the need for the software to examine every serial address which passes by the serial port. This feature is enabled by setting the SM2 bit in SCON. In the 9-bit UART modes, Mode 2 and Mode 3, the Receive interrupt flag (RI) will be automatically set when the received byte contains either the “Given” address or the “Broadcast” address. The 9-bit mode requires that the 9th information bit is a “1” to indicate that the received information is an address and not data.

The 8-bit mode is called Mode 1. In this mode the RI flag will be set if SM2 is enabled and the information received has a valid stop bit following the 8 address bits and the information is either a Given or Broadcast address.

Mode 0 is the Shift Register mode and SM2 is ignored.

Using the Automatic Address Recognition feature allows a master to selectively communicate with one or more slaves by invoking the given slave address or addresses. All of the slaves may be contacted by using the broadcast address. Two special function registers are used to define the slave’s address, SADDR, and the address mask, SADEN. SADEN is used to define which bits in the SADDR are to be used and which bits are “don’t care”. The SADEN mask can be logically ANDed with the SADDR to create the “Given” address which the master will use for addressing each of the slaves. Use of the Given address allows multiple slaves to be recognized which excluding others. The following examples will help to show the versatility of this scheme:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slave 0</th>
<th>SADDR = 1100 0000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SADEN = 1111 1101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GIVEN = 1100 00x0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slave 1</th>
<th>SADDR = 1100 0000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SADEN = 1111 1110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GIVEN = 1100 00x0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the previous example SADDR is the same and the SADEN data is used to differentiate between the two slaves. Slave 0 requires a “0” in bit 0 and it ignores bit 1. Slave 1 requires a “0” in bit 1 and bit 0 is ignored. A unique address for slave 0 would be 11000010 since slave 1 requires a “0” in bit 1. A unique address for slave 1 would be 11000001 since a “1” in bit 0 will exclude slave 0. Both slaves can be selected at the same time by an address which has bit 0=0 (for slave 0) and bit 1 =0 (for salve 1). Thus, both could be addressed with 11000000.

In a more complex system the following could be used to select slaves 1 and 2 while excluding slave 0:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slave 0</th>
<th>SADDR = 1100 0000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SADEN = 1111 1001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GIVEN = 1100 0xx0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slave 1</th>
<th>SADDR = 1110 0000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SADEN = 1111 1010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GIVEN = 1110 0x0x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slave 2</th>
<th>SADDR = 1110 0000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SADEN = 1111 1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GIVEN = 1110 00xx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In the above example the differentiation among the 3 slaves is in the lower 3 address bits. Slave 0 requires that bit 0 = 0 and it can be uniquely addressed by 11100110. Slave 1 requires that bit 1 = 0 and it can be uniquely addressed by 11100101. Slave 2 requires that bit 2 = 0 and its unique address is 11100011. To select Slave 0 and 1 and exclude Slave 2, use address 11100100, since it is necessary to make bit 2 = 1 to exclude Slave 2.

The Broadcast Address for each slave is created by taking the logic OR of SADDR and SADEN. Zeros in this result are treated as don't cares. In most cases, interpreting the don't cares as ones, the broadcast address will be FF hexadecimal.

Upon reset SADDR and SADEN are loaded with "0"s. This produces a given address of all "don't cares as well as a Broadcast address of all "don't cares". This effectively disables the Automatic Addressing mode and allows the microcontroller to use standard 80C51-type UART drivers which do not make use of this feature.

**Example:** write a program that continually transmits characters from a transmit buffer. If incoming characters are detected on the serial port, store them in the receive buffer starting at internal RAM location 50H. Assume that the STC12C5410AD series MCU serial port has already been initialized in mode 1.

**Solution:**

```
ORG 0030H
MOV R0, #30H   ; pointer for tx buffer
MOV R1, #50H   ; pointer for rx buffer
LOOP: JB RI, RECEIVE ; character received? 
        ; yes: process it
        JB TI, TX ; previous character transmitted? 
        ; yes: process it
        SJMP LOOP ; no: continue checking
TX: MOV A, @R0 ; get character from tx buffer
        MOV C, P ; put parity bit in C
        CPL C ; change to odd parity
        MOV ACC.7, C ; add to character code
        CLR TI ; clear transmit flag
        MOV SBUF, A ; send character
        CLR ACC.7 ; strip off parity bit
        INC R0 ; point to next character in buffer
        CJNE R0, #50H, LOOP ; end of buffer?
        ; no: continue
        MOV R0, #30H ; yes: recycle
        SJMP LOOP ; continue checking
RX: CLR RI ; clear receive flag
        MOV A, SBUF ; read character into A
        MOV C, P ; for odd parity in A, P should be set
        CPL C ; complementing correctly indicates "error"
        CLR ACC.7 ; strip off parity
        MOV @R1, A ; store received character in buffer
        INC R1 ; point to next location in buffer
        SJMP LOOP ; continue checking
END
```
8.6 Baud Rates

The baud rate in Mode 0 is fixed:

\[
\text{Mode 0 Baud Rate} = \frac{\text{SYSclk}}{12}\quad \text{when AUXR.5/UART_M0x6}=0
\]

or

\[
\text{Mode 0 Baud Rate} = \frac{\text{SYSclk}}{2}\quad \text{when AUXR.5/UART_M0x6}=1
\]

The baud rate in Mode 2 depends on the value of bit SMOD in Special Function Register PCON. If \(\text{SMOD}=0\) (which is the value on reset), the baud rate \(\frac{1}{64}\) the System clock cycle. If \(\text{SMOD}=1\), the baud rate is \(\frac{1}{32}\) the System clock cycle.

\[
\text{Mode 2 Baud Rate} = \frac{2^{\text{SMOD}}}{64} \times \text{SYSclk}
\]

In the STC12C5410AD, the baud rates in Modes 1 and 3 are determined by Timer 1 overflow rate. The baud rate in Mode 1 and 3 are fixed:

\[
\text{Mode 1,3 Baud rate} = (2^{\text{SMOD}/32}) \times \text{timer 1 overflow rate}
\]

\[
\text{Timer 1 overflow rate} = \frac{\text{SYSclk}/12}{(256 - \text{TH1})};
\]

When Timer 1 is used as the baud rate generator, the Timer 1 interrupt should be disabled in this application. The Timer itself can be configured for either “timer” or “counter” operation, and in any of its 3 running modes. In the most typical applications, it is configured for “timer” operation, in the auto-reload mode (high nibble of TMOD = 0010B).

One can achieve very low baud rate with Timer 1 by leaving the Timer 1 interrupt enabled, and configuring the Timer to run as a 16-bit timer (high nibble of TMOD = 0001B), and using the Timer 1 interrupt to do a 16-bit software reload.

The following figure lists various commonly used baud rates and how they can be obtained from Timer 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Baud Rate</th>
<th>(f_{\text{osc}})</th>
<th>SMOD</th>
<th>C/T</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Reload Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mode 0 MAX:1MHZ</td>
<td>12MHZ</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode 2 MAX:375K</td>
<td>12MHZ</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode 1.3:62.5K</td>
<td>12MHZ</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>FFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2K</td>
<td>11.059MHZ</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>FDH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6K</td>
<td>11.059MHZ</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>FDH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8K</td>
<td>11.059MHZ</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>FAH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4K</td>
<td>11.059MHZ</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>F4H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2K</td>
<td>11.059MHZ</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>E8H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137.5</td>
<td>11.986MHZ</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1DH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>6MHZ</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>72H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>12MHZ</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>FEEBH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Timer 1 Generated Commonly Used Baud Rates
8.7 Demo Programs about UART (C and ASM)

1. C program:

    /*-------------------------------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------------*/
    /* --- STC12C5Axx Series MCU UART (8-bit/9-bit)Demo ----------*/
    /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ----------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ------------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -------------------------------------------------*/
    /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the * /
    /* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC * /
    /*-------------------------------------------------------------------*/

#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

#define FOSC 18432000L //System frequency
#define BAUD 9600 //UART baudrate

/*Define UART parity mode*/
define NONE_PARITY 0 //None parity
#define ODD_PARITY 1 //Odd parity
#define EVEN_PARITY 2 //Even parity
#define MARK_PARITY 3 //Mark parity
#define SPACE_PARITY 4 //Space parity
#define PARITYBIT EVEN_PARITY //Testing even parity

sbit bit9 = P2^2; //P2.2 show UART data bit9
bit busy;

void SendData(BYTE dat);
void SendString(char *s);

void main()
{
    #if (PARITYBIT == NONE_PARITY)
        SCON = 0x50; //8-bit variable UART
    #elif (PARITYBIT == ODD_PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == EVEN_PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == MARK_PARITY)
        SCON = 0xda; //9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 1
    #elif (PARITYBIT == SPACE_PARITY)
        SCON = 0xd2; //9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 0
    #endif
TMOD = 0x20; //Set Timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
TH1 = TL1 = -(FOSC/12/32/BAUD); //Set auto-reload value
TR1 = 1; //Timer1 start run
ES = 1; //Enable UART interrupt
EA = 1; //Open master interrupt switch

SendString("STC12C5410AD\r\nUART Test !\r\n");
while(1);

/*-----------------------------
UART interrupt service routine
-----------------------------*/
void Uart_Isr() interrupt 4 using 1
{
    if (RI)
    {
        RI = 0; //Clear receive interrupt flag
        P0 = SBUF; //P0 show UART data
        bit9 = RB8; //P2.2 show parity bit
    }
    if (TI)
    {
        TI = 0; //Clear transmit interrupt flag
        busy = 0; //Clear transmit busy flag
    }
}

/*-----------------------------
Send a byte data to UART
Input: dat (data to be sent)
Output: None
-----------------------------*/
void SendData(BYTE dat)
{
    while (busy); //Wait for the completion of the previous data is sent
    ACC = dat; //Calculate the even parity bit P (PSW.0)
    if (P)
    {
        #if (PARITYBIT == ODD_PARITY)
            TB8 = 0; //Set parity bit to 0
        #elif (PARITYBIT == EVEN_PARITY)
            TB8 = 1; //Set parity bit to 1
        #endif
    }
else
{
    #if (PARITYBIT == ODD_PARITY)
        TB8 = 1;                //Set parity bit to 1
    #elif (PARITYBIT == EVEN_PARITY)
        TB8 = 0;                //Set parity bit to 0
    #endif

    busy = 1;
    SBUF = ACC;                //Send data to UART buffer
}

/*----------------------------
Send a string to UART
Input: s (address of string)
Output:None
----------------------------*/
void SendString(char *s)
{
    while (*s)                   //Check the end of the string
    {
    
        busy = 1;
        SBUF = ACC;                //Send data to UART buffer
    
    
    
        SendData(*s++);        //Send current char and increment string ptr
    
    
}
2. Assembly program:

/*----------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------------*/
/* --- STC12C5Axx Series MCU UART (8-bit/9-bit)Demo ------------------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*----------------------------------------------------------------------*/

; /*Define UART parity mode*/
#define  NONE_PARITY    0          //None parity
#define  ODD_PARITY       1          //Odd parity
#define  EVEN_PARITY      2          //Even parity
#define  MARK_PARITY    3          //Mark parity
#define  SPACE_PARITY    4          //Space parity
#define  PARITYBIT  EVEN_PARITY     //Testing even parity

;----------------------------------------------------------------------
BUSY     BIT  20H.0                  ;transmit busy flag
;----------------------------------------------------------------------
ORG    0000H
LJMP   MAIN

ORG    0023H
LJMP   UART_ISR

;----------------------------------------------------------------------
ORG    0100H
MAIN:

CLR    BUSY
CLR    EA
MOV    SP, #3FH

#if (PARITYBIT == NONE_PARITY)
  MOV    SCON, #50H                ;8-bit variable UART
#elif (PARITYBIT == ODD_PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == EVEN_PARITY) || (PARITYBIT == MARK_PARITY)
  MOV    SCON, #0DAH               ;9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 1
#elif (PARITYBIT == SPACE_PARITY)
  MOV    SCON, #0D2H               ;9-bit variable UART, parity bit initial to 0
#endif

;----------------------------------------------------------------------
MOV TMOD, #20H       ;Set Timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
MOV A, #0FBH         ;256-18432000/12/32/9600
MOV TH1, A           ;Set auto-reload value
MOV TL1, A
SETB TR1             ;Timer1 start run
SETB ES              ;Enable UART interrupt
SETB EA              ;Open master interrupt switch

;-------------------------------
MOV DPTR, #TESTSTR    ;Load string address to DPTR
LCALL SENDSTRING      ;Send string

;-------------------------------
SJMP $

;-----------------------------------------------------
TESTSTR:              ;Test string
  DB "STC12C5410AD Uart Test!", 0DH,0AH,0

;*/---------------------------------------------
;UART2 interrupt service routine
;-----------------------------------------------------*/

UART_ISR:
  PUSH ACC
  PUSH PSW
  JNB RI, CHECKTI      ;Check RI bit
  CLR RI               ;Clear RI bit
  MOV P0, SBUF        ;P0 show UART data
  MOV C, RB8
  MOV P2.2, C         ;P2.2 show parity bit

CHECKTI:
  JNB TI, ISR_EXIT    ;Check S2TI bit
  CLR TI
  CLR BUSY            ;Clear transmit busy flag

ISR_EXIT:
  POP PSW
  POP ACC
  RETI

;*/---------------------------------------------
;Send a byte data to UART
;Input: ACC (data to be sent)
;Output: None
;-----------------------------------------------------*/

SENDDATA:
  JB BUSY, S           ;Wait for the completion of the previous data is sent
  MOV ACC, A           ;Calculate the even parity bit P (PSW.0)
  JNB P, EVEN1INACC    ;Set the parity bit according to P
ODDIINACC:
#if (PARITYBIT == ODD_PARITY)
    CLR    TB8
#else (PARITYBIT == EVEN_PARITY)
    SETB   TB8
#endif
SJMP    PARITYBITOK

EVENIINACC:
#if (PARITYBIT == ODD_PARITY)
    SETB   TB8
#else (PARITYBIT == EVEN_PARITY)
    CLR    TB8
#endif

PARITYBITOK:
    SETB   BUSY
    MOV    SBUF, A
    RET

;Send a string to UART
;Input: DPTR (address of string)
;Output: None
 SENDSTRING:
    CLR    A
    MOVCA  A, @A+DPTR
    JZ     STRINGEND
    INC    DPTR
    LCALL  SENDDATA
    SJMP   SENDSTRING
STRINGEND:
    RET

END
Chapter 9. Analog to Digital Converter

9.1 A/D Converter Structure

STC12C5410AD series MCU with A/D conversion function have 8-channel and 10-bit high-speed A/D converter whose speed is up to 100KHz (100 thousand times per second). the 8-channel ADC, which are on P1 port (P1.0-P1.7), can be used as temperature detection, battery voltage detection, key scan, spectrum detection, etc. After power on reset, P1 ports are in weak pull-up mode. Users can set any one of 8 channels as A/D conversion through software. And those I/O ports not as ADC function can continue to be used as I/O ports.

STC12C5410AD series MCU ADC (A/D converter) structure is shown below.

The ADC on STC12C5410AD is an 8-bit resolution, successive-approximation approach, medium-speed A/D converter. \( V_{REFP}/V_{REFM} \) is the positive/negative reference voltage input for internal voltage-scaling DAC use, the typical sink current on it is 600\( \mu \)A ~ 1mA. For STC12C5410AD, these two references are internally tied to VCC and GND separately.
Conversion is invoked since ADC_STRAT(ADC_CONTR.3) bit is set. Before invoking conversion, ADC_POWER/ADC_CONTR.7 bit should be set first in order to turn on the power of analog front-end in ADC circuitry. Prior to ADC conversion, the desired I/O ports for analog inputs should be configured as input-only or open-drain mode first. The converter takes around a fourth cycles to sample analog input data and other three fourths cycles in successive-approximation steps. Total conversion time is controlled by two register bits – SPEED1 and SPEED0. Eight analog channels are available on P1 and only one of them is connected to the comparator depending on the selection bits {CHS2,CHS1,CHS0}. When conversion is completed, the result will be saved onto ADC_DATA and ADC_LOW2 registerS. After the result are completed and saved, ADC_FLAG is also set. ADC_FLAG should be cleared in software. The ADC interrupt service routine vectors to 2Bh. When the chip enters idle mode or power-down mode, the power of ADC is gated off by hardware.

If user need 10-bit conversion result, calculating the result according to the following formula:

$$10\text{-bit A/D Conversion Result:}(ADC\_DATA[7:0], \ ADC\_LOW2[1:0]) = 1024 \times \frac{\text{Vin}}{\text{Vcc}}$$

If user need 8-bit conversion result, calculating the result according to the following formula:

$$8\text{-bit A/D Conversion Result:}(ADC\_DATA[7:0]) = 256 \times \frac{\text{Vin}}{\text{Vcc}}$$

In the above formula, Vin stand for analog input channel voltage, Vcc stand for actual operation voltage
9.2 Registers for ADC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit address and Symbol</th>
<th>Reset value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1M0</td>
<td>P1 Configuration 0</td>
<td>91H</td>
<td>MSB:0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1M1</td>
<td>P1 Configuration 1</td>
<td>92H</td>
<td>MSB:0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_CONTR</td>
<td>ADC Control Register</td>
<td>C5H</td>
<td>ADC_POWER SPEED1 SPEED0 ADC_FLAG ADC_START CHS2 CHS1 CHS0</td>
<td>0000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_DATA</td>
<td>ADC Result high</td>
<td>C6H</td>
<td>MSB:0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_LOW</td>
<td>ADC Result low</td>
<td>BEH</td>
<td>MSB:0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IE</th>
<th>Interrupt Enable</th>
<th>A8H</th>
<th>EA</th>
<th>PPCA_LVD</th>
<th>EADC_SPI</th>
<th>ES</th>
<th>ET1</th>
<th>EX1</th>
<th>ET0</th>
<th>EX0</th>
<th>0000 0000B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority Low</td>
<td>B8H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PPCA_LVD</td>
<td>PADC_SPI</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>PT1</td>
<td>PX1</td>
<td>PT0</td>
<td>PX0</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>Interrupt Priority High</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PPCA_LVDH</td>
<td>PADC_SPIH</td>
<td>PSH</td>
<td>PT1H</td>
<td>PX1H</td>
<td>PT0H</td>
<td>PX0H</td>
<td>x000 0000B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| AUXR | Auxiliary register | A2H | T0x12 | T1x12 | UART_M0x12 | EADCI | SPI | ELVDI | - | - | 0000 00xxB |

1. P1 Analog Function Configure register: P1M0 and P1M1

Those P1 ports which need to be used as A/D converter should be first set in open-drain or high-impedance (input-only) mode through registers P1M0 and P1M1.

P1 Configure <P1.7, P1.6, P1.5, P1.4, P1.3, P1.2, P1.1, P1.0 port> (P1 address: 90H)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P1M0[7:0]</th>
<th>P1M1[7:0]</th>
<th>I/O ports Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>quasi_bidirectional(standard 8051 I/O port output), Sink Current up to 20mA, pull-up Current is 230μA, Because of manufactured error, the actual pull-up current is 250uA ~ 150uA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>push-pull output(strong pull-up output, current can be up to 20mA, resistors need to be added to restrict current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>input-only (high-impedance ). If any P1 port need to be used as ADC, its mode is optional between input-only (high-impedance ) and open-drain mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Open Drain, internal pull-up resistors should be disabled and external pull-up resistors need to join. If any P1 port need to be used as ADC, its mode is optional between input-only (high-impedance ) and open-drain mode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: MOV P1M0, #10100000B
MOV P1M1, #11000000B ;P1.7 in Open Drain mode, P1.6 in strong push-pull output, P1.5 in high-impedance input, P1.4/P1.3/P1.2/P1.1/P1.0 in quasi_bidirectional/weak pull-up
2. ADC control register: ADC_CONTR (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADC_CONTR</td>
<td>C5H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When operating to ADC_CONTR register, "MOV" should be used, while "AND" and "OR" don not be recommended to use

ADC_POWER : When clear shut down the power of ADC block. When set turn on the power of ADC block.
SPEED1, SPEED0 : Conversion speed selection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPEED1</th>
<th>SPEED0</th>
<th>Times needed by an A/D Coversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1080  clock cycles are needed for a conversion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>810   clock cycles are needed for a conversion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>540   clock cycles are needed for a conversion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>270   clock cycles are needed for a conversion. When the CPU operation frequency is 27MHz, the speed of ADC is about 100KHz.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The clock source used by ADC block of STC12C5410AD series MCU is On-chip R/C clock which is not divided by Clock divider register CLK_DIV.

ADC_FLAG : ADC interrupt flag. It will be set by the device after the device has finished a conversion, and should be cleared by the user's software.

ADC_START : ADC start bit, which enable ADC conversion. It will automatically cleared by the device after the device has finished the conversion.

CHS2 ~ CHS0 : Used to select one analog input source from 8 channels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHS2</th>
<th>CHS1</th>
<th>CHS0</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P1.0 (default) as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P1.1 as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P1.2 as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P1.3 as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P1.4 as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P1.5 as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>P1.6 as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P1.7 as the A/D channel input</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The corresponding bits in P1ASF should be configured correctly before starting A/D conversion. The specific P1ASF bits should be set corresponding with the desired channels.

Because it will by delayed 4 CPU clocks after the instruction which set ADC_CONTR register has been executed, Four "NOP" instructions should be added after setting ADC_CONTR register. See the following code:

```assembly
MOV  ADC_CONTR, #DATA
NOP
NOP
NOP
MOV  A, ADC_CONTR
```

;Only delayed 4 clocks, can the ADC_CONTR be read correctly.
3. ADC result register: ADC_DATA and ADC_LOW2
ADC_DATA and ADC_LOW2 are used to save the ADC result, their format as shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Add</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADC_DATA</td>
<td>C6h</td>
<td>ADC result register high</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADC_LOW2</td>
<td>BEh</td>
<td>ADC result register low</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If user need 10-bit conversion result, calculating the result according to the following formula:

\[
10\text{-bit A/D Conversion Result}:(ADC\_DATA[7:0], \text{ADC\_LOW2}[1:0]) = 1024 \times \frac{\text{Vin}}{\text{Vcc}}
\]

If user need 8-bit conversion result, calculating the result according to the following formula:

\[
8\text{-bit A/D Conversion Result}:(ADC\_DATA[7:0]) = 256 \times \frac{\text{Vin}}{\text{Vcc}}
\]

In the above formula, Vin stand for analog input channel voltage, Vcc stand for actual operation voltage

4. Registers related with UART1 interrupt : IE, AUXR, IP and IPH
IE: Interrupt Enable Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>EPCA_LVD</td>
<td>EADCI_SPI</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td>ET1</td>
<td>EX1</td>
<td>ET0</td>
<td>EX0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EA : disables all interrupts.
    If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged.
    If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

EADCI\_SPI : Interrupt controller of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).
    If EADCI\_SPI = 0, Disable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).
    If EADCI\_SPI = 1, Enable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).

AUXR: Auxiliary register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>T0x12</td>
<td>T1x12</td>
<td>UART_M0x6</td>
<td>EADCI</td>
<td>ESPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EADCI : Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter
    0 : (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
    1 : Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
9.3 Application Circuit of A/D Converter

ADC function in P1 port, P1.0 - P1.7 in all 8 channels
9.4 ADC Application Circuit for Key Scan

ADC function in P1 port, P1.0 - P1.7 in all 8 channels

This circuit can realize the single key scan and assembling key scan detection function, but the value of resistors should be adjusted according to the actual demand.

10 keys are used to divide the voltage in the below circuit, what the error of each key float between -0.25V and +0.25V can effectively avoid that resistance error or temperature drift lead to disable key detection.
9.5 A/D reference voltage source

STC12C5410AD series ADC reference voltage is from MCU power supply voltage directly, so it can work without an external reference voltage source. If the required precision is relatively high, then you maybe using a stable reference voltage source, in order to calculate the operating voltage VCC, then calculate the ADC exact value. For example, you can connect a 1.25V(or 1.00V, ect. …) to ADC channel 7, according to the conversion result, you can get the actual VCC voltage, thus you can calculate other 7 channels ADC results. (Vcc is constant in short time)
9.6 Program using interrupts to demonstrate A/D Conversion

There are two example procedures using interrupts to demonstrate A/D conversion, one written in C language and the other in assembly language.

1. C language code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

#define FOSC 18432000L
#define BAUD 9600

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

#define ADC_POWER    0x80 //ADC power control bit
#define ADC_FLAG     0x10 //ADC complete flag
#define ADC_START    0x08 //ADC start control bit
#define ADC_SPEEDLL  0x00 //1080 clocks
#define ADC_SPEEDL   0x20 //810 clocks
#define ADC_SPEEDH   0x40 //540 clocks
#define ADC_SPEEDHH  0x60 //270 clocks

#include "intrins.h"

void InitUart();
void SendData(BYTE dat);
void Delay(WORD n);
void InitADC();
```
BYTE ch = 0; //ADC channel NO.

void main()
{
    InitUart(); //Init UART, use to show ADC result
    InitADC(); //Init ADC sfr
    AUXR |= 0x10; //set EADCI
    IE = 0xa0; //Enable ADC interrupt and Open master interrupt switch
                //Start A/D conversion
    while (1);
}

/*-----------------------------
ADC interrupt service routine
-----------------------------*/
void adc_isr() interrupt 5 using 1
{
    ADC_CONTR &= !ADC_FLAG; //Clear ADC interrupt flag
    SendData(ch); //Show Channel NO.
    SendData(ADC_DATA); //Get ADC high 8-bit result and Send to UART

    //if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next line
    //    SendData(ADC_LOW2); //Show ADC low 2-bit result

    if (++ch > 7) ch = 0; //switch to next channel
    ADC_CONTR = ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ADC_START | ch;
}

/*-----------------------------
Initial ADC sfr
-----------------------------*/
void InitADC()
{
    P1 = P1M0 = P1M1 = 0xff; //Set all P1 as Open-Drain mode
    ADC_DATA = 0; //Clear previous result
    ADC_CONTR = ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ADC_START | ch;
    Delay(2); //ADC power-on delay and Start A/D conversion
}

/*-----------------------------
Initial UART
-----------------------------*/
void InitUart()
{
    SCON = 0x5a;                       // 8 bit data, no parity bit
    TMOD = 0x20;                       // T1 as 8-bit auto reload
    TH1 = TL1 = -(FOSC/12/32/BAUD);   // Set Uart baudrate
    TR1 = 1;                           // T1 start running
}

/*---------------------------------------------------------------
  Send one byte data to PC
  Input: dat (UART data)
  Output:-
  --------------------------------------------------------------*/
void sendData(BYTE dat)
{
    while (!TI);                       // Wait for the previous data is sent
    TI = 0;                            // Clear TI flag
    SBUF = dat;                        // Send current data
}

/*---------------------------------------------------------------
  Software delay function
  --------------------------------------------------------------*/
void Delay(WORD n)
{
    WORD x;
    while (n--)
    {
        x = 5000;
        while (x--);
    }
}
2. Assembly language code listing:

`/*Declare SFR associated with the ADC */`
AUXR EQU 8EH
ADC_CONTR EQU 0C5H ;ADC control register
ADC_DATA EQU 0C6H ;ADC high 8-bit result register
ADC_LOW2 EQU 0BEH ;ADC low 2-bit result register
P1M0 EQU 091H ;P1 mode control register0
P1M1 EQU 092H ;P1 mode control register1

`/*Define ADC operation const for ADC_CONTR*/`
ADC_POWER EQU 80H ;ADC power control bit
ADC_FLAG EQU 10H ;ADC complete flag
ADC_START EQU 08H ;ADC start control bit
ADC_SPEEDDLL EQU 00H ;1080 clocks
ADC_SPEEDDL EQU 20H ;810 clocks
ADC_SPEEDDH EQU 40H ;540 clocks
ADC_SPEEDDHH EQU 60H ;270 clocks
ADCCH DATA 20H ;ADC channel NO.

`;------------------------------------------------------------------`
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

`;------------------------------------------------------------------`
ORG 002BH
LJMP ADC_ISR

`;------------------------------------------------------------------`
ORG 0100H

MAIN:
MOV SP, #3FH
MOV ADCCH, #0
LCALL INIT_UART ;Init UART, use to show ADC result
LCALL INIT_ADC ;Init ADC sfr
ORL AUXR, #10H ;set EADC1
MOV IE, #0A0H ;Enable ADC interrupt and Open master interrupt switch
SJMP $
ADC interrupt service routine

ADC_ISR:
PUSH ACC
PUSH PSW

ANL ADC_CONTR, #NOT ADC_FLAG ;Clear ADC interrupt flag
MOV A, ADCCH
LCALL SEND_DATA ;Send channel NO.
MOV A, ADC_DATA ;Get ADC high 8-bit result
LCALL SEND_DATA ;Send to UART

;if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next 2 lines
;
; MOV A, ADC_LOW2 ;Get ADC low 2-bit result
; LCALL SEND_DATA ;Send to UART

INC ADCCH
MOV A, ADCCH
ANL A, #07H
MOV ADCCH, A
ORL A, #ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ADC_START
MOV ADC_CONTR, A ;ADC power-on delay and re-start A/D conversion
POP PSW
POP ACC
RETI

;Initial ADC sfr

INIT_ADC:

MOV A, #0FFH
MOV P1, A
MOV P1M0, A
MOV P1M1, A ;Set all P1 as Open-Drain mode
MOV ADC_DATA, #0 ;Clear previous result
MOV A, ADCCH
ORL A, #ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ADC_START
MOV ADC_CONTR, A ;ADC power-on delay and Start A/D conversion
MOV A,#2
LCALL DELAY
RET
;Initial UART
;----------------------------*/
INIT_UART:
    MOV    SCON, #5AH       ;8 bit data ,no parity bit
    MOV    TMOD, #20H       ;T1 as 8-bit auto reload
    MOV    A, -5            ;Set Uart baudrate -(18432000/12/32/9600)
    MOV    TH1, A
    MOV    TL1, A
    SETB   TR1              ;T1 start running
    RET

;Send one byte data to PC
;Input: ACC (UART data)
;Output:-
;----------------------------*/
SEND_DATA:
    JNB    TI, $            ;Wait for the previous data is sent
    CLR    TI                ;Clear TI flag
    MOV    SBUF, A          ;Send current data
    RET

;Software delay function
;----------------------------*/
DELAY:
    MOV    R2, A
    CLR    A
    MOV    R0, A
    MOV    R1, A
    DELAY1:
        DJNZ R0, DELAY1
        DJNZ R1, DELAY1
        DJNZ R2, DELAY1
    RET

END
9.7 Program using polling to demostrate A/D Conversion

There are two example procedures using inquiry to demostrate A/D conversion, one written in C language and the other in assembly language.

1. C language code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"
#define FOSC 18432000L
#define BAUD 9600
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
/*Declare SFR associated with the ADC */
sfr ADC_CONTR = 0xC5; //ADC control register
sfr ADC_DATA = 0xC6; //ADC high 8-bit result register
sfr ADC_LOW2 = 0xBE; //ADC low 2-bit result register
sfr P1M0 = 0x91; //P1 mode control register0
sfr P1M1 = 0x92; //P1 mode control register1
/*Define ADC operation const for ADC_CONTR*/
#define ADC_POWER 0x80 //ADC power control bit
#define ADC_FLAG 0x10 //ADC complete flag
#define ADC_START 0x08 //ADC start control bit
#define ADC_SPEEDLL 0x00 //1080 clocks
#define ADC_SPEEDL 0x20 //810 clocks
#define ADC_SPEEDH 0x40 //540 clocks
#define ADC_SPEEDHH 0x60 //270 clocks

void InitUart();
void InitADC();
void SendData(BYTE dat);
BYTE GetADCResult(BYTE ch);
void Delay(WORD n);
void ShowResult(BYTE ch);
```
void main()
{
    InitUart(); // Init UART, use to show ADC result
    InitADC();  // Init ADC sfr
    while (1)
    {
        ShowResult(0); // Show Channel0
        ShowResult(1); // Show Channel1
        ShowResult(2); // Show Channel2
        ShowResult(3); // Show Channel3
        ShowResult(4); // Show Channel4
        ShowResult(5); // Show Channel5
        ShowResult(6); // Show Channel6
        ShowResult(7); // Show Channel7
    }
}

/*---------------------------
  Send ADC result to UART
---------------------------*/
void ShowResult(BYTE ch)
{
    SendData(ch); // Show Channel NO.
    SendData(GetADCResult(ch)); // Show ADC high 8-bit result

    // if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next line
    //     SendData(ADC_LOW2); // Show ADC low 2-bit result
}

/*---------------------------
  Get ADC result
---------------------------*/
BYTE GetADCResult(BYTE ch)
{
    ADC_CONTR = ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ch | ADC_START;
    _nop_();       // Must wait before inquiry
    _nop_();
    _nop_();
    _nop_();
    while (!(ADC_CONTR & ADC_FLAG)); // Wait complete flag
    ADC_CONTR &= ~ADC_FLAG; // Close ADC

    return ADC_DATA; // Return ADC result
}
/*----------------------------
Initial UART
----------------------------*/

void InitUart()
{
    SCON = 0x5a;                       //8 bit data, no parity bit
    TMOD = 0x20;                       //T1 as 8-bit auto reload
    TH1 = TL1 = -(FOSC/12/32/BAUD);   //Set Uart baudrate
    TR1 = 1;                           //T1 start running
}

/*----------------------------
Initial ADC sfr
----------------------------*/

void InitADC()
{
    P1 = P1M0 = P1M1 = 0xff;          //Set all P1 as Open-Drain mode
    ADC_DATA = 0;                      //Clear previous result
    ADC_CONTR = ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL;  //ADC power-on and delay

    Delay(2);                          //ADC power-on and delay
}

/*----------------------------
Send one byte data to PC
Input: dat (UART data)
Output:-
----------------------------*/

void SendData(BYTE dat)
{
    while (!TI);                       //Wait for the previous data is sent
    TI = 0;                            //Clear TI flag
    SBUF = dat;                        //Send current data
}

/*----------------------------
Software delay function
----------------------------*/

void Delay(WORD n)
{
    WORD x;
    while (n--)
    {
        x = 5000;
        while (x--);
    }
}
2. Assembly language code listing:

```assembly
;/*-------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC MCU International Limited --------------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC 1T Series MCU A/D Conversion Demo -------*/
; /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ----------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
; /* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
; /*------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

; /*Declare SFR associated with the ADC */
ADC_CONTR EQU 0C5H ;ADC control register
ADC_DATA EQU 0C6H ;ADC high 8-bit result register
ADC_LOW2 EQU 0BEH ;ADC low 2-bit result register
P1M0 EQU 091H ;P1 mode control register0
P1M1 EQU 092H ;P1 mode control register1

; /*Define ADC operation const for ADC_CONTR*/
ADC_POWER EQU 80H ;ADC power control bit
ADC_FLAG EQU 10H ;ADC complete flag
ADC_START EQU 08H ;ADC start control bit
ADC_SPEEDDLL EQU 00H ;1080 clocks
ADC_SPEEDDL EQU 20H ;810 clocks
ADC_SPEEDDH EQU 40H ;540 clocks
ADC_SPEEDHH EQU 60H ;270 clocks

;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN
;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0100H
MAIN:
    LCALL INIT_UART ;Init UART, use to show ADC result
    LCALL INIT_ADC ;Init ADC sfr
;-------------------------------
NEXT:
    MOV A, #0
    LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel0 result
    MOV A, #1
    LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel1 result
    MOV A, #2
    LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel2 result
```

STC MCU Limited.
MOV A, #3
LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel3 result
MOV A, #4
LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel4 result
MOV A, #5
LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel5 result
MOV A, #6
LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel6 result
MOV A, #7
LCALL SHOW_RESULT ;Show channel7 result
SJMP NEXT

; Send ADC result to UART
; Input: ACC (ADC channel NO.)
; Output:-

SHOW_RESULT:
    LCALL SEND_DATA ;Show Channel NO.
    LCALL GET_ADC_RESULT ;Get high 8-bit ADC result
    LCALL SEND_DATA ;Show result

    ; if you want show 10-bit result, uncomment next 2 lines
    ; MOV A, ADC_LOW2 ;Get low 2-bit ADC result
    ; LCALL SEND_DATA ;Show result
RET

READ_ADC_RESULT:
    ORL A, #ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL | ADC_START
    MOV ADC_CONTR, A ;Start A/D conversion
    NOP ;Must wait before inquiry
    NOP
    NOP
    NOP
    WAIT:
    MOV A, ADC_CONTR ;Wait complete flag
    JNB ACC.4, WAIT ;ADC_FLAG(ADC_CONTR.4)
    ANL ADC_CONTR, #NOT ADC_FLAG ;Clear ADC_FLAG
    MOV A, ADC_DATA ;Return ADC result
    RET
;/*-----------------------------*/
;Initial ADC sfr
;-----------------------------*/
INIT_ADC:
    MOV    A, #0FFH
    MOV    P1, A
    MOV    P1M0, A
    MOV    P1M1, A
    MOV    ADC_DATA,#0
    MOV    ADC_CONTR, #ADC_POWER | ADC_SPEEDLL
    MOV    A, #2
    LCALL DELAY
    RET

;/*-----------------------------*/
;Initial UART
;-----------------------------*/
INIT_UART:
    MOV    SCON, #5AH
    MOV    TMOD, #20H
    MOV    A, #-5
    MOV    TH1, A
    MOV    TL1, A
    SETB   TR1
    RET

;/*-----------------------------*/
;Send one byte data to PC
;Input: ACC (UART data)
;Output:-
;-----------------------------*/
SEND_DATA:
    JNB    TI, $
    CLR   TI
    MOV    SBUF, A
    RET

;/*-----------------------------*/
;Software delay function
;-----------------------------*/
DELAY:
    MOV    R2, A
    CLR   A
    MOV    R0, A
    MOV    R1, A
    DJNZ   R0, DELAY1
    DJNZ   R1, DELAY1
    DJNZ   R2, DELAY1
    RET

END
Chapter 10. Programmable Counter Array (PCA)

The Programmable Counter Array is a special 16-bit Timer that has four 16-bit capture/compare modules associated with it. Each of the modules can be programmed to operate in one of four modes: rising and/or falling edge capture (calculator of duty length for high/low pulse), software timer, high-speed output, or pulse width modulator. Module 0 is connected to pin P3.7, module 1 to pin P3.5, module 2 to pin P2.0, module 3 to pin P2.4 in STC12C5410AD series.

The PCA timer is a common time base for all four modules and can be programmed to run at 1/12 the system clock, 1/2 the system clock, the Timer 0 overflow or the input on ECI pin (P3.4). The timer count source is determined from CPS1 and CPS0 bits in the CMOD SFR.

10.1 SFRs related with PCA

PCA/PWM SFRs table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Add</th>
<th>Bit address and Symbol</th>
<th>Reset Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B7  B6  B5  B4  B3  B2  B1  B0</td>
<td>CF    CR   CCF3  CCF2  CCF1  CCF0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCON</td>
<td>PCA Control Register</td>
<td>D8H</td>
<td>CF    CR</td>
<td>00xx,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMOD</td>
<td>PCA Mode Register</td>
<td>D9H</td>
<td>CIDL</td>
<td>0xxx,x000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM0</td>
<td>PCA Module 0 Mode Register</td>
<td>DAH</td>
<td>ECOM0 CAPP0 CAPN0 MAT0 TOG0 PWM0 ECCF0</td>
<td>x000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM1</td>
<td>PCA Module 1 Mode Register</td>
<td>DBH</td>
<td>ECOM1 CAPP1 CAPN1 MAT1 TOG1 PWM1 ECCF1</td>
<td>x000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM2</td>
<td>PCA Module 2 Mode Register</td>
<td>DCH</td>
<td>ECOM2 CAPP2 CAPN2 MAT2 TOG2 PWM2 ECCF2</td>
<td>x000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM3</td>
<td>PCA Module 3 Mode Register</td>
<td>DDH</td>
<td>ECOM3 CAPP3 CAPN3 MAT3 TOG3 PWM3 ECCF3</td>
<td>x000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CL</td>
<td>PCA Base Timer Low</td>
<td>E9H</td>
<td>PCAP0L</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>PCA Base Timer High</td>
<td>F9H</td>
<td>PCAP0H</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP0L</td>
<td>PCA Module-0 Capture Register Low</td>
<td>EAH</td>
<td>PCAP0H</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP1L</td>
<td>PCA Module-1 Capture Register Low</td>
<td>EBH</td>
<td>PCAP1L</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP1H</td>
<td>PCA Module-1 Capture Register High</td>
<td>FBH</td>
<td>PCAP1H</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP2L</td>
<td>PCA Module-2 Capture Register Low</td>
<td>ECH</td>
<td>PCAP2L</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP2H</td>
<td>PCA Module-2 Capture Register High</td>
<td>FCH</td>
<td>PCAP2H</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP3L</td>
<td>PCA Module-3 Capture Register Low</td>
<td>EDH</td>
<td>PCAP3L</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAP3H</td>
<td>PCA Module-3 Capture Register High</td>
<td>FDH</td>
<td>PCAP3H</td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **PCA operation mode register: CMOD** (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
<th>Reset Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CMOD</td>
<td>D9H</td>
<td>CIDL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>CPS1</td>
<td>CPS0</td>
<td>ECF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CIDL** : PCA Counter control bit in Idle mode.
- If CIDL=0, the PCA counter will continue functioning during idle mode.
- If CIDL=1, the PCA counter will be gated off during idle mode.

**CPS1, CPS0** : PCA Counter Pulse source Select bits.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CPS1</th>
<th>CPS0</th>
<th>Select PCA/PWM clock source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0, System clock/12, SYSclk/12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, System clock/2, SYSclk/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2, Timer 0 overflow. PCA/PWM clock can up to SYSclk because Timer 0 can operate in 1T mode. Frequency-adjustable PWM output can be achieved by changing the Timer 0 overflow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3, Exernal clock from ECI/P3.4 pin (max speed = SYSclk/2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example, If CPS1/CPS0=0/0, PCA/PWM clock source is SYSclk/12.

If users need to select SYSclk/3 as PCA clock source, Timer 0 should be set to operate in 1T mode and generate an overflow every 3 counting pulse.

**ECF** : PCA Counter Overflow interrupt Enable bit.
- ECF=0 disables CF bit in CCON to generate an interrupt.
- ECF=1 enables CF bit in CCON to generate an interrupt.
2. PCA control register : CCON (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCON</td>
<td>D8H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>CF</td>
<td>CR</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>CCF3</td>
<td>CCF2</td>
<td>CCF1</td>
<td>CCF0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CF : PCA Counter overflow flag. Set by hardware when the counter rolls over. CF flags an interrupt if bit ECF in CMOD is set. CF may be set by either hardware or software but can only be cleared by software.

CR : PCA Counter Run control bit. Set by software to turn the PCA counter on. Must be cleared by software to turn the PCA counter off.

CCF3 : PCA Module 3 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture from module 3 occurs. Must be cleared by software. A match means the value of the PCA counter equals the value of the Capture/Compare register in module 3. A capture means a specific edge from PCA3 happens, so the Capture/Compare register latches the value of the PCA counter, and the CCF3 is set.

CCF2 : PCA Module 2 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture from module 2 occurs. Must be cleared by software. A match means the value of the PCA counter equals the value of the Capture/Compare register in module 2. A capture means a specific edge from PCA2 happens, so the Capture/Compare register latches the value of the PCA counter, and the CCF2 is set.

CCF1 : PCA Module 1 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture from module 1 occurs. Must be cleared by software. A match means the value of the PCA counter equals the value of the Capture/Compare register in module 1. A capture means a specific edge from PCA1 happens, so the Capture/Compare register latches the value of the PCA counter, and the CCF1 is set.

CCF0 : PCA Module 0 interrupt flag. Set by hardware when a match or capture from module 0 occurs. Must be cleared by software. A match means the value of the PCA counter equals the value of the Capture/Compare register in module 0. A capture means a specific edge from PCA0 happens, so the Capture/Compare register latches the value of the PCA counter, and the CCF0 is set.
3. PCA capture/campare register CCAPM0, CCAPM1, CCAPM2 and CCAPM3

Each module in the PCA has a special function register associated with it. These registers are CCAPMn, n=0 ~3. CCAPM0 for module 0, CCAPM1 for module 1, CCAPM2 for module 2 and CCAPM3 for module 3. The register contains the bits that control the mode in which each module will operate. The ECCFn bit enables the CCFn flag in the CCON SFR to generate an interrupt when a match or compare occurs in the associated module. 

PWMn enables the pulse width modulation mode. The TOGn bit when set causes the CCPn output associated with the module to toggle when there is a match between the PCA counter and the module’s capture/compare register. The match bit(MATn) when set will cause the CCFn bit in the CCON register to be set when there is a match between the PCA counter and the module’s capture/compare register.

The next two bits CAPn and CAPPn determine the edge that a capture input will be active on. The CAPn bit enables the negative edge, and the CAPPn bit enables the positive edge. If both bits are set, both edges will be enabled and a capture will occur for either transition. The bit ECOMn when set enables the comparator function.

| Capture/Compare register of PCA module 0 : CCAPM0 (Non bit-addressable) |
|-----------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| SFR name | Address | bit | B7 | B6 | B5 | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | B0 |
| CCAPM0 | DAH | name | - | ECOM0 | CAPP0 | CAPN0 | MAT0 | TOG0 | PWM0 | ECCF0 |

ECOM0 : Comparator Enable bit. 
ECOM0=0 disables the comparator function; ECOM0=1 enables the comparator function.

CAPP0 : Capture Positive control bit. 
CAPP0=1 enables positive edge capture.

CAPN0 : Capture Negative control bit. 
CAPN0=1 enables negative edge capture.

MAT0 : Match control bit. 
When MAT0 = 1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCF0 bit in CCON to be set.

TOG0 : Toggle control bit. 
When TOG0=1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCP0 pin to toggle. (PCA0/PWM0/P3.7)

PWM0 : Pulse Width Modulation. 
PWM0=1 enables the CCP0 pin to be used as a pulse width modulated output. (PCA0/PWM0/P3.7)

ECCF0 : Enable CCF0 interrupt. 
Enables compare/capture flag CCF0 in the CCON register to generate an interrupt.
### Capture/Compare register of PCA module 1: CCAPM1 (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM1</td>
<td>DBH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ECOM1</td>
<td>CAPP1</td>
<td>CAPN1</td>
<td>MAT1</td>
<td>TOG1</td>
<td>PWM1</td>
<td>ECCF1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ECOM1**: Comparator Enable bit.
- ECOM1=0 disables the comparator function;
- ECOM1=1 enables the comparator function.

**CAPP1**: Capture Positive control bit.
- CAPP1=1 enables positive edge capture.

**CAPN1**: Capture Negative control bit.
- CAPN1=1 enables negative edge capture.

**MAT1**: Match control bit.
- When MAT1 = 1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCF1 bit in CCON to be set.

**TOG1**: Toggle control bit.
- When TOG1=1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCP1 pin to toggle.

**PWM1**: Pulse Width Modulation.
- PWM1=1 enables the CEX1 pin to be used as a pulse width modulated output.

**ECCF1**: Enable CCF1 interrupt.
- Enables compare/capture flag CCF1 in the CCON register to generate an interrupt.

### Capture/Compare register of PCA module 2: CCAPM2 (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM2</td>
<td>DCH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ECOM2</td>
<td>CAPP2</td>
<td>CAPN2</td>
<td>MAT2</td>
<td>TOG2</td>
<td>PWM2</td>
<td>ECCF2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ECOM2**: Comparator Enable bit.
- ECOM2=0 disables the comparator function;
- ECOM2=1 enables the comparator function.

**CAPP2**: Capture Positive control bit.
- CAPP2=1 enables positive edge capture.

**CAPN2**: Capture Negative control bit.
- CAPN2=1 enables negative edge capture.

**MAT2**: Match control bit.
- When MAT2 = 1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCF2 bit in CCON to be set.

**TOG2**: Toggle control bit.
- When TOG2=1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCP2 pin to toggle.

**PWM2**: Pulse Width Modulation.
- PWM2=1 enables the CEX2 pin to be used as a pulse width modulated output.

**ECCF2**: Enable CCF2 interrupt.
- Enables compare/capture flag CCF2 in the CCON register to generate an interrupt.
Capture/Compare register of PCA module 3 : CCAPM3 (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCAPM3</td>
<td>DDH</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ECOM3</td>
<td>CAPP3</td>
<td>CAPN3</td>
<td>MAT3</td>
<td>TOG3</td>
<td>PWM3</td>
<td>ECCF3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ECOM3 : Comparator Enable bit.
- ECOM3=0 disables the comparator function;
- ECOM3=1 enables the comparator function.

CAPP3 : Capture Positive control bit.
- CAPP3=1 enables positive edge capture.

CAPN3 : Capture Negative control bit.
- CAPN3=1 enables negative edge capture.

MAT3 : Match control bit.
- When MAT3 = 1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCF3 bit in CCON to be set.

TOG3 : Toggle control bit.
- When TOG3=1, a match of the PCA counter with this module’s compare/capture register causes the CCP3 pin to toggle.

PWM3 : Pulse Width Modulation.
- PWM3=1 enables the CEX3 pin to be used as a pulse width modulated output.

ECCF3 : Enable CCF3 interrupt.
- Enables compare/capture flag CCF3 in the CCON register to generate an interrupt.

The operation mode of PCA modules set as shown in the below table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-</th>
<th>ECOMn</th>
<th>CAPPn</th>
<th>CAPNn</th>
<th>MATn</th>
<th>TOGn</th>
<th>PWMn</th>
<th>ECCFn</th>
<th>Function of PCA modules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8-bit PWM, no interrupt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8-bit PWM output, interrupt can be generated on rising edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8-bit PWM output, interrupt can be generated on falling edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8-bit PWM output, interrupt can be generated on both rising and falling edges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>16-bit Capture Mode, capture triggered by the rising edge on CCPn/PCAn pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>16-bit Capture Mode, capture triggered by the falling edge on CCPn/PCAn pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>16-bit Capture Mode, capture triggered by the transition on CCPn/PCAn pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>16-bit software timer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>16-bit high-speed output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. PCA 16-bit Counter — low 8-bit CL and high 8-bit CH
The addresses of CL and CH respectively are E9H and F9H, and their reset value both are 00H. CL and CH are used to save the PCA load value.

5. PCA Capture/Compare register — CCAPnL and CCAPnH
When PCA is used to capture/compare, CCAPnL and CCAPnH are used to save the 16-bit capture value in corresponding block. When PCA is operated in PWM mode, CCAPnL and CCAPnH are used to control the duty cycle of PWM output signal. "n=0 or 1 or 2 or 3" respectively stand for module 0, 1, 2 and 3. Reset value of registers CCAPnL and CCAPnH are both 00H. Their addresses respectively are:
- CCAP0L — EAH,  CCAP0H — FAH : Capture / Compare register of module 0
- CCAP1L — EBH,  CCAP1H — FBH : Capture / Compare register of module 1
- CCAP2L — ECH,  CCAP2H — FCH : Capture / Compare register of module 2
- CCAP3L — EDH,  CCAP3H — FDH : Capture / Compare register of module 3

6. PWM registers of PCA modules : PCA_PWM0, PCA_PWM1, PCA_PWM2 and PCA_PWM3

PCA_PWM0 : PWM register of PCA module 0

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM0</td>
<td>F2H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>EPC0H</td>
<td>EPC0L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B7 ~ B2 : Reserved
EPC0H : Associated with CCAP0H, it is used in PCA PWM mode.
EPC0L : Associated with CCAP0L, it is used in PCA PWM mode.

PCA_PWM1 : PWM register of PCA module 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM1</td>
<td>F3H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>EPC1H</td>
<td>EPC1L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B7 ~ B2 : Reserved
EPC1H : Associated with CCAP1H, it is used in PCA PWM mode.
EPC1L : Associated with CCAP1L, it is used in PCA PWM mode.

PCA_PWM2 : PWM register of PCA module 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM2</td>
<td>F4H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>EPC2H</td>
<td>EPC2L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B7 ~ B2 : Reserved
EPC2H : Associated with CCAP2H, it is used in PCA PWM mode.
EPC2L : Associated with CCAP2L, it is used in PCA PWM mode.

PCA_PWM3 : PWM register of PCA module 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCA_PWM3</td>
<td>F5H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>EPC3H</td>
<td>EPC3L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B7 ~ B2 : Reserved
EPC3H : Associated with CCAP3H, it is used in PCA PWM mode.
EPC3L : Associated with CCAP3L, it is used in PCA PWM mode.
10.2 PCA/PWM Structure

There are 2 channels Programmable Counter Array PCA/PWM in STC12C5410AD series MCU.

Programmable Counter Array Structure

Each PCA/PWM module can be operated in 4 modes: rising / falling capture mode, software timer, high-speed output mode and adjustable pulse output mode.

STC12C5410AD series: module 0 connect to P3.7/PCA0/PWM0,
module 1 connect to P3.5/PCA1/PWM1,
module 2 connect to P2.0/PCA2/PWM2.
module 3 connect to P2.4/PCA3/PWM3.

PCA Timer/Counter
In the CMOD SFR, there are two additional bits associated with the PCA. They are CIDL which allows the PCA to stop during idle mode, and ECF which when set causes an interrupt and the PCA overflow flag CF(in the CCON SFR) to be set when the PCA timer overflows.

The CCON SFR contains the run control bit for PCA and the flags for the PCA timer and each module. To run the PCA the CR bit(CCON.6) must be set by software; oppositely clearing bit CR will shut off PCA is shut off PCA. The CF bit(CCON.7) is set when the PCA counter overflows and an interrupt will be generated if the ECF (CMOD.0) bit in the CMOD register is set. The CF bit can only be cleared by software. There are two bits named CCF0 and CCF1 in SFR CCON. The CCF0 and CCF1 are the flags for module 0 and module 1 respectively. They are set by hardware when either a match or a capture occurs. These flags also can only be cleared by software.

Each module in the PCA has a special function register associated with it, CCAPM0 for module-0, CCAPM1 for module-1, CCAPM2 for module-2 and CCAPM3 for module-3. The register contains the bits that control the mode in which each module will operate. The ECCFn bit controls if to pass the interrupt from CCFn flag in the CCON SFR to the MCU when a match or compare occurs in the associated module. PWMn enables the pulse width modulation mode. The TOGn bit when set causes the pin CCPn output associated with the module to toggle when there is a match between the PCA counter and the module’s Capture/Compare register. The match bit (MATn) when set will cause the CCFn bit in the CCON register to be set when there is a match between the PCA counter and the module’s Capture/Compare register.

The next two bits CAPNn and CAPPn determine the edge type that a capture input will be active on. The CAPNn bit enables the negative edge, and the CAPPn bit enables the positive edge. If both bits are set, both edges will be enabled and a capture will occur for either transition. The bit ECOMn when set enables the comparator function.
10.3 PCA Modules Operation Mode

The operation mode of PCA modules set as shown in the below table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-</th>
<th>ECOMn</th>
<th>CAPPn</th>
<th>CAPNn</th>
<th>MATn</th>
<th>TOGn</th>
<th>PWMn</th>
<th>ECCFn</th>
<th>Function of PCA modules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-bit PWM, no interrupt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-bit PWM output, interrupt can be generated on rising edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-bit PWM output, interrupt can be generated on falling edge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8-bit PWM output, interrupt can be generated on both rising and falling edges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>16-bit Capture Mode, capture triggered by the rising edge on CCPn/PCAn pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>16-bit Capture Mode, capture triggered by the falling edge on CCPn/PCAn pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>16-bit Capture Mode, capture triggered by the transition on CCPn/PCAn pin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>16-bit software timer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>16-bit high-speed output</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.3.1 PCA Capture Mode

To use one of the PCA modules in the capture mode either one or both of the CCAPM bits – CAPPn and CAPNn, for the module must be set. The external CCPn input (CCP0/P3.7, CCP1/P3.5) for the module is sampled for a transition. When a valid transition occurs, the PCA hardware loads the value of the PCA counter register(CH and CL) into the module’s capture registers(CCAPnH and CCAPnL). If the CCFn bit for the module in the CCON SFR and the ECCFn bit in the CCAPMn SFR are set then an interrupt will be generated.
10.3.2 16-bit Software Timer Mode

The PCA modules can be used as software timers by setting both the ECOMn and MATn bits in the modules CCAPMn register. The PCA timer will be compared to the module’s capture registers and when a match occurs an interrupt will be generated if the CCFn and ECCFn bits for the module are both set.
10.3.3 High Speed Output Mode

In this mode the CCPn output (port latch) associated with the PCA module will toggle each time a match occurs between the PCA counter and the module’s capture registers. To activate this mode the TOGn,MATn,and ECOMn bits in the module’s CCAPMn SFR must be set.
10.3.4 Pulse Width Modulator Mode (PWM mode)

All of the PCA modules can be used as PWM outputs. The frequency of the output depends on the source for the PCA timer. All of the modules will have the same frequency of output because they all share the same PCA timer. The duty cycle of each module is independently variable using the module’s capture register CCAPnL and EPCnL bit in PCAPWMn register. When the value of the PCA CL SFR is less than the value in the module’s {EPCnL,CCAPnL} SFR, the output will be low. When it is equal to or greater than, the output will be high. When CL overflows from FFH to 00H, \{EPCnL,CCAPnL\} is reloaded with the value in \{EPCnH,CCAPnH\}. That allows updating the PWM without glitches. The PWMn and ECOMn bits in the module’s CCAPMn register must be set to enable the PWM mode.

![Diagram of PCA PWM mode](image)
10.4 Programs for PCA module extended external interrupt (C and ASM)

There are two programs for PCA module extended external interrupt demo, one written in C language and the other in assembly language.

1. C code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA*/
sbit EPCAI = IE^6;           //PCA control register
sfr CCON = 0xD8;             //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit CCF0 = CCON^0;          //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit CCF1 = CCON^1;          //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
sbit CR = CCON^6;            //PCA timer run control bit
sbit CF = CCON^7;            //PCA timer overflow flag
sfr CMOD = 0xD9;             //PCA mode register
sfr CL = 0xE9;               //PCA base timer LOW
sfr CH = 0xF9;               //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr CCPM0 = 0xDA;            //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr CCP0L = 0xEA;            //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr CCP0H = 0xFA;            //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr CCPM1 = 0xDB;            //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr CCP1L = 0xEB;            //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr CCP1H = 0xFB;            //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr CCPM2 = 0xDC;            //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr CCP2L = 0xEC;            //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr CCP2H = 0xFC;            //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr CCPM3 = 0xDD;            //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr CCP3L = 0xED;            //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr CCP3H = 0xFD;            //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr PCAPWM0 = 0xF2;          //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr PCAPWM1 = 0xF3;          //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr PCAPWM2 = 0xF4;          //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr PCAPWM3 = 0xF5;
```

sbit PCA_LED = P1^0;              //PCA test LED

void PCA_isr() interrupt 7 using 1
{
    CCF0 = 0;                          //Clear interrupt flag
    PCA_LED = !PCA_LED;              //toggle the test pin while CEX0(P1.3) have a falling edge
}

void main()
{
    CCON = 0;                        //Initial PCA control register
                                         //PCA timer stop running
                                         //Clear CF flag
                                         //Clear all module interrupt flag
    CL = 0;                          //Reset PCA base timer
    CH = 0;
    CMOD = 0x00;                     //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
                                         //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
    CCAPM0 = 0x11;  //PCA module-0 capture by a negative tigger on CEX0(P1.3)
                                   //and enable PCA interrupt
    // CCAPM0 = 0x21;                  //PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CEX0(P1.3)
                                   //and enable PCA interrupt
    // CCAPM0 = 0x31;        //PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
                                   //on CEX0(P1.3) and enable PCA interrupt
    CR = 1;                          //PCA timer start run
    EPCAI = 1;
    EA = 1;

    while (1);
}
2. Assembly code listing:

;/*------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- STC MCU International Limited ------------------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- STC 1T Series MCU PCA module Extended external interrupt --------------------------*/
;/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------------------------------*/
;/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------------------------------*/
;/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
;/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
;/*--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

;/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
EPCAI BIT IE.6

CCON EQU 0D8H ;PCA control register
CCF0 BIT CCON.0 ;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1 BIT CCON.1 ;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR BIT CCON.6 ;PCA timer run control bit
CF BIT CCON.7 ;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD EQU 0D9H ;PCA mode register
CL EQU 0E9H ;PCA base timer LOW
CH EQU 0F9H ;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0 EQU 0DAH ;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L EQU 0EAH ;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H EQU 0FAH ;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1 EQU 0DBH ;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L EQU 0EBH ;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H EQU 0FBH ;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM2 EQU 0DDH ;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2L EQU 0ECH ;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2H EQU 0FCH ;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM3 EQU 0DDH ;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3L EQU 0EDH ;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP3H EQU 0FDH ;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH

PCA_LED BIT P1.0 ;PCA test LED

;--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN
ORG 0033H

PCA_ISR:
CLR  CCF0   ;Clear interrupt flag
CPL  PCA_LED ;toggle the test pin while CEX0(P1.3) have a falling edge
RETI

;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0100H

MAIN:
MOV  CCON, #0  ;Initial PCA control register
;PCA timer stop running
;Clear CF flag
;Clear all module interrupt flag
CLR  A  
MOV  CL, A  ;Reset PCA base timer
MOV  CH, A  
MOV  CMOD, #00H  ;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
MOV  CCAPM0,#11H  ;PCA module-0 capture by a falling edge on CEX0(P1.3)
;and enable PCA interrupt
;    MOV  CCAPM0,#21H  ;PCA module-0 capture by a rising edge on CEX0(P1.3)
;    and enable PCA interrupt
;    MOV  CCAPM0,#31H  ;PCA module-0 capture by a transition (falling/rising edge)
;on CEX0(P1.3) and enable PCA interrupt
;-------------------------------
SETB  CR  ;PCA timer start run
SETB  EPCAI
SETB  EA

SJMP  $  

;-----------------------------------------
END
10.5 Demo Programs for PCA module acted as 16-bit Timer (C and ASM)

There are two programs for PCA module acted as 16-bit Timer demo, one written in C language and the other in assembly language.

1. C code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

#define FOSC 18432000L
#define T100Hz (FOSC / 12 / 100)

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA*/
sbit EPCAI = IE^6; //PCA control register
sfr CCON = 0xD8;   //PCA control register
sbit CCF0 = CCON^0; //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit CCF1 = CCON^1; //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
sbit CR = CCON^6;  //PCA timer run control bit
sbit CF = CCON^7;  //PCA timer overflow flag
sfr CMOD = 0xD9;   //PCA mode register
sfr CL = 0xE9;     //PCA base timer LOW
sfr CH = 0xF9;     //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr CCAPM0 = 0xDA; //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr CCAP0L = 0xEA; //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr CCAP0H = 0xFA; //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr CCAPM1 = 0xDB; //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr CCAP1L = 0xEB; //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr CCAP1H = 0xFB; //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr CCAPM2 = 0xDC; //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr CCAP2L = 0xEC; //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr CCAP2H = 0xFC; //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr CCAPM3 = 0xDD; //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr CCAP3L = 0xED; //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr CCAP3H = 0xFD; //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
```

sbit PCA_LED = P1^0;               //PCA test LED
BYTE cnt;
WORD value;

void PCA_isr() interrupt 7 using 1
{
    CCF0 = 0;                          //Clear interrupt flag
    CCAP0L = value;                    //Update compare value
    CCAP0H = value >> 8;
    value += T100Hz;
    if (cnt-- == 0)
    {
        cnt = 100;                    //Count 100 times
        PCA_LED = !PCA_LED;          //Flash once per second
    }
}

void main()
{
    CCON = 0;                          //Initial PCA control register
    //PCA timer stop running
    //Clear CF flag
    //Clear all module interrupt flag
    CL = 0;                            //Reset PCA base timer
    CH = 0;
    CMOD = 0x00;                       //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
    //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
    value = T100Hz;
    CCAP0L = value;
    CCAP0H = value >> 8;
    value += T100Hz;
    CCAPM0 = 0x49;                     //PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode
    //and enable PCA interrupt
    CR = 1;                            //PCA timer start run
    EPCAI = 1;
    EA = 1;
    cnt = 0;

    while (1);
}
2. Assembly code listing:

; *-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
; /* STC MCU International Limited ----------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* STC 1T Series MCU PCA module acted as 16-bit Timer Demo -------------------------------*/
; /* Mobile: (86)13922809991 -------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* Fax: 86-755-82905966 -------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* Tel: 86-755-82948412 --------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
; /* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
; /* *-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

T100Hz    EQU  3C00H ;(18432000 / 12 / 100)

; /*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
EPCAI     BIT  IE.6

CCON     EQU  0D8H ;PCA control register
CCF0     BIT  CCON.0 ;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1     BIT  CCON.1 ;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR       BIT  CCON.6 ;PCA timer run control bit
CF       BIT  CCON.7 ;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD     EQU  0D9H ;PCA mode register
CL       EQU  0E9H ;PCA base timer LOW
CH       EQU  0F9H ;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0   EQU  0DAH ;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L   EQU  0EAH ;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H   EQU  0FAH ;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1   EQU  0DBH ;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L   EQU  0EBH ;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H   EQU  0FBH ;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM2   EQU  0DCH ;PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2L   EQU  0ECH ;PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2H   EQU  0FCH ;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAP3L   EQU  0DDH ;PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3H   EQU  0FDH ;PCA module-3 capture register LOW
PCA_LED  BIT  P1.0 ;PCA test LED

CNT       EQU  20H

;------------------------------------------------------------------
ORG     0000H
LJMP    MAIN
ORG 0033H
LJMP PCA_ISR

;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0100H
MAIN:
    MOV SP, #3FH          ;Initial stack point
    MOV CCON, #0         ;Initial PCA control register
    ;PCA timer stop running
    CLR A                ;Clear CF flag
    ;Clear all module interrupt flag
    MOV CL, A            ;Reset PCA base timer
    MOV CH, A            ;
    MOV CMOD, #00H       ;Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/12
    ;Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
    ;-------------------------------
    MOV CCAP0L, #LOW T100Hz ;Initial PCA module-0
    MOV CCAP0H, #HIGH T100Hz ;Initial PCA module-0
    MOV CCAPM0, #49H ;PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode and enable PCA interrupt
    ;-------------------------------
    SETB CR               ;PCA timer start run
    SETB EPCAI
    SETB EA
    MOV CNT, #100
    SJMP $
    ;-----------------------------------------
PCA_ISR:
    PUSH PSW
    PUSH ACC
    CLR CCF0               ;Clear interrupt flag
    MOV A, CCAP0L
    ADD A, #LOW T100Hz      ;Update compare value
    MOV CCAP0L,A
    MOV A, CCAP0H
    ADDC A, #HIGH T100Hz    
    MOV CCAP0H,A
    DJNZ CNT, PCA_ISR_EXIT ;count 100 times
    MOV CNT, #100
    CPL PCA_LED              ;Flash once per second
PCA_ISR_EXIT:
    POP ACC
    POP PSW
    RETI
    ;-----------------------------------------
END
10.6 Programs for PCA module as 16-bit High Speed Output(C and ASM)

There are two programs for PCA module as 16-bit High Speed Output, one written in C language and the other in assembly language.

1. C code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

#define FOSC 18432000L
#define T100KHz (FOSC / 4 / 100000)

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
sbit EPCAI = IE^6;  //PCA control register
sbit CCON = CCON^0;  //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit CCF0 = CCON^1;  //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit CR = CCON^6;  //PCA timer run control bit
sbit CF = CCON^7;  //PCA timer overflow flag
sfr CMOD = 0xD9;  //PCA mode register
sfr CL = 0xE9;  //PCA base timer LOW
sfr CH = 0xF9;  //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr CCPM0 = 0xDA;  //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr CCP0L = 0xEA;  //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr CCP0H = 0xFA;  //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr CCPM1 = 0xDB;  //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr CCP1L = 0xEB;  //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr CCP1H = 0xFB;  //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr CCPM2 = 0xDC;  //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr CCP2L = 0xEC;  //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr CCP2H = 0xFC;  //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr CCPM3 = 0xDD;  //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr CCP3L = 0xED;  //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr CCP3H = 0xFD;  //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
```

---

STC MCU Limited.

website: www.STCMCU.com
sbit PCA_LED = P1^0;   //PCA test LED

BYTE cnt;
WORD value;

void PCA_isr( ) interrupt 7 using 1
{
    CCF0 = 0;                              //Clear interrupt flag
    CCAP0L = value;
    CCAP0H = value >> 8;                  //Update compare value
    value += T100KHz;
}

void main()
{
    CCON = 0;                             //Initial PCA control register
    //PCA timer stop running
    //Clear CF flag
    //Clear all module interrupt flag
    CL = 0;                               //Reset PCA base timer
    CH = 0;
    CMOD = 0x02;                           //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2
                                           //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
    value = T100KHz;
    CCAP0L = value;                       //P1.3 output 100KHz square wave
    CCAP0H = value >> 8;                  //Initial PCA module-0
    value += T100KHz;
    CCAPM0 = 0x4d;                         //PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode
                                          //and enable PCA interrupt, toggle the output pin CEX0(P1.3)
    CR = 1;                               //PCA timer start run
    EPCAI = 1;
    EA = 1;
    cnt = 0;

    while (1);
}
2. Assembly code listing:

T100KHz EQU 2EH ; (18432000 / 4 / 100000)

; /* Declare SFR associated with the PCA */
CCON EQU 0D8H ; PCA control register
CCF0 BIT CCON.0 ; PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1 BIT CCON.1 ; PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR BIT CCON.6 ; PCA timer run control bit
CF BIT CCON.7 ; PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD EQU 0D9H ; PCA mode register
CH EQU 0F9H ; PCA base timer HIGH
CL EQU 0E9H ; PCA base timer LOW
CCAPM0 EQU 0DAH ; PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L EQU 0EAH ; PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H EQU 0FAH ; PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1 EQU 0DBH ; PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L EQU 0EBH ; PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H EQU 0FBH ; PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
CCAPM2 EQU 0ECH ; PCA module-2 mode register
CCAP2L EQU 0DCH ; PCA module-2 capture register LOW
CCAP2H EQU 0FCH ; PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
CCAPM3 EQU 0DDH ; PCA module-3 mode register
CCAP3L EQU 0EDH ; PCA module-3 capture register LOW
CCAP3H EQU 0FDH ; PCA module-3 capture register HIGH

; ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN

ORG 0033H

PCA_ISR:
PUSH PSW
PUSH ACC
CLR CCF0

; Clear interrupt flag
MOVA,CCAP0L
ADD#T100KHz
MOVCCAP0L,A
CLR A
ADDC A,CCAP0H
MOVCCAP0H,A

PCA_ISR_EXIT:
POPACC
POP PSW
RETI

; -----------------------------------------
ORG0100H

MAIN:
MOVCCON,#0 ; Initial PCA control register
; PCA timer stop running
; Clear CF flag
; Clear all module interrupt flag
CLR A
MOVCL,A ; Reset PCA base timer
MOVCH,A
MOVCMOD,#02H ; Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2
; Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt

;-----------------------------
MOVCCAP0L,#T100KHz ; P1.3 output 100KHz square wave
MOVCCAP0H,#0 ; Initial PCA module-0
MOVCAPM0,#4dH ; PCA module-0 work in 16-bit timer mode
; and enable PCA interrupt, toggle the output pin CEX0(P1.3)

;-----------------------------
SETBCR ; PCA timer start run

;-----------------------------
SETBEA

;-----------------------------
SJMP$
10.7 Demo Programs for PCA module as PWM Output (C and ASM)

1. C code listing:

    /*-----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- STC MCU International Limited ----------------------------------------*/
    /* --- STC 1T Series MCU PCA module output PWM wave Demo ------------------*/
    /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ----------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -------------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 --------------------------------------------------*/
    /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com --------------------------------------------------*/
    /*If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC*/
    /*-----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

#define  FOSC     18432000L
typedef  unsigned char  BYTE;
typedef  unsigned int  WORD;

/*Declare SFR associated with the PCA*/
sfr    CCON     =   0xD8;  //PCA control register
sbit   CCF0     =   CCON^0;  //PCA module-0 interrupt flag
sbit   CCF1     =   CCON^1;  //PCA module-1 interrupt flag
sbit   CR       =   CCON^6;  //PCA timer run control bit
sbit   CF       =   CCON^7;  //PCA timer overflow flag
sfr    CMOD     =   0xD9;  //PCA mode register
sfr    CL       =   0xE9;  //PCA base timer LOW
sfr    CH       =   0xF9;  //PCA base timer HIGH
sfr    CCAPM0   =   0xDA;  //PCA module-0 mode register
sfr    CCAP0L   =   0xEA;  //PCA module-0 capture register LOW
sfr    CCAP0H   =   0xFA;  //PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
sfr    CCAPM1   =   0xDB;  //PCA module-1 mode register
sfr    CCAP1L   =   0xEB;  //PCA module-1 capture register LOW
sfr    CCAP1H   =   0xFB;  //PCA module-1 capture register HIGH
sfr    CCAPM2   =   0xDC;  //PCA module-2 mode register
sfr    CCAP2L   =   0xED;  //PCA module-2 capture register LOW
sfr    CCAP2H   =   0xFD;  //PCA module-2 capture register HIGH
sfr    CCAPM3   =   0xDD;  //PCA module-3 mode register
sfr    CCAP3L   =   0xFE;  //PCA module-3 capture register LOW
sfr    CCAP3H   =   0xFF;  //PCA module-3 capture register HIGH
sfr    PCAPWM0  =   0x22;  //PCA module-0 control register
sfr    PCAPWM1  =   0x23;  //PCA module-1 control register
sfr    PCAPWM2  =   0x24;  //PCA module-2 control register
sfr    PCAPWM3  =   0x25;  //PCA module-3 control register
void main()
{
    CCON = 0;                                   //Initial PCA control register
    //PCA timer stop running
    //Clear CF flag
    //Clear all module interrupt flag
    CL = 0;                                     //Reset PCA base timer
    CH = 0;
    CMOD = 0x02;                                //Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2
    //Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt
    CCAP0H = CCAP0L = 0x80;                     //PWM0 port output 50% duty cycle square wave
    CCPM0 = 0x42;                               //PCA module-0 work in 8-bit PWM mode
    //and no PCA interrupt
    CCAP1H = CCAP1L = 0xff;                    //PWM1 port output 0% duty cycle square wave
    PCAPWM1 = 0x03;                              //PCA module-1 work in 8-bit PWM mode
    //and no PCA interrupt
    CR = 1;                                     //PCA timer start run
    while (1);                                  //PCA timer start run
}
2. Assembly code listing:

*----------------------------------------*  
;/* --- STC MCU International Limited  */  
;/* --- STC 1T Series MCU PCA module output PWM wave Demo */  
;/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 */  
;/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 */  
;/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 */  
;/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com */  
;* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */  
;*/ *article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */  
;*--------------------------------------------------------------------------*/  

;*Declare SFR associated with the PCA */  
CON  EQU  0D8H             ;PCA control register  
CCF0 BIT  CCON.0            ;PCA module-0 interrupt flag  
CCF1 BIT  CCON.1            ;PCA module-1 interrupt flag  
CR BIT  CCON.6            ;PCA timer run control bit  
CF BIT  CCON.7            ;PCA timer overflow flag  
CMOD  EQU  0D9H              ;PCA mode register  
CL EQU  0E9H              ;PCA base timer LOW  
CH EQU  0F9H              ;PCA base timer HIGH  
CCAPM0 EQU  0DAH              ;PCA module-0 mode register  
CCAP0L EQU  0EAH              ;PCA module-0 capture register LOW  
CCAP0H EQU  0FAH              ;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH  
CCAPM1 EQU  0DBH             ;PCA module-1 mode register  
CCAP1L EQU  0EBH              ;PCA module-1 capture register LOW  
CCAP1H EQU  0FBH              ;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH  
CCAPM2 EQU  0ECH              ;PCA module-2 mode register  
CCAP2L EQU  0ECH              ;PCA module-2 capture register LOW  
CCAP2H EQU  0CH              ;PCA module-2 capture register HIGH  
CCAPM3 EQU  0DDH              ;PCA module-3 mode register  
CCAP3L EQU  0EDH              ;PCA module-3 capture register LOW  
CCAP3H EQU  0FDH              ;PCA module-3 capture register HIGH  

;----------------------------------------
ORG  0000H
LJMP  MAIN
;----------------------------------------

ORG  0100H
MAIN:

MOV  CCON, #0 ;Initial PCA control register  
                ;PCA timer stop running  
                ;Clear CF flag  
                ;Clear all module interrupt flag
CLR A
MOV CL, A
MOV CH, A
MOV CMOD, #02H

; Reset PCA base timer
; Set PCA timer clock source as Fosc/2
; Disable PCA timer overflow interrupt

MOV A, #080H
MOV CCAP0H, A
MOV CCAP0L, A
MOV CCAPM0, #42H

; PWM0 port output 50% duty cycle square wave
; PCA module-0 work in 8-bit PWM mode and no PCA interrupt

MOV A, #0C0H
MOV CCAP1H, A
MOV CCAP1L, A
MOV CCAPM1, #42H

; PWM1 port output 25% duty cycle square wave
; PCA module-1 work in 8-bit PWM mode and no PCA interrupt

SETB CR

; PCA timer start run

SJMP $

;PCA timer start run

END
10.8 Demo Program for PCA clock base on Timer 1 overflow rate

;*/-- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------------*/
;*/ --- STC 1T Series achieve adjustable frequency PWM output-----*/
;*/ --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ------------------------------------------*/
;*/ --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ----------------------------------------------*/
;*/ --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ------------------------------------------------*/
;*/ --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------*/
;*/ If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
;*/ article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
;*/--------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

;*/ Declare SFR associated with the ADC */
IPH EQU 0B7H ;Interrupt priority control register high byte
CCON EQU 0D8H ;PCA control register
CCF0 BIT CCON.0 ;PCA module-0 interrupt flag
CCF1 BIT CCON.1 ;PCA module-1 interrupt flag
CR BIT CCON.6 ;PCA timer run control bit
CF BIT CCON.7 ;PCA timer overflow flag
CMOD EQU 0D9H ;PCA mode register
CL EQU 0E9H ;PCA base timer LOW
CH EQU 0F9H ;PCA base timer HIGH
CCAPM0 EQU 0DAH ;PCA module-0 mode register
CCAP0L EQU 0EAH ;PCA module-0 capture register LOW
CCAP0H EQU 0FAH ;PCA module-0 capture register HIGH
CCAPM1 EQU 0DBH ;PCA module-1 mode register
CCAP1L EQU 0EBH ;PCA module-1 capture register LOW
CCAP1H EQU 0FBH ;PCA module-1 capture register HIGH

;*/ Define working LED */
LED_MCU_START EQU P1.7
LED_5ms_Flashing EQU P1.6
LED_1S_Flashing EQU P1.5

Channel_5mS_H EQU 01H ;PCA module-1 5ms counter high byte @ 18.432MHz
Channel_5mS_L EQU 00H ;PCA module-1 5ms counter low byte @ 18.432MHz
Timer0_Reload_1 EQU 0F6H ;Timer0 auto reload value (-10)
Timer0_Reload_2 EQU 0ECH ;Timer0 auto reload value (-20)
PWM_WIDTH EQU 0FFH ;low duty

Counter EQU 030H ;counter value
;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0000H
LJMP MAIN
ORG 003BH
LJMP PCA_interrupt

;-----------------------------------------

ORG 0050H

MAIN:
CLR LED_MCU_START ;Turn on MCU working LED
MOV SP,#7FH
MOV Counter,#0 ;initial Counter var
ACALL PAC_Initial ;initial PCA
ACALL Timer0_Initial ;Initial Timer0

MAIN_Loop:

;-------------------------------
MOV TH0,#Timer0_Reload_1 ;Set Timer0 overload rate 1
MOV TL0,#Timer0_Reload_1
MOV A,#PWM_WIDTH ;setting duty
MOV CCA0H,A
ACALL delay

MOV TH0,#Timer0_Reload_2 ;Set Timer0 overload rate 2
MOV TL0,#Timer0_Reload_2
ACALL delay

;-------------------------------
MOV TH0,#Timer0_Reload_1 ;Set Timer0 overload rate 1
MOV TL0,#Timer0_Reload_1
MOV A,#PWM_WIDTH
ACALL RL_A ;change duty
ACALL RL_A
MOV CCA0H,A
ACALL delay
MOV TH0,#Timer0_Reload_2 ;Set Timer0 overload rate 2
MOV TL0,#Timer0_Reload_2
ACALL delay

;-------------------------------
MOV TH0,#Timer0_Reload_1 ;Set Timer0 overload rate 1
MOV TL0,#Timer0_Reload_1
MOV A,#PWM_WIDTH
ACALL RL_A ;change duty
ACALL RL_A
ACALL RL_A
ACALL RL_A
MOV CCAP0H,A
ACALL delay
MOV TH0,#Timer0_Reload_2 ;Set Timer0 overload rate 2
MOV TL0,#Timer0_Reload_2
ACALL delay

;-----------------------------------------
SJMP MAIN_Loop
;-----------------------------------------
RL_A:
CLR C
RRC A
RET

;-----------------------------------------
Timer0_Initial:
MOV TMOD,#02H ;8-bit auto-reload
MOV TH0,#Timer0_Reload_1
MOV TL0,#Timer0_Reload_1
SETB TR0 ;strat run
RET

;-----------------------------------------
PCA_Initial:
MOV CMOD,#10000100B ;PCA timer base on Timer0
MOV CCON,#00H ;PCA stop count
MOV CL,#0 ;initial PCA counter
MOV CH,#0
MOV CCAPM0,#42H ;PCA module-0 as 8-bit PWM
MOV PCA_PWM0,#0 ;PWM mode 9th bit
MOV PCA_PWM0,#03H ;PWM will keep low level
MOV CCAP1L,#Channel_5mS_L ;initial PCA module-1
MOV CCAP1H,#Channel_5mS_H
MOV CCAPM1,#49H ;PCA module-1 as 16-bit timer
SETB EA
SETB CR ;PCA counter start running
RET
;----------------------------------------------------------

PCA_Interrupt:
PUSH ACC
PUSH PSW
CPL LED_5mS_Flashing ;Flashing once per 5ms
MOV A,#Channel_5mS_L
ADD A,CCAP1L
MOV CCAP1L,A
MOV A,#Channel_5mS_H
ADDC A,CCAP1H
MOV CCAP1H,A
CLR CCF1 ;Clear PCA module-1 flag

INC Counter
MOV A,Counter
CLR C
SUBB A,#100 ;Count 100 times
JC PCA_Interrupt_Exit
MOV Counter,#0
CPL LED_1S,Flash

PCA_Interrupt_Exit:
POP PSW
POP ACC
RETI

;----------------------------------------------------------
delay:
CLR A
MOV R1,A
MOV R2,A
MOV R3,#80H
delay_loop:
NOP
NOP
NOP
DJNZ R1,delay_loop
DJNZ R2,delay_loop
DJNZ R3,delay_loop
RET

;----------------------------------------------------------
END
10.9 Using PWM achieve D/A Conversion function reference circuit
Chapter 11. Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

STC12C5410AD provides another high-speed serial communication interface, the SPI interface. SPI is a full-duplex, high-speed, synchronous communication bus with two operation modes: Master mode and Slave mode. Up to 3Mbit/s can be supported in either Master or Slave mode under the SYSclk=12MHz. Two status flags are provided to signal the transfer completion and write-collision occurrence.

11.1 Special Function Registers related with SPI

### SPI Management SFRs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit address and Symbol</th>
<th>Reset Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPCTL</td>
<td>SPI Control Register</td>
<td>85H</td>
<td>B7, B6, B5, B4, B3, B2, B1, B0</td>
<td>0000,0100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPSTAT</td>
<td>SPI Status Register</td>
<td>84H</td>
<td>SPIF, WCOL</td>
<td>00xx,xxxxxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPDAT</td>
<td>SPI Data Register</td>
<td>86H</td>
<td></td>
<td>0000,0000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 1. SPI Control register: SPCTL (Non bit-addressable)

- **SSIG**: Control whether SS pin is ignored or not.
  - If SSIG=1, MSTR(SPCTL.4) decides whether the device is a master or slave.
  - If SSIG=0, the SS pin decides whether the device is a master or slave. SS pin can be used as I/O port.

- **SPEN**: SPI enable bit.
  - If SPEN=0, the SPI interface is disabled and all SPI pins will be general-purpose I/O ports.
  - If SPEN=1, the SPI is enabled.

- **DORD**: Set the transmitted or received SPI data order.
  - If DORD=1, The LSB of the data word is transmitted first.
  - If DORD=0, The MSB of the data word is transmitted first.

- **MSTR**: Master/Slave mode select bit.
  - If MSTR=0, set the SPI to play as Slave part.
  - If MSTR=1, set the SPI to play as Master part.

- **CPOL**: SPI clock polarity select bit.
  - If CPOL=1, SPICLK is high level when in idle mode. The leading edge of SPICLK is the falling edge and the trailing edge is the rising edge.
  - If CPOL=0, SPICLK is low when idle. The leading edge of SPICLK is the rising edge and the trailing edge is the falling edge.

- **CPHA**: SPI clock phase select bit.
  - If CPHA=1, Data is driven on the leading edge of SPICLK, and is sampled on the trailing edge.
  - If CPHA=0, Data is driven when SS pin is low (SSIG=0) and changes on the trailing edge of SPICLK. Data is sampled on the leading edge of SPICLK. (Note: If SSIG=1, CPHA must not be 0, otherwise the operation is undefined)
**SPR1-SPR0**: SPI clock rate select bit (when in master mode)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPR1</th>
<th>SPR0</th>
<th>SPI clock (SCLK)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CPU_CLK/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CPU_CLK/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>CPU_CLK/64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>CPU_CLK/128</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CPU_CLK is CPU clock.

When CPHA equals 0, SSIG must be 0 and SS pin must be negated and reasserted between each successive serial byte transfer. If the SPDAT register is written while SS is active(0), a write collision error results and WCOL is set.

When CPHA equals 1, SSIG may be 0 or 1. If SSIG=0, the SS pin may remain active low between successive transfers(can be tied low at any times). This format is sometimes preferred for use in systems having a single fixed master and a single slave configuration.

2. **SPI State register: SPSTAT** (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPSTAT</td>
<td>CDH</td>
<td></td>
<td>SPIF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WCOL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SPIF**: SPI transfer completion flag.

When a serial transfer finishes, the SPIF bit is set and an interrupt is generated if all the EADC_SPI (IE.6) bit, ESPI bit (AUXR.3) and the EA (IE.7) bit are set. If SS is an input and is driven low when SPI is in master mode with SSIG = 0, SPIF will also be set to signal the “mode change”. The SPIF is cleared in software by “writing 1 to this bit”.

**WCOL**: SPI write collision flag.

The WCOL bit is set if the SPI data register, SPDAT, is written during a data transfer. The WCOL flag is cleared in software by “writing 1 to this bit”.

3. **SPI Data register : SPDAT** (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPDAT</td>
<td>CFH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The SFR SPDAT holds the data to be transmitted or the data received.
5. Registers related with SPI interrupt : IE, AUXR, IP and IPH

IE: Interrupt Enable Register (Bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>A8H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EA :  enables all interrupts.
If EA = 0, no interrupt will be acknowledged.
If EA = 1, each interrupt source is individually enabled or disabled by setting or clearing its enable bit.

EADC_SPI : Interrupt controller of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).
If EADC_SPI = 0, Disable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).
If EADC_SPI = 1, Enable the interrupt of Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC).

AUXR: Auxiliary register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td></td>
<td>T0x12</td>
<td>T1x12</td>
<td>UART_M0x6</td>
<td>EADC1</td>
<td>ESPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ELVDI : Enable/Disable interrupt from low-voltage sensor
0 : (default) Inhibit the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the low-voltage sensor functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

ESPI : Enable/Disable interrupt from Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
0 : (default) Inhibit the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the SPI functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

EADC1 : Enable/Disable interrupt from A/D converter
0 : (default) Inhibit the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU
1 : Enable the ADC functional block to generate interrupt to the MCU

IPH: Interrupt Priority High Register (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IPH</td>
<td>B7H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PADC_SPIH, PADC_SPI : Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt priority control bits.
if PADC_SPIH = 0 and PADC_SPI = 0, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority (priority 0).
if PADC_SPIH = 0 and PADC_SPI = 1, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority (priority 1).
if PADC_SPIH = 1 and PADC_SPI = 0, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority (priority 2).
if PADC_SPIH = 1 and PADC_SPI = 1, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) and A/D Converter (ADC) interrupt are assigned lowest priority (priority 3).
11.2 SPI Structure

The SPI interface has three pins implementing the SPI functionality: SCLK(P1.7), MISO(P1.6), MOSI(P1.5). An extra pin SS(P1.4) is designed to configure the SPI to run under Master or Slave mode. SCLK, MOSI and MISO are typically tied together between two or more SPI devices. Data flows from master to slave on MOSI(Master Out Slave In) pin and flows from slave to master on MISO(Master In Slave Out) pin. The SCLK signal is output in the master mode and is input in the slave mode. If the SPI system is disabled, i.e, SPEN(SPCTL.6)=0, these pins are configured as general-purposed I/O port(P1.4 ~ P1.7).

SS is the slave select pin. In a typical configuration, an SPI master asserts one of its port pins to select one SPI device as the current slave. An SPI slave device uses its SS pin to determine whether it is selected. But if SPEN=0 or SSIG(SPCTL.7) bit is 1, the SS pin is ignored. Note that even if the SPI is configured as a master(MSTR/SPCTL.4=1), it can still be converted to a slave by driving the SS pin low. When the conversion happened, the SPIF bit(SPSTAT.7) will be set.

Two devices with SPI interface communicate with each other via one synchronous clock signal, one input data signal, and one output data signal. There are two concerns the user should take care, one of them is latching data on the negative edge or positive edge of the clock signal which named polarity, the other is keeping the clock signal low or high while the device idle which named phase. Permuting those states from polarity and phase, there could be four modes formed, they are SPI-MODE-0, SPI-MODE-1, SPI-MODE-2, SPI-MODE-3. Many device declares that they meet SPI machanism, but few of them are adaptive to all four modes. The STC12C5A60S2 series are flexible to be configured to communicate to another device with MODE-0, MODE-1, MODE-2 or MODE-3 SPI, and play part of Master and Slave.
11.3 SPI Data Communication

11.3.1 SPI Configuration

When SPI data communication, SPEN, SSIG, SS(P1.4) and MSTR jointly control the selection of master and slave.

Table: SPI master and slave selection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPEN</th>
<th>SSIG</th>
<th>SS (P1.4)</th>
<th>MSTR</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>MISO (P1.6)</th>
<th>MOSI (P1.5)</th>
<th>SPICLK (P1.7)</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>P1.4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>SPI disable</td>
<td>GPI/O P1.6</td>
<td>GPI/O P1.5</td>
<td>GPI/O P1.7</td>
<td>SPI is disabled. P1.4/P1.5/P1.6/P1.7 as GPIO.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Selected slave</td>
<td>output</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>Selected as slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Unselected slave</td>
<td>Hi-Z</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>Not selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1-&gt;0</td>
<td>slave</td>
<td>output</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>Convert from Master to Slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Master (idle)</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>high-impedance</td>
<td>high-impedance</td>
<td>MOSI and SCLK are in high-impedance state in order to avoid bus clash when master is idle. Whether is SCLK pulled up or pulled down depends on CPOL/SPCTL.3. But it do not be allowed that SCLK is suspended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P1.4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>slave</td>
<td>output</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>Slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>P1.4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Master</td>
<td>input</td>
<td>output</td>
<td>output</td>
<td>Master</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.3.2 SPI Data Communication Modes

There are 3 SPI data communication modes: single master — single slave, dual devices configuration (both can be a master or slave) and single master — multiple slaves.

**SPI single master — single slave configuration**

**SPI dual device configuration, both can be a master or slave**

**SPI single master multiple slaves configuration**
In SPI, transfers are always initiated by the master. If the SPI is enabled (SPEN=1) and selected as master, any instruction that use SPI data register SPDAT as the destination will starts the SPI clock generator and a data transfer. The data will start to appear on MOSI about one half SPI bit-time to one SPI bit-time after it. Before starting the transfer, the master may select a slave by driving the SS pin of the corresponding device low. Data written to the SPDAT register of the master shifted out of MOSI pin of the master to the MOSI pin of the slave. And at the same time the data in SPDAT register of the selected slave is shifted out of MISO pin to the MISO pin of the master. During one byte transfer, data in the master and in the slave is interchanged. After shifting one byte, the transfer completion flag (SPIF) is set and an interrupt will be created if the SPI interrupt is enabled.

If SPEN=1, SSIG=0, SS pin=1 and MSTR=1, the SPI is enabled in master mode. Before the instruction that use SPDAT as the destination register, the master is in idle state and can be selected as slave device by any other master drives the idle master SS pin low. Once this happened, MSTR bit of the idle master is cleared by hardware and changes its state a selected slave. User software should always check the MSTR bit. If this bit is cleared by the mode change of SS pin and the user wants to continue to use the SPI as a master later, the user must set the MSTR bit again, otherwise it will always stay in slave mode.

The SPI is single buffered in transmit direction and double buffered in receive direction. New data for transmission can not be written to the shift register until the previous transaction is complete. The WCOL bit is set to signal data collision when the data register is written during transaction. In this case, the data currently being transmitted will continue to be transmitted, but the new data which causing the collision will be lost. For receiving data, received data is transferred into a internal parallel read data buffer so that the shift register is free to accept a second byte. However, the received byte must be read from the data register (SPDAT) before the next byte has been completely transferred. Otherwise the previous byte is lost. WCOL can be cleared in software by “writing 1 to the bit”.
11.3.3 SPI Data Modes

CPHA/SPCTL.2 is SPI clock phase select bit which is used to setting the clock edge of Data sample and change. CPOL/SPCTL.3 is used to select SPI clock polarity.

The following are some typical timing diagrams which depend on the value of CPHA/SPCTL.2

![SPI slave transfer format with CPHA=0]

![SPI slave transfer format with CPHA=1]
SPI master transfer format with CPHA=0

SPI master transfer format with CPHA=1

*When P4SPI bit in AUXR1 register is set, the function of SPI is redirected from P3[7:4] to P4[7:4] pin by pin.
11.4 SPI Function Demo Programs (Single Master — Single Slave)

11.4.1 SPI Function Demo Programs using Interrupts (C and ASM)

The following program, written in C language and assembly language, tests SPI function and applies to SPI single master single slave configuration.

1. C code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"

#define MASTER                     //define:master undefine:slave
#define FOSC    18432000L
#define BAUD (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)
typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
typedef unsigned long DWORD;

sfr AUXR   =   0x8e;          //Auxiliary register
sfr SPSTAT  =   0x84;          //SPI status register
#define SPIF  0x80           //SPSTAT.7
#define WCOL  0x40           //SPSTAT.6
sfr SPCTL  =   0x85;          //SPI control register
#define SSIG   0x80           //SPCTL.7
#define SPEN     0x40           //SPCTL.6
#define DORD    0x20           //SPCTL.5
#define MSTR    0x10           //SPCTL.4
#define CPOL    0x08           //SPCTL.3
#define CPHA    0x04           //SPCTL.2
#define SPDHH   0x00           //CPU_CLK/4
#define SPDH    0x01           //CPU_CLK/16
#define SPDL    0x02           //CPU_CLK/64
#define SPDLL   0x03           //CPU_CLK/128
sfr SPDAT  =   0x86;          //SPI data register
sbit SPISS      =   P1^3;          //SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
#define ESPI  0x08;          //AUXR.3
```

STC MCU Limited.

website: www.STCMCU.com
void InitUart();
void InitSPI();
void SendUart(BYTE dat); //send data to PC
BYTE RecvUart(); //receive data from PC

void main()
{
    InitUart(); //initial UART
    InitSPI(); //initial SPI
    AUXR |= ESPI;
    EADC_SPI = 1;
    EA = 1;

    while (1)
    {
        #ifdef MASTER //for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave,
                       //in the meantime receive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
            ACC = RecvUart();
            SPISS = 0;  //pull low slave SS
            SPDAT = ACC; //trigger SPI send
        #endif
    }
}

void spi_isr() interrupt 5 using 1 //SPI interrupt routine 5 (002BH)
{
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL; //clear SPI status
    #ifdef MASTER
        SPISS = 1; //push high slave SS
        SendUart(SPDAT); //return received SPI data
    #else
        SPDAT = SPDAT; //for slave (receive SPI data from master and
                        //        send previous SPI data to master)
    #endif
}

}
void InitUart()
{}
    SCON = 0x5a;                  //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
    TMOD = 0x20;                  //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
    AUXR = 0x40;                  //timer1 work at 1T mode
    TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;             //115200 bps
    TR1 = 1;

void InitSPI()
{}
    SPDAT = 0;                    //initial SPI data
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;        //clear SPI status
#ifdef MASTER
    SPCTL = SPEN | MSTR;         //master mode
#else
    SPCTL = SPEN;                 //slave mode
#endif

void SendUart(BYTE dat)
{}
    while (!TI);                  //wait pre-data sent
    TI = 0;                       //clear TI flag
    SBUF = dat;                   //send current data

BYTE RecvUart()
{}
    while (!RI);                  //wait receive complete
    RI = 0;                       //clear RI flag
    return SBUF;                  //return receive data
2. Assembly code listing:

```assembly
#ifdef MASTER
//define: master
#else
//define: slave
#endif

AUXR DATA 08EH ;Auxiliary register
SPSTAT DATA 084H ;SPI status register
SPIF EQU 080H ;SPSTAT.7
WCOL EQU 040H ;SPSTAT.6
SPCTL DATA 085H ;SPI control register
SSIG EQU 080H ;SPCTL.7
SPEN EQU 040H ;SPCTL.6
DORD EQU 020H ;SPCTL.5
MSTR EQU 010H ;SPCTL.4
CPOL EQU 008H ;SPCTL.3
CPHA EQU 004H ;SPCTL.2
SPDH EQU 000H ;CPU_CLK/4
SPDL EQU 001H ;CPU_CLK/16
SPDLL EQU 002H ;CPU_CLK/64
SPDAT DATA 086H ;SPI data register
SPISS BIT P1.3 ;SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
EADC_SPI BIT IE.5
ESPI EQU 08H ;AUXR.3

;oming code
ORG 0000H
LJMP RESET

ORG 002BH ;SPI interrupt routine 5(2BH)
SPI_ISR:
PUSH ACC
PUSH PSW
MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ;clear SPI status
```

//define MASTER
//define: master undefined: slave
#ifdef MASTER
    SETB SPISS ;push high slave SS
    MOV A, SPDAT ;return received SPI data
    LCALL SEND_UART
#else
    //for slave (receive SPI data from master and
    MOV SPDAT, SPDAT ;send previous SPI data to master)
#endif
POP PSW
POP ACC
RETI

;////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

ORG 0100H

RESET:
    LCALL INIT_UART ;initial UART
    LCALL INIT_SPI ;initial SPI
    ORL AUXR, #ESPI ;enable SPI interrupt
    SETB EADC_SPI
    SETB EA

MAIN:
#ifdef MASTER
    //for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave,
    LCALL RECV_UART ;in the meantime receive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
    CLR SPISS ;pull low slave SS
    MOV SPDAT, A ;trigger SPI send
#endif

SJMP MAIN

;////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

INIT_UART:
    MOV SCON, #5AH ;set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
    MOV TMOD, #20H ;timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
    MOV AUXR, #40H ;timer1 work at 1T mode
    MOV TL1, #0FBH ;115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
    MOV TH1, #0FBH
    SETB TR1
    RET

;////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
INIT_SPI:
    MOV    SPDAT, #0     ;initial SPI data
    MOV    SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ;clear SPI status
#ifdef MASTER
    MOV    SPCTL, #SPEN | MSTR ;master mode
#else
    MOV    SPCTL, #SPEN ;slave mode
#endif
    RET

; //////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

SEND_UART:
    JNB      TI, $ ;wait pre-data sent
    CLR      TI ;clear TI flag
    MOV      SBUF, A ;send current data
    RET

; //////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

RECV_UART:
    JNB      RI,$ ;wait receive complete
    CLR      RI ;clear RI flag
    MOV      A, SBUF ;return receive data
    RET
    RET

; //////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

END
11.4.2 SPI Function Demo Programs using Polling (C and ASM)

1. C code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"

#define MASTER                     //define:master undefine:slave
#define FOSC         18432000L
#define BAUD         (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)

typedef unsigned char        BYTE;
typedef unsigned int         WORD;
typedef unsigned long        DWORD;

sfr   AUXR  =   0x8e;          //Auxiliary register
sfr  SPSTAT  =   0x84;          //SPI status register
#define SPIF 0x80                  //SPSTAT.7
#define WCOL 0x40                  //SPSTAT.6
sfr  SPCTL   =   0x85;          //SPI control register
#define SSIG     0x80               //SPCTL.7
#define SPEN     0x40               //SPCTL.6
#define DORD 0x20                   //SPCTL.5
#define MSTR    0x10                //SPCTL.4
#define CPOL   0x08                   //SPCTL.3
#define CPHA   0x04                   //SPCTL.2
#define SPDHH   0x00                   //CPU_CLK/4
#define SPDH    0x01                   //CPU_CLK/16
#define SPDLL   0x03                   //CPU_CLK/64
#define SPDAT   0x86                   //SPI data register
sbit  SPISS      =   P1^3;          //SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin

void  InitUart();
void  InitSPI();
void  SendUart(BYTE dat);           //send data to PC
BYTE  RecvUart();                   //receive data from PC
BYTE  SPISSwap(BYTE dat);           //swap SPI data between master and slave
```
void main()
{
    InitUart();                //initial UART
    InitSPI();                 //initial SPI

    while (1)
    {
        #ifdef MASTER        //for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave,
            //in the meantime receive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
            SendUart(SPISwap(RecvUart()));
        #else                //for slave (receive SPI data from master and
            //send previous SPI data to master)
            ACC = SPISwap(ACC); //send previous SPI data to master
        #endif
    }
}

void InitUart()
{
    SCON = 0x5a;                //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
    TMOD = 0x20;                //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
    AUXR = 0x40;                //timer1 work at 1T mode
    TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;          //115200 bps
    TR1 = 1;
}

void InitSPI()
{
    SPDAT = 0;                  //initialize SPI data
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;       //clear SPI status
    #ifdef MASTER
        SPCTL = SPEN | MSTR; //master mode
    #else
        SPCTL = SPEN;      //slave mode
    #endif
}
void SendUart(BYTE dat)
{
    while (!TI);                  //wait pre-data sent
    TI = 0;                       //clear TI flag
    SBUF = dat;                   //send current data
}

BYTE RecvUart()
{
    while (!RI);                  //wait receive complete
    RI = 0;                       //clear RI flag
    return SBUF;                  //return receive data
}

BYTE SPISwap(BYTE dat)
{
    #ifdef MASTER
    SPISS = 0;                    //pull low slave SS
    #endif
    SPDAT = dat;                  //trigger SPI send
    while (!(SPSTAT & SPIF));     //wait send complete
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;        //clear SPI status
    #ifdef MASTER
    SPISS = 1;                    //push high slave SS
    #endif
    return SPDAT;                 //return received SPI data
}
2. Assembly code listing:

```assembly
//#define MASTER //define:master undefine:slave

AUXR    DATA     08EH             ;Auxiliary register
SPSTAT  DATA     084H              ;SPI status register
SPIF    EQU      080H              ;SPSTAT.7
WCOL    EQU      040H              ;SPSTAT.6
SPCTL   DATA     085H              ;SPI control register
SSIG    EQU      080H              ;SPCTL.7
SPEN    EQU      040H              ;SPCTL.6
DORD    EQU      020H              ;SPCTL.5
MSTR    EQU      010H              ;SPCTL.4
CPOL    EQU      008H              ;SPCTL.3
CPHA    EQU      004H              ;SPCTL.2
SPDHH   EQU      000H              ;CPU_CLK/4
SPDH    EQU      001H              ;CPU_CLK/16
SPDL    EQU      002H              ;CPU_CLK/64
SPDLL   EQU      003H              ;CPU_CLK/128
SPDAT   DATA     086H              ;SPI data register
SPISS   BIT    P1.3              ;SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin

;///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

ORG      0000H
LJMP     RESET
ORG      0100H

RESET:
LCALL    INIT_UART ;initial UART
LCALL    INIT_SPI  ;initial SPI
```
MAIN:
#ifdef MASTE
   // for master (receive UART data from PC and send it to slave, in the meantime
   LCALL RECV_UART ; receive SPI data from slave and send it to PC)
   LCALL SPI_SWAP
   LCALL SEND_UART
#else
   // for slave (receive SPI data from master and
   ; send previous SPI data to master)
#endif
SJMP MAIN

;/////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

INIT_UART:
   MOV SCON, #5AH ; set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
   MOV TMOD, #20H ; timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
   MOV AUXR, #40H ; timer1 work at 1T mode
   MOV TL1, #0FBH ; 115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
   MOV TH1, #0FBH
   SETB TR1
   RET

;/////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

INIT_SPI:
   MOV SPDAT, #0 ; initial SPI data
   MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ; clear SPI status
#ifdef MASTER
   MOV SPCTL, #SPEN | MSTR ; master mode
#else
   MOV SPCTL, #SPEN ; slave mode
#endif
RET

;/////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

SEND_UART:
   JNB TI, $ ; wait pre-data sent
   CLR TI ; clear TI flag
   MOV SBUF, A ; send current data
   RET

;/////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
RECV_UART:
    JNB  RI,   $              ;wait receive complete
    CLR  RI                 ;clear RI flag
    MOV  A,  SBUF            ;return receive data
    RET
    RET

;/////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

SPI_SWAP:
#ifdef MASTER
    CLR  SPISS              ;pull low slave SS
#endif
    MOV  SPDAT,  A          ;trigger SPI send
    WAIT:
        MOV  A,  SPSTAT     
        JNB  ACC.7,  WAIT   ;wait send complete
        MOV  SPSTAT,  #SPIF | WCOL    ;clear SPI status
#ifdef MASTER
    SETB  SPISS             ;push high slave SS
#endif
    #endif
        MOV  A,  SPDAT     ;return received SPI data
    #endif
    RET
    ...

;/////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

END
11.5 SPI Function Demo Programs (Each other as the Master-Slave)

11.5.1 SPI Function Demo Programs using Interrupts (C and ASM)

1. C code listing:

```c
#include "reg51.h"
#define FOSC  18432000L
#define BAUD  (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)
typedef  unsigned  char  BYTE;
typedef  unsigned  int  WORD;
typedef  unsigned  long  DWORD;
sfr   AUXR  =   0x8e;          //Auxiliary register
sfr   SPSTAT  =   0x84;          //SPI status register
#define  SPIF           0x80           //SPSTAT.7
#define  WCOL        0x40           //SPSTAT.6
sfr   SPCTL  =   0x85;          //SPI control register
#define  SSIG  0x80           //SPCTL.7
#define  SPEN  0x40           //SPCTL.6
#define  DORD 0x20           //SPCTL.5
#define  MSTR   0x10           //SPCTL.4
#define  CPOL  0x08           //SPCTL.3
#define  CPHA  0x04           //SPCTL.2
#define  SPDHH 0x00           //CPU_CLK/4
#define  SPDH   0x01           //CPU_CLK/16
#define  SPDL  0x02           //CPU_CLK/64
#define  SPDLL 0x03           //CPU_CLK/128
sfr   SPDAT  =    0x86;          //SPI data register
sbit  SPISS   =    P1^3;        //SPI slave select, connect to other MCU's SS(P1.4) pin
sbit  EADC_SPI   =   IE^5;        //SPI slave select, connect to other MCU's SS(P1.4) pin
#define  ESPI        0x08;         //AUXR.3
```
void InitUart();
void InitSPI();
void SendUart(BYTE dat); //send data to PC
BYTE RecvUart(); //receive data from PC

bit MSSEL; //1: master 0:slave

void main()
{
    InitUart(); //initial UART
    InitSPI();  //initial SPI
    AUXR |= ESPI;
    EADC_SPI = 1;
    EA = 1;

    while (1)
    {
        if (RI)
        {
            SPCTL = SPEN | MSTR; //set as master
            MSSEL = 1;
            ACC = RecvUart();
            SPISS = 0; //pull low slave SS
            SPDAT = ACC; //trigger SPI send
        }
    }
}

void spi_isr( ) interrupt 5 using 1 //SPI interrupt routine 5 (002BH)
{
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL; //clear SPI status
    if (MSSEL)
    {
        SPCTL = SPEN;
        MSSEL = 0;
        SPISS = 1;
        SendUart(SPDAT); //push high slave SS
        //return received SPI data
    }
    else
    {
        SPDAT = SPDAT; //for salve (receive SPI data from master and
        // send previous SPI data to master)
    }
}
void InitUart()
{
    SCON = 0x5a;                     //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
    TMOD = 0x20;                    //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
    AUXR = 0x40;                    //timer1 work at 1T mode
    TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;               //115200 bps
    TR1 = 1;
}

void InitSPI()
{
    SPDAT = 0;                      //initial SPI data
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;           //clear SPI status
    SPCTL = SPEN;                   //slave mode
}

void SendUart(BYTE dat)
{
    while (!TI);                   //wait pre-data sent
    TI = 0;                        //clear TI flag
    SBUF = dat;                    //send current data
}

BYTE RecvUart()
{
    while (!RI);                   //wait receive complete
    RI = 0;                        //clear RI flag
    return SBUF;                   //return receive data
}
2. Assembly code listing:

/*-----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited ------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC12C5Axx Series MCU SPI Demo(Each other as the master-slave) */
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 ---------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/* *-----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

AUXR DATA 08EH ;Auxiliary register
SPSTAT DATA 084H ;SPI status register
SPIF EQU 080H ;SPIF 7
WCOL EQU 040H ;SPIF 6
SPCTL DATA 085H ;SPI control register
SSIG EQU 080H ;SPCTL 7
SPEN EQU 040H ;SPCTL 6
DORD EQU 020H ;SPCTL 5
MSTR EQU 010H ;SPCTL 4
CPOL EQU 008H ;SPCTL 3
CPHA EQU 004H ;SPCTL 2
SPDHH EQU 000H ;CPU_CLK 4
SPDH EQU 001H ;CPU_CLK 16
SPDL EQU 002H ;CPU_CLK 64
SPDLL EQU 003H ;CPU_CLK 128
SPDAT DATA 086H ;SPI data register
SPISS BIT P1.3 ;SPI slave select, connect to other MCU's SS(P1.4) pin
EADC_SPI BIT IE.5
ESPI EQU 08H ;AUXR 3
MSSEL BIT 20H.0 ;1: master 0:slave

;/////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////}

ORG 0000H
LJMP RESET

ORG 002BH ;SPI interrupt routine

SPI_ISR:
PUSH ACC
PUSH PSW
MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ;clear SPI status
JBC MSSEL, MASTER_SEND
SLAVE_RECV:

//for slave (receive SPI data from master and send previous SPI data to master)

MOV SPDAT, SPDAT
JMP SPI_EXIT

MASTER_SEND:

SETB SPISS ;push high slave SS
MOV SPCTL, #SPEN ;reset as slave
MOV A, SPDAT ;return received SPI data
LCALL SEND_UART

SPI_EXIT:

POP PSW
POP ACC
RETI

;///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

ORG 0100H

RESET:

MOV SP,#3FH
LCALL INIT_UART ;initial UART
LCALL INIT_SPI ;initial SPI
ORL AUXR, #ESPI
SETB EADC_SPI
SETB EA

MAIN:

JNB RI, $ ;wait UART data
MOV SPCTL, #SPEN | MSTR ;set as master
SETB MSSEL
LCALL RECEV_UART ;receive UART data from PC
CLR SPISS ;pull low slave SS
MOV SPDAT, A ;trigger SPI send
SJMP MAIN

;///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

INIT_UART:

MOV SCON, #5AH ;set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
MOV TMOD, #20H ;timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
MOV AUXR, #40H ;timer1 work at 1T mode
MOV TL1, #0FBH ;115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
MOV TH1, #0FBH
SETB TR1
RET
INIT_SPI:
    MOV SPDAT, #0    ; initial SPI data
    MOV SPSTAT, #SPIF | WCOL ; clear SPI status
    MOV SPCTL, #SPEN   ; slave mode
    RET

SEND_UART:
    JNB TI, $      ; wait pre-data sent
    CLR TI        ; clear TI flag
    MOV SBUF, A   ; send current data
    RET

RECV_UART:
    JNB RI, $      ; wait receive complete
    CLR RI         ; clear RI flag
    MOV A, SBUF   ; return receive data
    RET
    RET

END
11.5.2 SPI Function Demo Programs using Polling

1. C code listing:

/*---------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC12C5Axx Series MCU SPI Demo(Each other as the master-slave) --*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*-----------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

#include "reg51.h"

#define FOSC 18432000L
#define BAUD (256 - FOSC / 32 / 115200)

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;
typedef unsigned long DWORD;

sfr AUXR = 0x8e; //Auxiliary register

sfr SPSTAT = 0x84; //SPI status register
#define SPIF 0x80 //SPSTAT.7
#define WCOL 0x40 //SPSTAT.6

sfr SPCTL = 0x85; //SPI control register
#define SSIG 0x80 //SPCTL.7
#define SPEN 0x40 //SPCTL.6
#define DORD 0x20 //SPCTL.5
#define MSTR 0x10 //SPCTL.4
#define CPOL 0x08 //SPCTL.3
#define CPHA 0x04 //SPCTL.2
#define SPDHH 0x00 //CPU_CLK/4
#define SPDH 0x01 //CPU_CLK/16
#define SPD 0x02 //CPU_CLK/64
#define SPDLL 0x03 //CPU_CLK/128

sfr SPDAT = 0x86; //SPI data register
sbit SPISS = P1^3; //SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin

void InitUart();
void InitSPI();
void SendUart(BYTE dat); //send data to PC
BYTE RecvUart(); //receive data from PC
BYTE SPIISwap(BYTE dat); //swap SPI data between master
void main()
{
    InitUart();    //initial UART
    InitSPI();    //initial SPI

    while (1)
    {
        if (RI)
        {
            SPCTL = SPEN | MSTR;   //set as master
            SendUart(SPISwap(RecvUart()));
            SPCTL = SPEN;   //reset as slave
        }
        if (SPSTAT & SPIF)
        {
            SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL; //clear SPI status
            SPDAT = SPDAT;  //mov data from receive buffer to send buffer
        }
    }
}

void InitUart()
{
    SCON = 0x5a;                   //set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
    TMOD = 0x20;                   //timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
    AUXR = 0x40;                   //timer1 work at 1T mode
    TH1 = TL1 = BAUD;              //115200 bps
    TR1 = 1;
}

void InitSPI()
{
    SPDAT = 0;                     //initial SPI data
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;         //clear SPI status
    SPCTL = SPEN;                  //slave mode
void SendUart(BYTE dat)
{
    while (!TI);               //wait pre-data sent
    TI = 0;                     //clear TI flag
    SBUF = dat;                 //send current data
}

BYTE RecvUart()
{
    while (!RI);               //wait receive complete
    RI = 0;                     //clear RI flag
    return SBUF;                //return receive data
}

BYTE SPISwap(BYTE dat)
{
    SPISS = 0;                  //pull low slave SS
    SPDAT = dat;                //trigger SPI send
    while (!(SPSTAT & SPIF));   //wait send complete
    SPSTAT = SPIF | WCOL;       //clear SPI status
    SPISS = 1;                  //push high slave SS
    return SPDAT;               //return received SPI data
}
2. Assemly code listing:

```assembly
;Auxiliary register
AUXR DATA 08EH

;SPI status register
SPSTAT DATA 084H

;SPI status register
SPIF EQU 080H

;SPI status register
WCOL EQU 040H

;SPI control register
SPCTL DATA 085H

;SPI control register
SSIG EQU 080H

;SPI control register
SPEN EQU 040H

;SPI control register
DORD EQU 020H

;SPI control register
MSTR EQU 010H

;SPI control register
CPOL EQU 008H

;SPI control register
CPHA EQU 004H

;CPU_CLK/4
SPDHH EQU 000H

;CPU_CLK/16
SPDH EQU 001H

;CPU_CLK/64
SPDL EQU 002H

;CPU_CLK/128
SPDLL EQU 003H

;SPI data register
SPDAT DATA 086H

;SPI slave select, connect to slave' SS(P1.4) pin
SPISS BIT P1.3

;-------------------------------------------------------------
ORG 0000H
LJMP RESET
ORG 0100H
RESET:
LCALL INIT_UART ;initial UART
LCALL INIT_SPI ;initial SPI
MAIN:
JB RI, MASTER_MODE
```

SLAVE_MODE:
    MOV    A,    SPSTAT
    JNB    ACC.7,    MAIN
    MOV    SPSTAT,    #SPIF | WCOL         ;clear SPI status
    MOV    SPDAT,    SPDAT             ;return received SPI data
    SJMP    MAIN

MASTER_MODE:
    MOV    SPCTL,    #SPEN | MSTR        ;set as master
    LCALL   RECV_UART     ;receive UART data from PC
    LCALL   SPI_SWAP          ;send it to slave, in the meantime, receive SPI data from slave
    LCALL   SEND_UART         ;send SPI data to PC
    MOV    SPCTL,    #SPEN     ;reset as slave
    SJMP    MAIN

;///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
INIT_UART:
    MOV    SCON,    #5AH         ;set UART mode as 8-bit variable baudrate
    MOV    TMOD,    #20H        ;timer1 as 8-bit auto reload mode
    MOV    AUXR,    #40H        ;timer1 work at 1T mode
    MOV    TL1,    #0FBH        ;115200 bps(256 - 18432000 / 32 / 115200)
    MOV    TH1,    #0FBH
    SETB    TR1
    RET

;///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
INIT_SPI:
    MOV    SPDAT,    #0        ;initial SPI data
    MOV    SPSTAT,    #SPIF | WCOL         ;clear SPI status
    MOV    SPCTL,    #SPEN        ;slave mode
    RET

;///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
SEND_UART:
    JNB    TI,    $             ;wait pre-data sent
    CLR    TI                  ;clear TI flag
    MOV    SBUF,    A           ;send current data
    RET
RECV_UART:
\[\text{JNB} \ RI, \ S\] ;wait receive complete
\[\text{CLR} \ RI\] ;clear RI flag
\[\text{MOV} \ A, \ SBUF\] ;return receive data
\[\text{RET}\]
\[\text{RET}\]

SPI_SWAP:
\[\text{CLR} \ SPISS\] ;pull low slave SS
\[\text{MOV} \ SPDAT, \ A\] ;trigger SPI send

WAIT:
\[\text{MOV} \ A, \ SPSTAT\] ;wait send complete
\[\text{JNB} \ ACC.7, \ \text{WAIT}\]
\[\text{MOV} \ SPSTAT, \ #\text{SPIF} \ | \ WCOL\] ;clear SPI status
\[\text{SETB} \ SPISS\] ;push high slave SS
\[\text{MOV} \ A, \ SPDAT\] ;return received SPI data
\[\text{RET}\]

END
Chapter 12. IAP / EEPROM

The ISP in STC12C5410AD series makes it possible to update the user’s application program and non-volatile application data (in IAP-memory) without removing the MCU chip from the actual end product. This useful capability makes a wide range of field-update applications possible. (Note ISP needs the loader program pre-programmed in the ISP-memory.) In general, the user needn’t know how ISP operates because STC has provided the standard ISP tool and embedded ISP code in STC shipped samples. But, to develop a good program for ISP function, the user has to understand the architecture of the embedded flash.

The embedded flash consists of 24 pages. Each page contains 512 bytes. Dealing with flash, the user must erase it in page unit before writing (programming) data into it. Erasing flash means setting the content of that flash as FFh. Two erase modes are available in this chip. One is mass mode and the other is page mode. The mass mode gets more performance, but it erases the entire flash. The page mode is something performance less, but it is flexible since it erases flash in page unit. Unlike RAM’s real-time operation, to erase flash or to write (program) flash often takes long time so to wait finish.

Furthermore, it is a quite complex timing procedure to erase/program flash. Fortunately, the STC12C5410AD series carried with convenient mechanism to help the user read/change the flash content. Just filling the target address and data into several SFR, and triggering the built-in ISP automation, the user can easily erase, read, and program the embedded flash.

The In-Application Program feature is designed for user to Read/Write nonvolatile data flash. It may bring great help to store parameters those should be independent of power-up and power-done action. In other words, the user can store data in data flash memory, and after he shutting down the MCU and rebooting the MCU, he can get the original value, which he had stored in.

The user can program the data flash according to the same way as ISP program, so he should get deeper understanding related to SFR ISP_DATA, ISP_ADDRL, ISP_ADDRH, ISP_CMD, ISP_TRIG, and ISP_CONTR.
12.1 IAP / EEPROM Special Function Registers

The following special function registers are related to the IAP/ISP/EEPROM operation. All these registers can be accessed by software in the user’s application program.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Bit Address and Symbol</th>
<th>Value after Power-on or Reset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISP_DATA</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Data Register</td>
<td>E2H</td>
<td>MSB: 1111 1111B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_ADDRH</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Address High</td>
<td>E3H</td>
<td>LSB: 0000 0000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_ADDRL</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Address Low</td>
<td>E4H</td>
<td>MS1: xxxx x000B, MS0: xxxx x000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_CMD</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Command Register</td>
<td>E5H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_TRIG</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Flash Command Trigger</td>
<td>E6H</td>
<td>MS1: xxxx xxxxB, MS0: xxxx xxxxB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISP_CONTR</td>
<td>ISP/IAP Control Register</td>
<td>E7H</td>
<td>ISPEN: 0000 1000B, SWBS: 0000 1000B, SWRST: 0000 1000B, CMD_FAIL: 0000 1000B, WT2: 0000 1000B, WT1: 0000 1000B, WT0: 0000 1000B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ISP/IAP Flash Data Register : ISP_DATA (Address: E2H, Non bit-addressable)

ISP_DATA is the data port register for ISP/IAP operation. The data in ISP_DATA will be written into the desired address in operating ISP/IAP write and it is the data window of readout in operating ISP/IAP read.

2. ISP/IAP Flash Address Registers : ISP_ADDRH and ISP_ADDRL

ISP_ADDRH (address:E3H) is the high-byte address port for all ISP/IAP modes.

ISP_ADDRH[7:5] must be cleared to 000, if one bit of ISP_ADDRH[7:5] is set, the IAP/ISP write function must fail.

ISP_ADDRL (address:E4H) is the low port for all ISP/IAP modes. In page erase operation, it is ignored.
3. **ISP/IAP Flash Command Register : ISP_CMD** (Non bit-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISP_CMD</td>
<td>E5H</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>MS1</td>
<td>MS0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B7~B2: Reserved.
MS1, MS0 : ISP/IAP operating mode selection. ISP_CMD is used to select the flash mode for performing numerous ISP/IAP function or used to access protected SFRs.

- 0, 0 : Standby
- 0, 1 : Data Flash/EEPROM read.
- 1, 0 : Data Flash/EEPROM program.
- 1, 1 : Data Flash/EEPROM page erase.

4. **ISP/IAP Flash Command Trigger Register : ISP_TRIG** (Address: E6H, Non bit-addressable)

ISP_TRIG is the command port for triggering ISP/IAP activity and protected SFRs access. If ISP_TRIG is filled with sequential 0x46h, 0xB9h and if ISPEN(ISP_CONTR.7) = 1, ISP/IAP activity or protected SFRs access will triggered.

5. **ISP/IAP Control Register : ISP_CONTR** (Non-addressable)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISP_CONTR</td>
<td>E7H</td>
<td></td>
<td>ISPEN</td>
<td>SWBS</td>
<td>SWRST</td>
<td>CMD_FAIL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>WT2</td>
<td>WT2</td>
<td>WT0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ISPEN : ISP/IAP operation enable.
- 0 : Global disable all ISP/IAP program/erase/read function.
- 1 : Enable ISP/IAP program/erase/read function.

SWBS: software boot selection control.
- 0 : Boot from main-memory after reset.
- 1 : Boot from ISP memory after reset.

SWRST: software reset trigger control.
- 0 : No operation
- 1 : Generate software system reset. It will be cleared by hardware automatically.

CMD_FAIL: Command Fail indication for ISP/IAP operation.
- 0 : The last ISP/IAP command has finished successfully.
- 1 : The last ISP/IAP command fails. It could be caused since the access of flash memory was inhibited.

B3: Reserved. Software must write “0” on this bit when ISP_CONTR is written.
WT2–WT0 : Waiting time selection while flash is busy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting wait times</th>
<th>CPU wait times</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Read (2 System clocks)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WT2</td>
<td>WT1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Software reset actions could reset other SFR, but it never influences bits ISPEN and SWBS. The ISPEN and SWBS only will be reset by power-up action, while not software reset.

6. When the operation voltage is too low, EEPROM / IAP function should be disabled

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SFR name</th>
<th>Address</th>
<th>bit</th>
<th>B7</th>
<th>B6</th>
<th>B5</th>
<th>B4</th>
<th>B3</th>
<th>B2</th>
<th>B1</th>
<th>B0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCON</td>
<td>87H</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>SMOD</td>
<td>SMOD0</td>
<td>LVDF</td>
<td>POF</td>
<td>GF1</td>
<td>GF0</td>
<td>PD</td>
<td>IDL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LVDF : Pin Low-Voltage Flag. Once low voltage condition is detected (VCC power is lower than LVD voltage), it is set by hardware (and should be cleared by software).
12.2 STC12C5410AD series Internal EEPROM Allocation Table

STC12C5410AD series microcontroller's Data Flash (internal available EEPROM) address (and program space is separate) : if the application area of IAP write Data/erase sector of the action, the statements will be ignore and continue to the next one. Program in user application area (AP area), only operate IAP/ISP on Data Flash (EEPROM)

STC12C5412AD and STC12LE542AD are excepted, this several types in the application area can modify the application

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>EEPROM (Byte)</th>
<th>Sector Numbers</th>
<th>Begin_Sector Begin_Address</th>
<th>End_Sector End_Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5401AD/STC12LE5401AD</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0000h</td>
<td>2FFFe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5402AD/STC12LE5402AD</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0000h</td>
<td>2FFFe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5404AD/STC12LE5404AD</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0000h</td>
<td>2FFFe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5406AD/STC12LE5406AD</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0000h</td>
<td>2FFFe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5408AD/STC12LE5408AD</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0000h</td>
<td>2FFFe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5410AD/STC12LE5410AD</td>
<td>12K</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0000h</td>
<td>2FFFe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following series are special.
User can modify the application the application area, all flash area can be modified as EEPROM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>EEPROM (Byte)</th>
<th>Sector Numbers</th>
<th>Begin_Sector Begin_Address</th>
<th>End_Sector End_Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STC12C5412AD/STC12LE5412AD</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0000h</td>
<td>2FFFe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sector 1</td>
<td>Sector 2</td>
<td>Sector 3</td>
<td>Sector 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0000H</td>
<td>01FFH</td>
<td>0200H</td>
<td>03FFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0400H</td>
<td>05FFH</td>
<td>0600H</td>
<td>07FFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sector 5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Start</th>
<th>End</th>
<th>Sector 6</th>
<th>Sector 7</th>
<th>Sector 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0800H</td>
<td>09FFH</td>
<td>0A00H</td>
<td>0BFFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0C00H</td>
<td>0DFFH</td>
<td>0E00H</td>
<td>0FFFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sector 9

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Start</th>
<th>End</th>
<th>Sector 10</th>
<th>Sector 11</th>
<th>Sector 12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000H</td>
<td>11FFH</td>
<td>1200H</td>
<td>13FFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1400H</td>
<td>15FFH</td>
<td>1600H</td>
<td>17FFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sector 13

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Start</th>
<th>End</th>
<th>Sector 14</th>
<th>Sector 15</th>
<th>Sector 16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1800H</td>
<td>19FFH</td>
<td>1A00H</td>
<td>1BFFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1C00H</td>
<td>1DFFH</td>
<td>1E00H</td>
<td>1FFFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sector 17

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Start</th>
<th>End</th>
<th>Sector 18</th>
<th>Sector 19</th>
<th>Sector 20</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2000H</td>
<td>21FFH</td>
<td>2200H</td>
<td>23FFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2400H</td>
<td>25FFH</td>
<td>2600H</td>
<td>27FFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Sector 21

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Start</th>
<th>End</th>
<th>Sector 22</th>
<th>Sector 23</th>
<th>Sector 24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2800H</td>
<td>29FFH</td>
<td>2A00H</td>
<td>2BFFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2C00H</td>
<td>2DFFH</td>
<td>2E00H</td>
<td>2FFFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each sector is 512 bytes. Suggest the same times modified data in the same sector, each times modified data in different sectors, don't have to use full, of course, it was all to use.
12.3 IAP/EEPROM Assembly Language Program Introduction

; /*It is decided by the assembler/compiler used by users that whether the SFRs addresses are declared by the DATA or the EQU directive/*/  
ISP_DATA   DATA  0E2H or ISP_DATA   EQU  0E2H  
ISP_ADDRH  DATA  0E3H or ISP_ADDRH  EQU  0E3H  
ISP_ADDRL  DATA  0E4H or ISP_ADDRL  EQU  0E4H  
ISP_CMD    DATA  0E5H or ISP_CMD    EQU  0E5H  
ISP_TRIG   DATA  0E6H or ISP_TRIG   EQU  0E6H  
ISP_CONTR  DATA  0E7H or ISP_CONTR  EQU  0E7H  

; /*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM command and wait time*/  
ISPIAP_BYTE_READ  EQU 1 ;Byte-Read  
ISPIAP_BYTE_PROGRAM EQU 2 ;Byte-Program  
ISPIAP_SECTOR_ERASE  EQU 3 ;Sector-Erase  
WAIT_TIME   EQU 0 ;Set wait time  

; /*Byte-Read*/  
MOV  ISP_ADDRH, #BYTE_ADDR_HIGH ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high  
MOV  ISP_ADDRL, #BYTE_ADDR_LOW  ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low  
MOV  ISP_CONTR, #WAIT_TIME  ;Set wait time  
ORL  ISP_CONTR, #10000000B  ;Open ISP/IAP function  
MOV  ISP_CMD, #ISPIAP_BYTE_READ ;Set ISP/IAP Byte-Read command  
MOV  ISP_TRIG, #46H   ;Send trigger command1 (0x46)  
MOV  ISP_TRIG, #0B9H   ;Send trigger command2 (0xB9)  
NOP    ;CPU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete  
MOV  A, ISP_DATA  ;Read ISP/IAP/EEPROM data  

; /*Disable ISP/IAP/EEPROM function, make MCU in a safe state*/  
MOV  ISP_CONTR, #00000000B  ;Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function  
MOV  ISP_CMD, #00000000B  ;Clear ISP/IAP/EEPROM command  
MOV  ISP_TRIG, #00000000B  ;Clear trigger register to prevent mistrigger  
MOV  ISP_ADDRH, #0FFH              ;Move 00 into address high-byte unit,  
                                 ;Data ptr point to non-EEPROM area  
MOV  ISP_ADDRL, #0FFH                ;Move 00 into address low-byte unit,  
                                 ;prevent misuse  

; /*Byte-Program, if the byte is null(0FFH), it can be programmed; else, MCU must operate Sector-Erase firstly,  
and then can operate Byte-Program.*/  
MOV  ISP_DATA, #ONE_DATA   ;Write ISP/IAP/EEPROM data  
MOV  ISP_ADDRH, #BYTE_ADDR_HIGH ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high  
MOV  ISP_ADDRL, #BYTE_ADDR_LOW  ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low  
MOV  ISP_CONTR, #WAIT_TIME  ;Set wait time  
ORL  ISP_CONTR, #10000000B  ;Open ISP/IAP function  
MOV  ISP_CMD, #ISPIAP_BYTE_READ ;Set ISP/IAP Byte-Read command  
MOV  ISP_TRIG, #46H   ;Send trigger command1 (0x46)  
MOV  ISP_TRIG, #0B9H   ;Send trigger command2 (0xB9)  
NOP    ;CPU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
; /*Disable ISP/IAP/EEPROM function, make MCU in a safe state*/
  MOV ISP_CONTR, #00000000B
  MOV ISP_CMD, #00000000B
  ;MOV ISP_TRIG, #00000000B
  ;MOV ISP_ADDRH, #FFH
  ;MOV ISP_ADDRL, #0FFH
  MOV ISP_ADDRH, #00000000B
  MOV ISP_ADDRL, #00000000B

; /*Erase one sector area, there is only Sector-Erase instead of Byte-Erase, every sector area account for 512 bytes*/
  MOV ISP_ADDRH, #SECTOT_FIRST_BYTE_ADDR_HIGH
  MOV ISP_ADDRL, #SECTOT_FIRST_BYTE_ADDR_LOW
  MOV ISP_CONTR, #WAIT_TIME
  ORL ISP_CONTR, #10000000B
  MOV ISP_CMD, #ISP_IAP_SECTOR_ERASE
  MOV ISP_TRIG, #46H
  MOV ISP_TRIG, #0B9H
  NOP

; /*Disable ISP/IAP/EEPROM function, make MCU in a safe state*/
  MOV ISP_CONTR, #00000000B
  MOV ISP_CMD, #00000000B
  ;MOV ISP_TRIG, #00000000B
  ;MOV ISP_ADDRH, #0FFH
  ;MOV ISP_ADDRL, #0FFH
  MOV ISP_ADDRH, #00000000B
  MOV ISP_ADDRL, #00000000B
Little common sense:  (STC MCU Data Flash use as EEPROM function)
Three basic commands -- bytes read, byte programming, the sector erased

Byte programming: "1" write "1" or "0", will "0" write "0". Just FFH can byte programming. If the byte not FFH, you must erase the sector, because only the "sectors erased" to put "0" into "1".

Sector erased: only "sector erased" will also be a "0" erased for "1".

Big proposal:
1. The same times modified data in the same sector, not the same times modified data in other sectors, won't have to read protection.
2. If a sector with only one byte, that's real EEPROM, STC MCU Data Flash faster than external EEPROM, read a byte/many one byte programming is about 2 clock / 55uS.
3. If in a sector of storing a large amounts of data, a only need to modify one part of a byte, or when the other byte don't need to modify data must first read on STC MCU, then erased RAM the whole sector, again will need to keep data and need to amend data in bytes written back to this sector section literally only bytes written orders (without continuous bytes, write command). Then each sector use bytes are using the less the convenient (not need read a lot of maintained data).

Frequently asked questions:
1. IAP instructions after finishing, address is automatically "add 1" or "minus 1"?
   Answer: not
2. Send 46 and B9 after IAP ordered the trigger whether to have sent 46 and B9 trigger?
   Answer: yes
12.4 EEPROM Demo Program (C and ASM)

1. C Code Listing

`/*--- STC MCU International Limited --------------------------------------*/
/*--- STC 1T Series MCU ISP/IAP/EEPROM Demo -----------------------------*/
/*--- Mobile: (86)13922809991 --------------------------------------------*/
/*--- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------------------------*/
/*--- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------*/
/*--- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the */
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC */
/*-------------------------------------------------------------------*/

#include "reg51.h"
#include "intrins.h"

typedef unsigned char BYTE;
typedef unsigned int WORD;

/*Declare SFR associated with the IAP */
sfr IAP_DATA = 0xE2; //Flash data register
sfr IAP_ADDRH = 0xE3; //Flash address HIGH
sfr IAP_ADDRL = 0xE4; //Flash address LOW
sfr IAP_CMD = 0xE5; //Flash command register
sfr IAP_TRIG = 0xE6; //Flash command trigger
sfr IAP_CONTR = 0xE7; //Flash control register

/*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM command*/
#define CMD_IDLE 0 //Stand-By
#define CMD_READ 1 //Byte-Read
#define CMD_PROGRAM 2 //Byte-Program
#define CMD_ERASE 3 //Sector-Erase

/*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation const for IAP_CONTR*/
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x80 //if SYSCLK<30MHz
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x81 //if SYSCLK<24MHz
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x82 //if SYSCLK<20MHz
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x83 //if SYSCLK<12MHz
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x84 //if SYSCLK<6MHz
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x85 //if SYSCLK<3MHz
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x86 //if SYSCLK<2MHz
//#define ENABLE_IAP 0x87 //if SYSCLK<1MHz

//Start address for STC12C5410AD series EEPROM
#define IAP_ADDRESS 0x0400

void Delay(BYTE n);
void IapIdle();
BYTE IapReadByte(WORD addr);
void IapProgramByte(WORD addr, BYTE dat);
void IapEraseSector(WORD addr);

void main()
{
    WORD i;
    P1 = 0xfe;                                                //1111,1110 System Reset OK
    Delay(10);            //Delay
    IapEraseSector(IAP_ADDRESS);        //Erase current sector
    for (i=0; i<512; i++)                             //Check whether all sector data is FF
    {
        if (IapReadByte(IAP_ADDRESS+i) != 0xff)
            goto Error;                                  //If error, break
    }
    P1 = 0xfc;                                            //1111,1100 Erase successful
    Delay(10);                                           //Delay
    for (i=0; i<512; i++)                           //Program 512 bytes data into data flash
    {
        IapProgramByte(IAP_ADDRESS+i, (BYTE)i);
    }
    P1 = 0xf8;                                        //1111,1000 Program successful
    Delay(10);                                   //Delay
    for (i=0; i<512; i++)                      //Verify 512 bytes data
    {
        if (IapReadByte(IAP_ADDRESS+i) != (BYTE)i)
            goto Error;                         //If error, break
    }
    P1 = 0xf0;                                     //1111,0000 Verify successful
    while (1); Error:
    P1 &= 0x7f;                             //0xxx,xxxx IAP operation fail
    while (1);}

/*****************************************************************************/
Software delay function
---------------------------------------------*/
void Delay(BYTE n)
{
    WORD x;
    while (n--)
    {
        x = 0;
        while (++x);
    }
}
/*----------------------------
Disable ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
Make MCU in a safe state
----------------------------*/
void IapIdle()
{
    IAP_CONTR = 0; //Close IAP function
    IAP_CMD = 0;   //Clear command to standby
    IAP_TRIG = 0;  //Clear trigger register
    IAP_ADDRH = 0x80; //Data ptr point to non-EEPROM area
    IAP_ADDRL = 0; //Clear IAP address to prevent misuse
}

/*----------------------------
Read one byte from ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
Input: addr (ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
Output: Flash data
----------------------------*/
BYTE IapReadByte(WORD addr)
{
    BYTE dat; //Data buffer
    IAP_CONTR = ENABLE_IAP; //Open IAP function, and set wait time
    IAP_CMD = CMD_READ;     //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM READ command
    IAP_ADDRL = addr;        //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
    IAP_ADDRH = addr >> 8;   //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
    IAP_TRIG = 0x46;         //Send trigger command1 (0x46)
    IAP_TRIG = 0xb9;         //Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
    _nop_();                //MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
    dat = IAP_DATA;          //Read ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
    IapIdle();              //Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
    return dat;             //Return Flash data
}

/*----------------------------
Program one byte to ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
Input: addr (ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
    dat (ISP/IAP/EEPROM data)
Output:-
----------------------------*/
void IapProgramByte(WORD addr, BYTE dat)
{
    IAP_CONTR = ENABLE_IAP;        //Open IAP function, and set wait time
    IAP_CMD = CMD_PROGRAM;    //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM PROGRAM command
    IAP_ADDRL = addr;                //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
    IAP_ADDRH = addr >> 8;           //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
    IAP_DATA = dat;                 //Write ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
    IAP_TRIG = 0x46;                  //Send trigger command1 (0x46)
    IAP_TRIG = 0xb9;                  //Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
    _nop_();                          //MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM
    IapIdle();                        //operation complete
}

/*-----------------------------
Erase one sector area
Input: addr (ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
Output:-
-----------------------------*/
void IapEraseSector(WORD addr)
{
    IAP_CONTR = ENABLE_IAP;        //Open IAP function, and set wait time
    IAP_CMD = CMD_ERASE;     //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM ERASE command
    IAP_ADDRL = addr;               //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
    IAP_ADDRH = addr >> 8;        //Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
    IAP_TRIG = 0x46;                  //Send trigger command1 (0x46)
    IAP_TRIG = 0xb9;                  //Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
    _nop_();                          //MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM
    IapIdle();                        //operation complete
}
2. Assembly Code Listing

```assembly
//*---------------------------------------------------------------*/
//*  --- STC MCU International Limited -----------------------------*/
//*  --- STC 1T Series MCU ISP/IAP/EEPROM Demo -------------------*/
//*  --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------*/
//*  --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 --------------------------------------*/
//*  --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------*/
//*  --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------*/
//*  If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the  */
//*  article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC  */
//*  ---------------------------------------------------------------*/

//*Declare SFRs associated with the IAP */
IAP_DATA     EQU  0E2H                ;Flash data register
IAP_ADDRH    EQU 0E3H                ;Flash address HIGH
IAP_ADDRL  EQU  0E4H                ;Flash address LOW
IAP_CMD      EQU  0E5H                ;Flash command register
IAP_TRIG     EQU  0E6H                ;Flash command trigger
IAP_CONTR  EQU  0E7H                ;Flash control register

//*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM command*/
CMD_IDLE     EQU  0                       ;Stand-By
CMD_READ     EQU  1                       ;Byte-Read
CMD_PROGRAM  EQU  2                       ;Byte-Program
CMD_ERASE    EQU  3                       ;Sector-Erase

//*Define ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation const for IAP_CONTR*/
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  80H                 ;if SYSCLK<30MHz
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  81H                 ;if SYSCLK<24MHz
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  82H                 ;if SYSCLK<20MHz
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  83H                 ;if SYSCLK<12MHz
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  84H                 ;if SYSCLK<6MHz
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  85H                 ;if SYSCLK<3MHz
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  86H                 ;if SYSCLK<2MHz
;ENABLE_IAP  EQU  87H                 ;if SYSCLK<1MHz

;//Start address for STC12C5410AD series EEPROM
IAP_ADDRESS EQU 0000H

;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0000H
LJMP  MAIN
;-----------------------------------------
ORG 0100H
MAIN:
     MOV    P1, #0FEH                  ;1111,1110 System Reset OK
     LCALL  DELAY                 ;Delay
```
MOV DPTR, #IAP_ADDRESS ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
LCALL IAP_ERASE ;Erase current sector

MOV DPTR, #IAP_ADDRESS ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
MOV R0, #0 ;Set counter (512)
MOV R1, #2

CHECK1: ;Check whether all sector data is FF
LCALL IAP_READ ;Read Flash
CJNE A, #0FFH, ERROR ;If error, break
INC DPTR ;Inc Flash address
DJNZ R0, CHECK1 ;Check next
DJNZ R1, CHECK1 ;Check next

MOV P1, #0FCH ;1111,1100 Erase successful
LCALL DELAY ;Delay

MOV DPTR, #IAP_ADDRESS ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
MOV R0, #0 ;Set counter (512)
MOV R1, #2
MOV R2, #0

NEXT: ;Program 512 bytes data into data flash
MOV A, R2 ;Ready IAP data
LCALL IAP_PROGRAM ;Program flash
INC DPTR ;Inc Flash address
INC R2 ;Modify test data
DJNZ R0, NEXT ;Program next
DJNZ R1, NEXT ;Program next

MOV P1, #0F8H ;1111,1000 Program successful
LCALL DELAY ;Delay

MOV DPTR, #IAP_ADDRESS ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address
MOV R0, #0 ;Set counter (512)
MOV R1, #2
MOV R2, #0

CHECK2: ;Verify 512 bytes data
LCALL IAP_READ ;Read Flash
CJNE A, 2, ERROR ;If error, break
INC DPTR ;Inc Flash address
INC R2 ;Modify verify data
DJNZ R0, CHECK2 ;Check next
DJNZ R1, CHECK2 ;Check next

MOV P1, #0F0H ;1111,0000 Verify successful
SJMP$

;-----------------------------
;1111,1100 Erase successful
;Delay
;-----------------------------
;1111,1000 Program successful
;Delay
;-----------------------------
;Verify 512 bytes data
;Read Flash
;If error, break
;Inc Flash address
;Modify verify data
;Check next
;Check next
;-----------------------------
;1111,0000 Verify successful

;-----------------------------
ERROR:
    MOV P0, R0
    MOV P2, R1
    MOV P3, R2
    CLR P1.7 ;0xxx,xxxx IAP operation fail
    SJMP $

;/*-----------------------------*/
;Software delay function
;----------------------------*/
DELAY:
    CLR A
    MOV R0, A
    MOV R1, A
    MOV R2, #20H
    DELAY1:
        DJNZ R0, DELAY1
        DJNZ R1, DELAY1
        DJNZ R2, DELAY1
    RET

;/*-----------------------------*/
;Disable ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
;Make MCU in a safe state
;----------------------------*/
IAP_IDLE:
    MOV IAP_CONTR, #0 ;Close IAP function
    MOV IAP_CMD, #0 ;Clear command to standby
    MOV IAP_TRIG, #0 ;Clear trigger register
    MOV IAP_ADDRH, #80H ;Data ptr point to non-EEPROM area
    MOV IAP_ADDRL, #0 ;Clear IAP address to prevent misuse
    RET

;/*-----------------------------*/
;Read one byte from ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
;Input: DPTR(ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
;Output: ACC (Flash data)
;----------------------------*/
IAP_READ:
    MOV IAP_CONTR, #ENABLE_IAP ;Open IAP function, and set wait time
    MOV IAP_CMD, #CMD_READ ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM READ command
    MOV IAP_ADDRH, DPL ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
    MOV IAP_ADDRL, #0B9H ;Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
    NOP ;MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
    MOV A, IAP_DATA ;Read ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
    LCALL IAP_IDLE ;Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
    RET
;Program one byte to ISP/IAP/EEPROM area
;Input: DPAT(ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
;ACC (ISP/IAP/EEPROM data)
;Output:-
;-----------------------------*/
IAP_PROGRAM:
   MOV     IAP_CONTR, #ENABLE_IAP ;Open IAP function, and set wait time
   MOV     IAP_CMD, #CMD_PROGRAM ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM PROGRAM command
   MOV     IAP_ADDRL, DPL        ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
   MOV     IAP_ADDRH, DPH        ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
   MOV     IAP_DATA, A           ;Write ISP/IAP/EEPROM data
   MOV     IAP_TRIG,#46H         ;Send trigger command1 (0x46)
   MOV     IAP_TRIG,#0B9H        ;Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
   NOP                          ;MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
   LCALL  IAP_IDLE               ;Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
   RET

;Erase one sector area
;Input: DPTR(ISP/IAP/EEPROM address)
;Output:-
;-----------------------------*/
IAP_ERASE:
   MOV     IAP_CONTR, #ENABLE_IAP ;Open IAP function, and set wait time
   MOV     IAP_CMD, #CMD_ERASE   ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM ERASE command
   MOV     IAP_ADDRL, DPL        ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address low
   MOV     IAP_ADDRH, DPH        ;Set ISP/IAP/EEPROM address high
   MOV     IAP_TRIG,#46H         ;Send trigger command1 (0x46)
   MOV     IAP_TRIG,#0B9H        ;Send trigger command2 (0xb9)
   NOP                          ;MCU will hold here until ISP/IAP/EEPROM operation complete
   LCALL  IAP_IDLE               ;Close ISP/IAP/EEPROM function
   RET

END
Chapter 13. STC12 series Development/Programming Tool

13.1 In-System-Programming (ISP) principle

If need download code into STC12C5410AD series, P1.0 and P1.1 pin must be connected to GND.
If you chose the "Next program code, P1.0/1.1 need=0/0" option, then the next time you need to re-download the program, first of all must be connected P1.0 and P1.1 to GND.

Power-on, reset

- MCU first running ISP monitor code
  - Detect whether there is a legitimate ISP command
    - NO
    - YES
      - Download user program to AP area.
      - Reset to AP area running user code

Wait ISP command for tens or hundreds milliseconds, if no legitimate command, MCU will reset to AP area.

Must be cold-reset (power-on reset), MCU will run from ISP monitor code, for any warm-reset (include reset-pin, watchdog), MCU will run user code directly.

PC application must send command at first then power on MCU.
13.2 STC12C5410AD series Typical Application Circuit for ISP

This circuit has been made as a STC12C5410AD series microcontroller ISP download programming tool.

If using internal R/C oscillator clock (4MHz ~ 8MHz, manufacturing error), XTAL1 and XTAL2 pin should be floated.

If External clock frequency is higher than 33MHz, it is recommended to directly use external active crystals which clock are input from XTAL1 pin and XTAL2 pin must be floated.

When the frequency of crystal oscillator is lower than 12MHz, it is suggested not to use C1 and R1 replaced by 1K resistor connect to ground. But R/C reset circuit is also suggest to reserve.

Users are suggested stay this interface on the system, which can be convenient download the users program online.

Download user procedure to STC MCU by the software STC-ISP programmer.

If using internal R/C oscillator clock (4MHz ~ 8MHz, manufacturing error), XTAL1 and XTAL2 pin should be floated.

If External clock frequency is higher than 33MHz, it is recommended to directly use external active crystals which clock are input from XTAL1 pin and XTAL2 pin must be floated.

This circuit has been made as a STC12C5410AD series microcontroller ISP download programming tool.
Users in their target system, such as the P3.0/P3.1 through the RS-232 level shifter connected to the computer after the conversion of ordinary RS-232 serial port to connect the system programming / upgrading client software. If the user panel recommended no RS-232 level converter, should lead to a socket, with Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc four signal lines, so that the user system can be programmed directly. Of course, if the six signal lines can lead to Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0 as well, because you can download the program by P1.0/P1.1 ISP ban. If you can Gnd/P3.1/P3.0/Vcc/P1.1/P1.0/Reset seven signal lines leads to better, so you can easily use "offline download board (no computer)".

ISP programming on the Theory and Application Guide to see "STC12C5410AD Series MCU Development / Programming Tools Help"section. In addition, we have standardized programming download tool, the user can then program into the goal in the above systems, you can borrow on top of it RS-232 level shifter connected to the computer to download the program used to do. Programming a chip roughly be a few seconds, faster than the ordinary universal programmer much faster, there is no need to buy expensive third-party programmer?

PC STC-ISP software downloaded from the website www.STCMCU.com
13.3 PC side application usage

According to actual situation, the user selects the appropriate maximum baud rate.

In practice, if P3.0/P3.1 already connected to a RS232/RS485 or other equipment, it is recommended that selection P1.0 / P1.1 = 0/0 can download options.

Press this button when mass production.

Enable the option in debugging stage.

All new settings are valid in the next power-on.
Step1: Select MCU type (E.g. STC12C5410AD)
Step2: Load user program code (*.bin or *.hex)
Step3: Select the serial port you are using
Step4: Configure the hardware option
Step5: Press “ISP programming” or “Re-Programming” button to download user program

NOTE: Must press “ISP programming” or “Re-Programming” button first, then power on MCU, otherwise will cannot download.

About hardware connection
1. MCU RXD (P3.0) ---- RS232 ---- PC COM port TXD (Pin3)
2. MCU TXD (P3.1) ---- RS232 ---- PC COM port RXD (Pin2)
3. MCU GND-------PC COM port GND (Pin5)
4. RS232: You can select STC232 / STC3232 / MAX232 / MAX3232 / …

Using a demo board as a programmer
STC-ISP ver3.0A PCB can be welded into three kinds of circuits, respectively, support the STC's 16/20/28/32 pins MCU, the back plate of the download boards are affixed with labels, users need to pay special attention to. All the download board is welded 40-pin socket, the socket’s 20-pin is ground line, all types of MCU should be put on the socket according to the way of alignment with the ground. The method of programming user code using download board as follow:
1. According to the type of MCU choose supply voltage,
   A. For 5V MCU, using jumper JP1 to connect MCU-VCC to +5V pin
   B. For 3V MCU, using jumper JP1 to connect MCU-VCC to +3.3V pin
2. Download cable (Provided by STC)
   A. Connect DB9 serial connector to the computer's RS-232 serial interface
   B. Plug the USB interface at the same side into your computer's USB port for power supply
   C. Connect the USB interface at the other side into STC download board
3. Other interfaces do not need to connect.
4. In a non-pressed state to SW1, and MCU-VCC power LED off.
5. For SW3
   P1.0/P1.1 = 1/1 when SW3 is non-pressed
   P1.0/P1.1 = 0/0 when SW3 is pressed
   If you have select the “Next program code, P1.0/P1.1 Need = 0/0” option, then SW3 must be in a pressed state
6. Put target MCU into the U1 socket, and locking socket
7. Press the “Download” button in the PC side application
8. Press SW1 switch in the download board
9. Close the demo board power supply and remove the MCU after download successfully.
13.4 Compiler / Assembler Programmer and Emulator

About Compiler/Assembler
Any traditional compiler / assembler and the popular Keil are suitable for STC MCU. For selection MCU body, the traditional compiler / assembler, you can choose Intel's 8052 / 87C52 / 87C52 / 87C58 or Philips's P87C52 / P87C54/P87C58 in the traditional environment, in Keil environment, you can choose the types in front of the proposed or download the STC chips database file (STC.CDB) from the STC official website.

About Programmer
You can use the STC specific ISP programmer. (Can be purchased from the STC or apply for free sample). Programmer can be used as demo board

About Emulator
We do not provide specific emulator now. If you have a traditional 8051 emulator, you can use it to simulate STC MCU’s some 8052 basic functions.

13.5 Self-Defined ISP download Demo

/*-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC MCU International Limited ---------------------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- STC 1T Series MCU using software to custom download code Demo----------------------------------------*/
/* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 --------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com -----------------------------------------------------------*/
/* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the ------------------------------*/
/* article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC ------------------------------*/
/*-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
#include <reg51.h>
#include <instrins.h>

sfr IAP_CONTR = 0xe7;
sbit MCU_Start_Led = P1^7;

#define Self_Define_ISP_Download_Command 0x22
#define RELOAD_COUNT 0xfb //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,9600bps
//#define RELOAD_COUNT 0xf6 //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,4800bps
//#define RELOAD_COUNT 0xec //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,2400bps
//#define RELOAD_COUNT 0xd8 //18.432MHz,12T,SMOD=0,1200bps

void serial_port_initial(void);
void send_UART(unsigned char);
void UART_Interrupt_Receive(void);
void soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor(void);
void delay(void);
void display_MCU_Start_Led(void);
void main(void)
{
    unsigned char i = 0;

    serial_port_initial();     //Initial UART
    display_MCU_Start_Led();   //Turn on the work LED
    send_UART(0x34);           //Send UART test data
    send_UART(0xa7);           // Send UART test data
    while (1);
}

void send_UART(unsigned char i)
{
    ES = 0;                    //Disable serial interrupt
    TI = 0;                    //Clear TI flag
    SBUF = i;                  //send this data
    while (!TI);               //wait for the data is sent
    TI = 0;                    //clear TI flag
    ES = 1;                    //enable serial interrupt
}

void UART_Interrupt)Receive(void) interrupt 4 using 1
{
    unsigned char k = 0;
    if (RI)
    {
        RI = 0;
        k = SBUF;
        if (k == Self_Define_ISP_Command)   //check the serial data
        {
            delay();                   //delay 1s
            delay();                   //delay 1s
            soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor();
        }
    }
    if (TI)
    {
        TI = 0;
    }
}

void soft_reset_to_ISP_Monitor(void)
{
    IAP_CONTR = 0x60;           //0110,0000 soft reset system to run ISP monitor
}
void delay(void)
{
    unsigned int j = 0;
    unsigned int g = 0;
    for (j = 0; j < 5; j++)
    {
        for (g = 0; g < 60000; g++)
        {
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
            _nop_();
        }
    }
}

void display_MCU_Start_Led(void)
{
    unsigned char i = 0;
    for (i = 0; i < 3; i++)
    {
        MCU_Start_Led = 0; // Turn on work LED
        dejay();
        MCU_Start_Led = 1; // Turn off work LED
        dejay();
        MCU_Start_Led = 0; // Turn on work LED
    }
}
In addition, the PC-side application also need to make the following settings:

- **Self-defined program command, not need a cold start reset.**

  - **Baud**: 9600
  - **Verify**: None
  - **Data**: 8
  - **Stop**: 1

- **Command (HEX)**: 22

  - **Reload the file automatically if the file is changed and send the Command automatically.**

Clicking the "Help" button as show in above figure, we can see the detail explanation as below.

1. Add a program which contains self-defined program command into the user application program.
2. After the application received the self-defined program command, delay one second, then reset by software to ISP Program.
3. The command to reset by software to ISP Program is MOV ISP_CONTR, #60H.
4. User application program which contains the self-defined program command, which programs code in original method. (Note: set the options in 'Option' menu)
5. If selected 'P1.0/P1.1 are not related to STC ISP Programming' last time, then do not worry about the value of Power-On Flag (POF).
6. If selected ' P1.0/P1.1 need = 0/0 when Programming ' last time, and
   a) if self-defined program does not need P1.0/P1.1 connect to ground, then clear Power-On Flag to 0 before reset by software to ISP Program;
   b) if it does need P1.0/P1.1 connect to ground, then keep Power-On Flag to 1 before reset by software to ISP Program.
Appendix A: Assembly Language Programming

INTRODUCTION

Assembly language is a computer language lying between the extremes of machine language and high-level language like Pascal or C use words and statements that are easily understood by humans, although still a long way from "natural" language. Machine language is the binary language of computers. A machine language program is a series of binary bytes representing instructions the computer can execute.

Assembly language replaces the binary codes of machine language with easy to remember "mnemonics" that facilitate programming. For example, an addition instruction in machine language might be represented by the code "10110011". It might be represented in assembly language by the mnemonic "ADD". Programming with mnemonics is obviously preferable to programming with binary codes.

Of course, this is not the whole story. Instructions operate on data, and the location of the data is specified by various "addressing modes" embedded in the binary code of the machine language instruction. So, there may be several variations of the ADD instruction, depending on what is added. The rules for specifying these variations are central to the theme of assembly language programming.

An assembly language program is not executable by a computer. Once written, the program must undergo translation to machine language. In the example above, the mnemonic "ADD" must be translated to the binary code "10110011". Depending on the complexity of the programming environment, this translation may involve one or more steps before an executable machine language program results. As a minimum, a program called an "assembler" is required to translate the instruction mnemonics to machine language binary codes. A further step may require a "linker" to combine portions of program from separate files and to set the address in memory at which the program may execute. We begin with a few definitions.

An assembly language program is a program written using labels, mnemonics, and so on, in which each statement corresponds to a machine instruction. Assembly language programs, often called source code or symbolic code, cannot be executed by a computer.

A machine language program is a program containing binary codes that represent instructions to a computer. Machine language programs, often called object code, are executable by a computer.

A assembler is a program that translates an assembly language program into a machine language program. The machine language program (object code) may be in "absolute" form or in "relocatable" form. In the latter case, "linking" is required to set the absolute address for execution.

A linker is a program that combines relocatable object programs (modules) and produces an absolute object program that is executable by a computer. A linker is sometimes called a "linker/locator" to reflect its separate functions of combining relocatable modules (linking) and setting the address for execution (locating).

A segment is a unit of code or data memory. A segment may be relocatable or absolute. A relocatable segment has a name, type, and other attributes that allow the linker to combine it with other partial segments, if required, and to correctly locate the segment. An absolute segment has no name and cannot be combined with other segments.

A module contains one or more segments or partial segments. A module has a name assigned by the user. The module definitions determine the scope of local symbols. An object file contains one or more modules. A module may be thought of as a "file" in many instances.

A program consists of a single absolute module, merging all absolute and relocatable segments from all input modules. A program contains only the binary codes for instructions (with address and data constants) that are understood by a computer.
ASSEMBLER OPERATION

There are many assembler programs and other support programs available to facilitate the development of applications for the 8051 microcontroller. Intel's original MCS-51 family assembler, ASM51, is no longer available commercially. However, it set the standard to which the others are compared.

ASM51 is a powerful assembler with all the bells and whistles. It is available on Intel development systems and on the IBM PC family of microcomputers. Since these "host" computers contain a CPU chip other than the 8051, ASM51 is called a cross assembler. An 8051 source program may be written on the host computer (using any text editor) and may be assembled to an object file and listing file (using ASM51), but the program may not be executed. Since the host system's CPU chip is not an 8051, it does not understand the binary instruction in the object file. Execution on the host computer requires either hardware emulation or software simulation of the target CPU. A third possibility is to download the object program to an 8051-based target system for execution.

ASM51 is invoked from the system prompt by
ASM51 source_file [assembler_controls]

The source file is assembled and any assembler controls specified take effect. The assembler receives a source file as input (e.g., PROGRAM.SRC) and generates an object file (PROGRAM.OBJ) and listing file (PROGRAM.LST) as output. This is illustrated in Figure 1.

Since most assemblers scan the source program twice in performing the translation to machine language, they are described as two-pass assemblers. The assembler uses a location counter as the address of instructions and the values for labels. The action of each pass is described below.

![Figure 1 Assembling a source program](image)

Legend

- Utility program
- User file

Pass one

During the first pass, the source file is scanned line-by-line and a symbol table is built. The location counter defaults to 0 or is set by the ORG (set origin) directive. As the file is scanned, the location counter is incremented by the length of each instruction. Define data directives (DBs or DWs) increment the location counter by the number of bytes defined. Reserve memory directives (DSs) increment the location counter by the number of bytes reserved.

Each time a label is found at the beginning of a line, it is placed in the symbol table along with the current value of the location counter. Symbols that are defined using equate directives (EQUs) are placed in the symbol table along with the "equated" value. The symbol table is saved and then used during pass two.

Pass two

During pass two, the object and listing files are created. Mnemonics are converted to opcodes and placed in the output files. Operands are evaluated and placed after the instruction opcodes. Where symbols appear in the operand field, their values are retrieved from the symbol table (created during pass one) and used in calculating the correct data or addresses for the instructions.

Since two passes are performed, the source program may use "forward references", that is, use a symbol before it is defined. This would occur, for example, in branching ahead in a program.
The object file, if it is absolute, contains only the binary bytes (00H-0FH) of the machine language program. A relocatable object file will also contain a symbol table and other information required for linking and locating. The listing file contains ASCII text codes (02H-7EH) for both the source program and the hexadecimal bytes in the machine language program.

A good demonstration of the distinction between an object file and a listing file is to display each on the host computer's CRT display (using, for example, the TYPE command on MS-DOS systems). The listing file clearly displays, with each line of output containing an address, opcode, and perhaps data, followed by the program statement from the source file. The listing file displays properly because it contains only ASCII text codes. Displaying the object file is a problem, however. The output will appear as "garbage", since the object file contains binary codes of an 8051 machine language program, rather than ASCII text codes.

ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAM FORMAT

Assembly language programs contain the following:
- Machine instructions
- Assembler directives
- Assembler controls
- Comments

Machine instructions are the familiar mnemonics of executable instructions (e.g., ANL). Assembler directives are instructions to the assembler program that define program structure, symbols, data, constants, and so on (e.g., ORG). Assembler controls set assembler modes and direct assembly flow (e.g., STITLE). Comments enhance the readability of programs by explaining the purpose and operation of instruction sequences.

Those lines containing machine instructions or assembler directives must be written following specific rules understood by the assembler. Each line is divided into "fields" separated by space or tab characters. The general format for each line is as follows:

[label:]  mnemonic [operand] [, operand] [...] ;comment

Only the mnemonic field is mandatory. Many assemblers require the label field, if present, to begin on the left in column 1, and subsequent fields to be separated by space or tab characters. With ASM51, the label field needn't begin in column 1 and the mnemonic field needn't be on the same line as the label field. The operand field must, however, begin on the same line as the mnemonic field. The fields are described below.

Label Field

A label represents the address of the instruction (or data) that follows. When branching to this instruction, this label is used in the operand field of the branch or jump instruction (e.g., SJMP SKIP).

Whereas the term "label" always represents an address, the term "symbol" is more general. Labels are one type of symbol and are identified by the requirement that they must terminate with a colon (:). Symbols are assigned values or attributes, using directives such as EQU, SEGMENT, BIT, DATA, etc. Symbols may be addresses, data constants, names of segments, or other constructs conceived by the programmer. Symbols do not terminate with a colon. In the example below, PAR is a symbol and START is a label (which is a type of symbol).

```
PAR       EQU       500       ;"PAR" IS A SYMBOL WHICH
;REPRESENTS THE VALUE 500
START:    MOV       A,#0FFH    ;"START" IS A LABEL WHICH
;REPRESENTS THE ADDRESS OF
;THE MOV INSTRUCTION
```

A symbol (or label) must begin with a letter, question mark, or underscore (_); must be followed by letters, digit, "?", or ";"; and can contain up to 31 characters. Symbols may use upper- or lowercase characters, but they are treated the same. Reserved words (mnemonics, operators, predefined symbols, and directives) may not be used.
Mnemonic Field
Instruction mnemonics or assembler directives go into mnemonic field, which follows the label field. Examples of instruction mnemonics are ADD, MOV, DIV, or INC. Examples of assembler directives are ORG, EQU, or DB.

Operand Field
The operand field follows the mnemonic field. This field contains the address or data used by the instruction. A label may be used to represent the address of the data, or a symbol may be used to represent a data constant. The possibilities for the operand field are largely dependent on the operation. Some operations have no operand (e.g., the RET instruction), while others allow for multiple operands separated by commas. Indeed, the possibilities for the operand field are numerous, and we shall elaborate on these at length. But first, the comment field.

Comment Field
Remarks to clarify the program go into comment field at the end of each line. Comments must begin with a semicolon (;). Each lines may be comment lines by beginning them with a semicolon. Subroutines and large sections of a program generally begin with a comment block—serveral lines of comments that explain the general properties of the section of software that follows.

Special Assembler Symbols
Special assembler symbols are used for the register-specific addressing modes. These include A, R0 through R7, DPTR, PC, C and AB. In addition, a dollar sign ($) can be used to refer to the current value of the location counter. Some examples follow.

```
SETB   C
INC    DPTR
JNB    TI , $
```

The last instruction above makes effective use of ASM51's location counter to avoid using a label. It could also be written as

```
HERE:   JNB    TI , HERE
```

Indirect Address
For certain instructions, the operand field may specify a register that contains the address of the data. The commercial "at" sign (@) indicates address indirection and may only be used with R0, R1, the DPTR, or the PC, depending on the instruction. For example,

```
ADD    A , @R0
MOVC   A , @A+PC
```

The first instruction above retrieves a byte of data from internal RAM at the address specified in R0. The second instruction retrieves a byte of data from external code memory at the address formed by adding the contents of the accumulator to the program counter. Note that the value of the program counter, when the add takes place, is the address of the instruction following MOVC. For both instruction above, the value retrieved is placed into the accumulator.

Immediate Data
Instructions using immediate addressing provide data in the operand field that become part of the instruction. Immediate data are preceded with a pound sign (#). For example,
CONSTANT EQU 100
MOV A, #0FEH
ORL 40H, #CONSTANT

All immediate data operations (except MOV DPTR,#data) require eight bits of data. The immediate data are evaluated as a 16-bit constant, and then the low-byte is used. All bits in the high-byte must be the same (00H or FFH) or the error message "value will not fit in a byte" is generated. For example, the following instructions are syntactically correct:

MOV A, #0FF00H
MOV A, #00FFH

But the following two instructions generate error messages:

MOV A, #0FE00H
MOV A, #01FFH

If signed decimal notation is used, constants from -256 to +255 may also be used. For example, the following two instructions are equivalent (and syntactically correct):

MOV A, #-256
MOV A, #0FF00H

Both instructions above put 00H into accumulator A.

Data Address
Many instructions access memory locations using direct addressing and require an on-chip data memory address (00H to 7FH) or an SFR address (80H to 0FFH) in the operand field. Predefined symbols may be used for the SFR addresses. For example,

MOV A, 45H
MOV A, SBUF ;SAME AS MOV A, 99H

Bit Address
One of the most powerful features of the 8051 is the ability to access individual bits without the need for masking operations on bytes. Instructions accessing bit-addressable locations must provide a bit address in internal data memory (00h to 7FH) or a bit address in the SFRs (80H to 0FFH).

There are three ways to specify a bit address in an instruction: (a) explicitly by giving the address, (b) using the dot operator between the byte address and the bit position, and (c) using a predefined assembler symbol. Some examples follow.

SETB 0E7H ;EXPLICIT BIT ADDRESS
SETB ACC.7 ;DOT OPERATOR (SAME AS ABOVE)
JNB TI, $ ;"TI" IS A PRE-DEFINED SYMBOL
JNB 99H, $ ;(SAME AS ABOVE)

Code Address
A code address is used in the operand field for jump instructions, including relative jumps (SJMP and conditional jumps), absolute jumps and calls (ACALL, AJMP), and long jumps and calls (LJMP, LCALL).

The code address is usually given in the form of a label.

ASM51 will determine the correct code address and insert into the instruction the correct 8-bit signed offset, 11-bit page address, or 16-bit long address, as appropriate.
Generic Jumps and Calls

ASM51 allows programmers to use a generic JMP or CALL mnemonic. "JMP" can be used instead of SJMP, AJMP or LJMP; and "CALL" can be used instead of ACALL or LCALL. The assembler converts the generic mnemonic to a "real" instruction following a few simple rules. The generic mnemonic converts to the short form (for JMP only) if no forward references are used and the jump destination is within -128 locations, or to the absolute form if no forward references are used and the instruction following the JMP or CALL instruction is in the same 2K block as the destination instruction. If short or absolute forms cannot be used, the conversion is to the long form.

The conversion is not necessarily the best programming choice. For example, if branching ahead a few instructions, the generic JMP will always convert to LJMP even though an SJMP is probably better. Consider the following assembled instructions sequence using three generic jumps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOC</th>
<th>OBJ</th>
<th>LINE</th>
<th>SOURCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1234</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>ORG 1234H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1234</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>START: INC A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1235</td>
<td>80FD</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>JMP START; ASSEMBLES AS SJMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12FC</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>ORG START + 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12FC</td>
<td>4134</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>JMP START; ASSEMBLES AS AJMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12FE</td>
<td>021301</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>JMP FINISH; ASSEMBLES AS LJMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1301</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>FINISH: INC A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1301</td>
<td>04</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>END</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first jump (line 3) assembles as SJMP because the destination is before the jump (i.e., no forward reference) and the offset is less than -128. The ORG directive in line 4 creates a gap of 200 locations between the label START and the second jump, so the conversion on line 5 is to AJMP because the offset is too great for SJMP. Note also that the address following the second jump (12FEH) and the address of START (1234H) are within the same 2K page, which, for this instruction sequence, is bounded by 1000H and 17FFH. This criterion must be met for absolute addressing. The third jump assembles as LJMP because the destination (FINISH) is not yet defined when the jump is assembled (i.e., a forward reference is used). The reader can verify that the conversion is as stated by examining the object field for each jump instruction.

ASSEMBLE-TIME EXPRESSION EVALUATION

Values and constants in the operand field may be expressed three ways: (a) explicitly (e.g., 0EFH), (b) with a predefined symbol (e.g., ACC), or (c) with an expression (e.g., 2 + 3). The use of expressions provides a powerful technique for making assembly language programs more readable and more flexible. When an expression is used, the assembler calculates a value and inserts it into the instruction.

All expression calculations are performed using 16-bit arithmetic; however, either 8 or 16 bits are inserted into the instruction as needed. For example, the following two instructions are the same:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{MOV D PTR,} & \ #04FFH + 3 \\
\text{MOV D PTR,} & \ #0502H \\
\end{align*}
\]

;ENTIRE 16-BIT RESULT USED

If the same expression is used in a "MOV A, #data" instruction, however, the error message "value will not fit in a byte" is generated by ASM51. An overview of the rules for evaluating expressions follows.
Number Bases

The base for numeric constants is indicated in the usual way for Intel microprocessors. Constants must be followed with "B" for binary, "O" or "Q" for octal, "D" or nothing for decimal, or "H" for hexadecimal. For example, the following instructions are the same:

```
MOV A, #15H
MOV A, #1111B
MOV A, #0FH
MOV A, #17Q
MOV A, #15D
```

Note that a digit must be the first character for hexadecimal constants in order to differentiate them from labels (i.e., "0A5H" not "A5H").

Character Strings

Strings using one or two characters may be used as operands in expressions. The ASCII codes are converted to the binary equivalent by the assembler. Character constants are enclosed in single quotes ('). Some examples follow.

```
CJNE A, # 'Q', AGAIN
SUBB A, # 'O' ; CONVERT ASCII DIGIT TO BINARY DIGIT
MOV DPTR, # 'AB'
MOV DPTR, #4142H ; SAME AS ABOVE
```

Arithmetic Operators

The arithmetic operators are:

- `+` addition
- `-` subtraction
- `*` multiplication
- `/` division
- `MOD` modulo (remainder after division)

For example, the following two instructions are same:

```
MOV A, 10 +10H
MOV A, #1AH
```

The following two instructions are also the same:

```
MOV A, #25 MOD 7
MOV A, #4
```

Since the MOD operator could be confused with a symbol, it must be separated from its operands by at least one space or tab character, or the operands must be enclosed in parentheses. The same applies for the other operators composed of letters.

Logical Operators

The logical operators are:

- `OR` logical OR
- `AND` logical AND
- `XOR` logical Exclusive OR
- `NOT` logical NOT (complement)
The operation is applied on the corresponding bits in each operand. The operator must be separated from the operands by space or tab characters. For example, the following two instructions are the same:

```
MOV  A, # '9' AND 0FH
MOV  A, #9
```

The NOT operator only takes one operand. The following three MOV instructions are the same:

```
THREE EQU 3
MINUS_THREE EQU -3
MOV  A, # (NOT THREE) + 1
MOV  A, #MINUS_THREE
MOV  A, #11111101B
```

**Special Operators**

The special operators are:

- **SHR** shift right
- **SHL** shift left
- **HIGH** high-byte
- **LOW** low-byte
- **()** evaluate first

For example, the following two instructions are the same:

```
MOV  A, #8  SHL 1
MOV  A, #10H
```

The following two instructions are also the same:

```
MOV  A, #HIGH 1234H
MOV  A, #12H
```

**Relational Operators**

When a relational operator is used between two operands, the result is always false (0000H) or true (FFFFH). The operators are:

- **EQ** = equals
- **NE** < > not equals
- **LT** < less than
- **LE** <= less than or equal to
- **GT** > greater than
- **GE** >= greater than or equal to

Note that for each operator, two forms are acceptable (e.g., "EQ" or "="). In the following examples, all relational tests are "true":

```
MOV  A, #5 = 5
MOV  A,#5 NE 4
MOV  A,# 'X' LT 'Z'
MOV  A,# 'X' >= 'X'
MOV  A,#$ > 0
MOV  A,#100 GE 50
```
So, the assembled instructions are equal to

```
MOV  A, #0FFH
```

Even though expressions evaluate to 16-bit results (i.e., 0FFFFH), in the examples above only the low-order eight bits are used, since the instruction is a move byte operation. The result is not considered too big in this case, because as signed numbers the 16-bit value FFFFH and the 8-bit value FFH are the same (-1).

**Expression Examples**

The following are examples of expressions and the values that result:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'B' - 'A'</td>
<td>0001H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/3</td>
<td>0002H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155 MOD 2</td>
<td>0001H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 * 4</td>
<td>0010H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 AND 7</td>
<td>0000H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT 1</td>
<td>FFFEH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'A' SHL 8</td>
<td>4100H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW 65535</td>
<td>00FFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8 + 1) * 2</td>
<td>0012H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 EQ 4</td>
<td>0000H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'A' LT 'B'</td>
<td>FFFFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 &lt;= 3</td>
<td>FFFFHs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A practical example that illustrates a common operation for timer initialization follows: Put -500 into Timer 1 registers TH1 and TL1. In using the HIGH and LOW operators, a good approach is

```
VALUE EQU -500
MOV TH1, #HIGH VALUE
MOV TL1, #LOW VALUE
```

The assembler converts -500 to the corresponding 16-bit value (FE0CH); then the HIGH and LOW operators extract the high (FEH) and low (0CH) bytes, as appropriate for each MOV instruction.

**Operator Precedence**

The precedence of expression operators from highest to lowest is

( )

HIGH LOW

* / MOD SHL SHR

+ -

EQ NE LT LE GT GE = <> <= > >=

NOT

AND

OR XOR

When operators of the same precedence are used, they are evaluated left to right.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HIGH ('A' SHL 8)</td>
<td>0041H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH 'A' SHL 8</td>
<td>0000H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOT 'A' - 1</td>
<td>FFBFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'A' OR 'A' SHL 8</td>
<td>4141H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASSEMBLER DIRECTIVES

Assembler directives are instructions to the assembler program. They are not assembly language instructions executable by the target microprocessor. However, they are placed in the mnemonic field of the program. With the exception of DB and DW, they have no direct effect on the contents of memory.

ASM51 provides several categories of directives:

- Assembler state control (ORG, END, USING)
- Symbol definition (SEGMENT, EQU, SET, DATA, IDATA, XDATA, BIT, CODE)
- Storage initialization/reservation (DS, DBIT, DB, DW)
- Program linkage (PUBLIC, EXTRN, NAME)
- Segment selection (RSEG, CSEG, DSEG, ISEG, ESEG, XSEG)

Each assembler directive is presented below, ordered by category.

Assembler State Control

**ORG (Set Origin)**

The format for the ORG (set origin) directive is

```
ORG expression
```

The ORG directive alters the location counter to set a new program origin for statements that follow. A label is not permitted. Two examples follow.

```
ORG 100H ;SET LOCATION COUNTER TO 100H
ORG ($ + 1000H) AND 0F00H ;SET TO NEXT 4K BOUNDARY
```

The ORG directive can be used in any segment type. If the current segment is absolute, the value will be an absolute address in the current segment. If a relocatable segment is active, the value of the ORG expression is treated as an offset from the base address of the current instance of the segment.

**End**

The format of the END directive is

```
END
```

END should be the last statement in the source file. No label is permitted and nothing beyond the END statement is processed by the assembler.

**Using**

The format of the END directive is

```
USING expression
```

This directive informs ASM51 of the currently active register bank. Subsequent uses of the predefined symbolic register addresses AR0 to AR7 will convert to the appropriate direct address for the active register bank. Consider the following sequence:

```
USING 3
PUSH AR7
USING 1
PUSH AR7
```

The first push above assembles to PUSH 1FH (R7 in bank 3), whereas the second push assembles to PUSH 0FH (R7 in bank 1).

Note that USING does not actually switch register banks; it only informs ASM51 of the active bank. Executing 8051 instructions is the only way to switch register banks. This is illustrated by modifying the example above as follows:
Symbol Definition

The symbol definition directives create symbols that represent segment, registers, numbers, and addresses. None of these directives may be preceded by a label. Symbols defined by these directives may not have been previously defined and may not be redefined by any means. The SET directive is the only exception. Symbol definition directives are described below.

Segment

The format for the SEGMENT directive is shown below:

symbol SEGMENT segment_type

The symbol is the name of a relocatable segment. In the use of segments, ASM51 is more complex than conventional assemblers, which generally support only "code" and "data" segment types. However, ASM51 defines additional segment types to accommodate the diverse memory spaces in the 8051. The following are the defined 8051 segment types (memory spaces):

- CODE (the code segment)
- XDATA (the external data space)
- DATA (the internal data space accessible by direct addressing, 00H–07H)
- IDATA (the entire internal data space accessible by indirect addressing, 00H–07H)
- BIT (the bit space; overlapping byte locations 20H–2FH of the internal data space)

For example, the statement

EPROM SEGMENT CODE

declares the symbol EPROM to be a SEGMENT of type CODE. Note that this statement simply declares what EPROM is. To actually begin using this segment, the RSEG directive is used (see below).

EQU (Equate)

The format for the EQU directive is

Symbol EQU expression

The EQU directive assigns a numeric value to a specified symbol name. The symbol must be a valid symbol name, and the expression must conform to the rules described earlier.

The following are examples of the EQU directive:

N27 EQU 27 ;SET N27 TO THE VALUE 27
HERE EQU $ ;SET "HERE" TO THE VALUE OF ;THE LOCATION COUNTER
CR EQU 0DH ;SET CR (CARRIAGE RETURN) TO 0DH
MESSAGE: DB 'This is a message'
LENGTH EQU $ - MESSAGE ;"LENGTH" EQUALS LENGTH OF "MESSAGE"

Other Symbol Definition Directives

The SET directive is similar to the EQU directive except the symbol may be redefined later, using another SET directive.
The DATA, IDATA, XDATA, BIT, and CODE directives assign addresses of the corresponding segment type to a symbol. These directives are not essential. A similar effect can be achieved using the EQU directive; if used, however, they evoke powerful type-checking by ASM51. Consider the following two directives and four instructions:

```
FLAG1  EQU 05H
FLAG2  BIT 05H
SETB FLAG1
SETB FLAG2
MOV  FLAG1, #0
MOV  FLAG2, #0
```

The use of FLAG2 in the last instruction in this sequence will generate a "data segment address expected" error message from ASM51. Since FLAG2 is defined as a bit address (using the BIT directive), it can be used in a set bit instruction, but it cannot be used in a move byte instruction. Hence, the error. Even though FLAG1 represents the same value (05H), it was defined using EQU and does not have an associated address space. This is not an advantage of EQU, but rather, a disadvantage. By properly defining address symbols for use in a specific memory space (using the directives BIT, DATA, XDATA, etc.), the programmer takes advantage of ASM51's powerful type-checking and avoids bugs from the misuse of symbols.

**Storage Initialization/Reservation**

The storage initialization and reservation directives initialize and reserve space in either word, byte, or bit units. The space reserved starts at the location indicated by the current value of the location counter in the currently active segment. These directives may be preceded by a label. The storage initialization/reservation directives are described below.

**DS (Define Storage)**

The format for the DS (define storage) directive is

```
[label:]  DS expression
```

The DS directive reserves space in byte units. It can be used in any segment type except BIT. The expression must be a valid assemble-time expression with no forward references and no relocatable or external references. When a DS statement is encountered in a program, the location counter of the current segment is incremented by the value of the expression. The sum of the location counter and the specified expression should not exceed the limitations of the current address space.

The following statement create a 40-byte buffer in the internal data segment:

```
DSEG  AT  30H ;PUT IN DATA SEGMENT (ABSOLUTE, INTERNAL)
LENGTH EQU 40
BUFFER: DS LENGRH ;40 BYTES RESERVED
```

The label BUFFER represents the address of the first location of reserved memory. For this example, the buffer begins at address 30H because "AT 30H" is specified with DSEG. The buffer could be cleared using the following instruction sequence:

```
MOV  R7, #LENGTH
MOV  R0, #BUFFER
LOOP: MOV  @R0, #0
DJNZ R7, LOOP
```

(continue)
To create a 1000-byte buffer in external RAM starting at 4000H, the following directives could be used:

```
XSTART   EQU 4000H
XLENGTH  EQU 1000
XSEG     AT XSTART
XBUFFER: DS XLENGTH
```

This buffer could be cleared with the following instruction sequence:

```
MOV     DPTR, #XBUFFER
LOOP:   CLR    A
        MOVX    @DPTR, A
        INC    DPTR
        MOV     A, DPL
        CJNE    A, #LOW (XBUFFER + XLENGTH + 1), LOOP
        MOV     A, DPH
        CJNE    A, #HIGH (XBUFFER + XLENGTH + 1), LOOP
```

This is an excellent example of a powerful use of ASM51's operators and assemble-time expressions. Since an instruction does not exist to compare the data pointer with an immediate value, the operation must be fabricated from available instructions. Two compares are required, one each for the high- and low-bytes of the DPTR. Furthermore, the compare-and-jump-if-not-equal instruction works only with the accumulator or a register, so the data pointer bytes must be moved into the accumulator before the CJNE instruction. The loop terminates only when the data pointer has reached XBUFFER + LENGTH + 1. (The "+1" is needed because the data pointer is incremented after the last MOVX instruction.)

**DBIT**

The format for the DBIT (define bit) directive is,

```
[label:] DBIT expression
```

The DBIT directive reserves space in bit units. It can be used only in a BIT segment. The expression must be a valid assemble-time expression with no forward references. When the DBIT statement is encountered in a program, the location counter of the current (BIT) segment is incremented by the value of the expression. Note that in a BIT segment, the basic unit of the location counter is bits rather than bytes. The following directives create three flags in an absolute bit segment:

```
BSEG ;BIT SEGMENT (ABSOLUTE)
KEFLAG: DBIT 1 ;KEYBOARD STATUS
PRFLAG: DBIT 1 ;PRINTER STATUS
DKFLAG: DBIT 1 ;DISK STATUS
```

Since an address is not specified with BSEG in the example above, the address of the flags defined by DBIT could be determined (if one wishes to do so) by examining the symbol table in the .LST or .M51 files. If the definitions above were the first use of BSEG, then KBFLAG would be at bit address 00H (bit 0 of byte address 20H). If other bits were defined previously using BSEG, then the definitions above would follow the last bit defined.

**DB (Define Byte)**

The format for the DB (define byte) directive is,

```
[label:] DB expression [, expression] […]
```

The DB directive initializes code memory with byte values. Since it is used to actually place data constants in code memory, a CODE segment must be active. The expression list is a series of one or more byte values (each of which may be an expression) separated by commas.
The DB directive permits character strings (enclosed in single quotes) longer than two characters as long as they are not part of an expression. Each character in the string is converted to the corresponding ASCII code. If a label is used, it is assigned the address of the first byte. For example, the following statements

```
CSEG AT 0100H
SQUARES: DB 0, 1, 4, 9, 16, 25 ; SQUARES OF NUMBERS 0-5
MESSAGE: DB 'Login:', 0 ; NULL-TERMINATED CHARACTER STRING
```

When assembled, result in the following hexadecimal memory assignments for external code memory:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0100</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0101</td>
<td>01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0102</td>
<td>04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0103</td>
<td>09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0104</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0105</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0106</td>
<td>4C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0107</td>
<td>6F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0108</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0109</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010A</td>
<td>6E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010B</td>
<td>3A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010C</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DW (Define Word)**

The DW (define word) directive is

```
[label:] DW expression [, expression] […]
```

The DW directive is the same as the DB directive except two memory locations (16 bits) are assigned for each data item. For example, the statements

```
CSEG AT 200H
DW $, 'A', 1234H, 2, 'BC'
```

result in the following hexadecimal memory assignments:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0200</td>
<td>02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0201</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0202</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0203</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0204</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0205</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0206</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0207</td>
<td>02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0208</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0209</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Program Linkage**

Program linkage directives allow the separately assembled modules (files) to communicate by permitting intermodule references and the naming of modules. In the following discussion, a "module" can be considered a "file." (In fact, a module may encompass more than one file.)
The format for the PUBLIC (public symbol) directive is

```
PUBLIC   symbol [, symbol] […]
```

The PUBLIC directive allows the list of specified symbols to be known and used outside the currently assembled module. A symbol declared PUBLIC must be defined in the current module. Declaring it PUBLIC allows it to be referenced in another module. For example,

```
PUBLIC   INCHAR, OUTCHR, INLINE, OUTSTR
```

The format for the EXTRN (external symbol) directive is

```
EXTRN   segment_type   (symbol [, symbol] […], …)
```

The EXTRN directive lists symbols to be referenced in the current module that are defined in other modules. The list of external symbols must have a segment type associated with each symbol in the list. (The segment types are CODE, XDATA, DATA, IDATA, BIT, and NUMBER. NUMBER is a type-less symbol defined by EQU.) The segment type indicates the way a symbol may be used. The information is important at link-time to ensure symbols are used properly in different modules.

The PUBLIC and EXTRN directives work together. Consider the two files, MAIN.SRC and MESSAGES.SRC. The subroutines HELLO and GOOD_BYE are defined in the module MESSAGES but are made available to other modules using the PUBLIC directive. The subroutines are called in the module MAIN even though they are not defined there. The EXTRN directive declares that these symbols are defined in another module.

MAIN.SRC:

```
EXTRN   CODE (HELLO, GOOD_BYE)
...
CALL   HELLO
...
CALL   GOOD_BYE
...
END
```

MESSAGES.SRC:

```
PUBLIC   HELLO, GOOD_BYE
...
HELLO:   (begin subroutine)
...
RET
GOOD_BYE: (begin subroutine)
...
RET
...
END
```

Neither MAIN.SRC nor MESSAGES.SRC is a complete program; they must be assembled separately and linked together to form an executable program. During linking, the external references are resolved with correct addresses inserted as the destination for the CALL instructions.

The format for the NAME directive is

```
NAME    module_name
```
All the usual rules for symbol names apply to module names. If a name is not provided, the module takes on
the file name (without a drive or subdirectory specifier and without an extension). In the absence of any use
of the NAME directive, a program will contain one module for each file. The concept of "modules," therefore,
is somewhat cumbersome, at least for relatively small programming problems. Even programs of moderate
size (encompassing, for example, several files complete with relocatable segments) needn't use the NAME
directive and needn't pay any special attention to the concept of "modules." For this reason, it was mentioned in
the definition that a module may be considered a "file," to simplify learning ASM51. However, for very large
programs (several thousand lines of code, or more), it makes sense to partition the problem into modules, where,
for example, each module may encompass several files containing routines having a common purpose.

Segment Selection Directives

When the assembler encounters a segment selection directive, it diverts the following code or data into the
selected segment until another segment is selected by a segment selection directive. The directive may select may
select a previously defined relocatable segment or optionally create and select absolute segments.

RSEG (Relocatable Segment)  The format for the RSEG (relocatable segment) directive is
RSEG   segment_name
Where "segment_name" is the name of a relocatable segment previously defined with the SEGMENT directive.
RSEG is a "segment selection" directive that diverts subsequent code or data into the named segment until another
segment selection directive is encountered.

Selecting Absolute Segments  RSEG selects a relocatable segment. An "absolute" segment, on the other
hand, is selected using one of the directives:
CSEG (AT  address)
DSEG (AT  address)
ISEG (AT  address)
BSEG (AT  address)
XSEG (AT  address)

These directives select an absolute segment within the code, internal data, indirect internal data, bit, or external
data address spaces, respectively. If an absolute address is provided (by indicating "AT address"), the assembler
terminates the last absolute address segment, if any, of the specified segment type and creates a new absolute
segment starting at that address. If an absolute address is not specified, the last absolute segment of the specified
type is continued. If no absolute segment of this type was previously selected and the absolute address is omitted,
a new segment is created starting at location 0. Forward references are not allowed and start addresses must be
absolute.

Each segment has its own location counter, which is always set to 0 initially. The default segment is an
absolute code segment; therefore, the initial state of the assembler is location 0000H in the absolute code segment.
When another segment is chosen for the first time, the location counter of the former segment retains the last
active value. When that former segment is reselected, the location counter picks up at the last active value. The
ORG directive may be used to change the location counter within the currently selected segment.

ASSEMBLER CONTROLS

Assembler controls establish the format of the listing and object files by regulating the actions of ASM51. For the
most part, assembler controls affect the look of the listing file, without having any affect on the program itself.
They can be entered on the invocation line when a program is assembled, or they can be placed in the source file.
Assembler controls appearing in the source file must be preceded with a dollor sign and must begin in column 1.
There are two categories of assembler controls: primary and general. Primary controls can be placed in the invocation line or at the beginning of the source program. Only other primary controls may precede a primary control. General controls may be placed anywhere in the source program.

**LINKER OPERATION**

In developing large application programs, it is common to divide tasks into subprograms or modules containing sections of code (usually subroutines) that can be written separately from the overall program. The term "modular programming" refers to this programming strategy. Generally, modules are relocatable, meaning they are not intended for a specific address in the code or data space. A linking and locating program is needed to combine the modules into one absolute object module that can be executed.

Intel's RL51 is a typical linker/locator. It processes a series of relocatable object modules as input and creates an executable machine language program (PROGRAM, perhaps) and a listing file containing a memory map and symbol table (PROGRAM.M51). This is illustrated in following figure.

![Linker operation diagram](image)

As relocatable modules are combined, all values for external symbols are resolved with values inserted into the output file. The linker is invoked from the system prompt by

```
RL51 input_list [T0 output_file] [location_controls]
```

The input_list is a list of relocatable object modules (files) separated by commas. The output_list is the name of the output absolute object module. If none is supplied, it defaults to the name of the first input file without any suffix. The location_controls set start addresses for the named segments.

For example, suppose three modules or files (MAIN.OBJ, MESSAGES.OBJ, and SUBROUTINES.OBJ) are to be combined into an executable program (EXAMPLE), and that these modules each contain two relocatable segments, one called EPROM of type CODE, and the other called ONCHIP of type DATA. Suppose further that the code segment is to be executable at address 4000H and the data segment is to reside starting at address 30H (in internal RAM). The following linker invocation could be used:

```
RS51 MAIN.OBJ, MESSAGES.OBJ, SUBROUTINES.OBJ TO EXAMPLE & CODE
(EPROM (4000H) DATA (ONCHIP (30H))
```

Note that the ampersand character "&" is used as the line continuation character.

If the program begins at the label START, and this is the first instruction in the MAIN module, then execution begins at address 4000H. If the MAIN module was not linked first, or if the label START is not at the beginning of MAIN, then the program's entry point can be determined by examining the symbol table in the listing file EXAMPLE.M51 created by RL51. By default, EXAMPLE.M51 will contain only the link map. If a symbol table is desired, then each source program must have used the SDEBUG control. The following table shows the assembler controls supported by ASM51.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>PRIMARY/GENERAL</th>
<th>DEFAULT</th>
<th>ABBREV.</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DATE (date)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>DATE( )</td>
<td>DA</td>
<td>Place string in header (9 char. max.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEBUG</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>NODEBUG</td>
<td>DB</td>
<td>Outputs debug symbol information to object file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EJECT</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>not applicable</td>
<td>EJ</td>
<td>Continue listing on next page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERRORPRINT (file)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>NOERRORPRINT</td>
<td>EP</td>
<td>Designates a file to receive error messages in addition to the listing file (defaults to console)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOERRORPRINT</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>NOERRORPRINT</td>
<td>NOEP</td>
<td>Designates that error messages will be printed in listing file only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>GENONLY</td>
<td>GO</td>
<td>List only the fully expanded source as if all lines generated by a macro call were already in the source file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENONLY</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>GENONLY</td>
<td>NOGE</td>
<td>List only the original source text in the listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCLUDED(file)</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>not applicable</td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Designates a file to be included as part of the program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>LIST</td>
<td>LI</td>
<td>Print subsequent lines of source code in listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOLIST</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>LIST</td>
<td>NOLI</td>
<td>Do not print subsequent lines of source code in listing file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MACRO (men_percent)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>MACRO(50)</td>
<td>MR</td>
<td>Evaluate and expand all macro calls. Allocate percentage of free memory for macro processing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOMACRO</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>MACRO(50)</td>
<td>NOMR</td>
<td>Do not evaluate macro calls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD51</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>MOD51</td>
<td>MO</td>
<td>Recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOMOD51</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>MOD51</td>
<td>NOMO</td>
<td>Do not recognize the 8051-specific predefined special function registers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT(file)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>OBJECT(source.OBJ)</td>
<td>OJ</td>
<td>Designates file to receive object code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOOBJECT</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>OBJECT(source.OBJ)</td>
<td>NOOJ</td>
<td>Designates that no object file will be created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGING</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>PAGING</td>
<td>PI</td>
<td>Designates that listing file be broken into pages and each will have a header</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOPAGING</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>PAGING</td>
<td>NOPI</td>
<td>Designates that listing file will contain no page breaks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGELENGTH (N)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>PAGELENGTH(60)</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Sets maximum number of lines in each page of listing file (range=10 to 65536)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE WIDTH (N)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>PAGEWIDTH(120)</td>
<td>PW</td>
<td>Set maximum number of characters in each line of listing file (range = 72 to 132)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRINT(file)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>PRINT(source.LST)</td>
<td>PR</td>
<td>Designates file to receive source listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOPRINT</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>PRINT(source.LST)</td>
<td>NOPR</td>
<td>Designates that no listing file will be created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAVE</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>not applicable</td>
<td>SA</td>
<td>Stores current control settings from SAVE stack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESTORE</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>not applicable</td>
<td>RS</td>
<td>Restores control settings from SAVE stack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REGISTERBANK (rb,...)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>REGISTERBANK(0)</td>
<td>RB</td>
<td>Indicates one or more banks used in program module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOREGISTERBANK</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>REGISTERBANK(0)</td>
<td>NORB</td>
<td>Indicates that no register banks are used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYMBOLS</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>SYMBOLS</td>
<td>SB</td>
<td>Creates a formatted table of all symbols used in program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOSYMBOLS</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>SYMBOLS</td>
<td>NOSB</td>
<td>Designates that no symbol table is created</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE(string)</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>TITLE( )</td>
<td>TT</td>
<td>Places a string in all subsequent page headers (max.60 characters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WORKFILES (path)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>same as source</td>
<td>WF</td>
<td>Designates alternate path for temporary workfiles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XREF</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>NOXREF</td>
<td>XR</td>
<td>Creates a cross reference listing of all symbols used in program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOXREF</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>NOXREF</td>
<td>NOXR</td>
<td>Designates that no cross reference list is created</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MACROS

The macro processing facility (MPL) of ASM51 is a "string replacement" facility. Macros allow frequently used sections of code be defined once using a simple mnemonic and used anywhere in the program by inserting the mnemonic. Programming using macros is a powerful extension of the techniques described thus far. Macros can be defined anywhere in a source program and subsequently used like any other instruction. The syntax for macro definition is

\[
\%*\text{DEFINE} \quad (\text{call}\_\text{pattern}) \quad (\text{macro}\_\text{body})
\]

Once defined, the call pattern is like a mnemonic; it may be used like any assembly language instruction by placing it in the mnemonic field of a program. Macros are made distinct from "real" instructions by preceding them with a percent sign, "\%". When the source program is assembled, everything within the macro-body, on a character-by-character basis, is substituted for the call-pattern. The mystique of macros is largely unfounded. They provide a simple means for replacing cumbersome instruction patterns with primitive, easy-to-remember mnemonics. The substitution, we reiterate, is on a character-by-character basis—nothing more, nothing less.

For example, if the following macro definition appears at the beginning of a source file,

\[
\%*\text{DEFINE} \quad (\text{PUSH}\_\text{DPTR})
\begin{align*}
&\quad (\text{PUSH} \quad \text{DPH}) \\
&\quad (\text{PUSH} \quad \text{DPL})
\end{align*}
\]

then the statement

\[
\%\text{PUSH}\_\text{DPTR}
\]

will appear in the .LST file as

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{PUSH} & \quad \text{DPH} \\
\text{PUSH} & \quad \text{DPL}
\end{align*}
\]

The example above is a typical macro. Since the 8051 stack instructions operate only on direct addresses, pushing the data pointer requires two PUSH instructions. A similar macro can be created to POP the data pointer. There are several distinct advantages in using macros:

- A source program using macros is more readable, since the macro mnemonic is generally more indicative of the intended operation than the equivalent assembler instructions.
- The source program is shorter and requires less typing.
- Using macros reduces bugs
- Using macros frees the programmer from dealing with low-level details.

The last two points above are related. Once a macro is written and debugged, it is used freely without the worry of bugs. In the PUSH\_DPTR example above, if PUSH and POP instructions are used rather than push and pop macros, the programmer may inadvertently reverse the order of the pushes or pops. (Was it the high-byte or low-byte that was pushed first?) This would create a bug. Using macros, however, the details are worked out once—when the macro is written—and the macro is used freely thereafter, without the worry of bugs.

Since the replacement is on a character-by-character basis, the macro definition should be carefully constructed with carriage returns, tabs, etc., to ensure proper alignment of the macro statements with the rest of the assembly language program. Some trial and error is required.

There are advanced features of ASM51's macro-processing facility that allow for parameter passing, local labels, repeat operations, assembly flow control, and so on. These are discussed below.
Parameter Passing

A macro with parameters passed from the main program has the following modified format:

\[
\text{%*DEFINE (macro\_name (parameter\_list)) (macro\_body)}
\]

For example, if the following macro is defined,

\[
\text{%*DEFINE (CMPA\# (VALUE)) (CJNE A, \#%VALUE, $ + 3 )}
\]

then the macro call

\[
\text{%CMPA\# (20H)}
\]

will expand to the following instruction in the .LST file:

\[
\text{CJNE A, #20H, $ + 3}
\]

Although the 8051 does not have a "compare accumulator" instruction, one is easily created using the CJNE instruction with "$+3" (the next instruction) as the destination for the conditional jump. The CMPA# mnemonic may be easier to remember for many programmers. Besides, use of the macro unburdens the programmer from remembering notational details, such as "$+3."

Let's develop another example. It would be nice if the 8051 had instructions such as

- **JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR GREATER THAN X**
- **JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO X**
- **JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR LESS THAN X**
- **JUMP IF ACCUMULATOR LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO X**

but it does not. These operations can be created using CJNE followed by JC or JNC, but the details are tricky. Suppose, for example, it is desired to jump to the label GREATER_THAN if the accumulator contains an ASCII code greater than "Z" (5AH). The following instruction sequence would work:

\[
\text{CJNE A, #5BH, $+3} \\
\text{JNC GREATER\_THAN}
\]

The CJNE instruction subtracts 5BH (i.e., "Z" + 1) from the content of A and sets or clears the carry flag accordingly. CJNE leaves C=1 for accumulator values 00H up to and including 5AH. (Note: 5AH-5BH<0, therefore C=1; but 5BH-5BH=0, therefore C=0.) Jumping to GREATER_THAN on the condition "not carry" correctly jumps for accumulator values 5BH, 5CH, 5DH, and so on, up to FFH. Once details such as these are worked out, they can be simplified by inventing an appropriate mnemonic, defining a macro, and using the macro instead of the corresponding instruction sequence. Here's the definition for a "jump if greater than" macro:

\[
\text{%*DEFINE (JGT (VALUE, LABEL)) (CJNE A, \#%VALUE+1, $+3 ;JGT JNC %LABEL )}
\]

To test if the accumulator contains an ASCII code greater than "Z," as just discussed, the macro would be called as

\[
\text{%JGT ('Z', GREATER\_THAN )}
\]

ASM51 would expand this into

\[
\text{CJNE A, #5BH, $+3 ;JGT}
\]

The JGT macro is an excellent example of a relevant and powerful use of macros. By using macros, the programmer benefits by using a meaningful mnemonic and avoiding messy and potentially bug-ridden details.
Local Labels

Local labels may be used within a macro using the following format:

```
%*DEFINE (macro_name [(parameter_list)])
[LOCAL list_of_local_labels] (macro_body)
```

For example, the following macro definition

```
%*DEFINE  (DEC_DPTR) LOCAL SKIP
  (DEC  DPL ;DECREMENT DATA POINTER
  MOV   A, DPL
  CJNE  A, #0FFH, %SKIP
  DEC   DPL

  %SKIP: )
```

would be called as

```
%DEC_DPTR
```

and would be expanded by ASM51 into

```
DEC  DPL ;DECREMENT DATA POINTER
MOV   A, DPL
CJNE  A, #0FFH, SKIP00
DEC   DPH

SKIP00:
```

Note that a local label generally will not conflict with the same label used elsewhere in the source program, since
ASM51 appends a numeric code to the local label when the macro is expanded. Furthermore, the next use of the
same local label receives the next numeric code, and so on.

The macro above has a potential "side effect." The accumulator is used as a temporary holding place for
DPL. If the macro is used within a section of code that uses A for another purpose, the value in A would be lost.
This side effect probably represents a bug in the program. The macro definition could guard against this by saving
A on the stack. Here's an alternate definition for the DEC_DPTR macro:

```
%*DEFINE  (DEC_DPTR) LOCAL SKIP
  (PUSHACC
  DEC  DPL ;DECREMENT DATA POINTER
  MOV   A, DPL
  CJNE  A, #0FFH, SKIP00
  DEC   DPH

  POP  ACC

  %SKIP: )
```

Repeat Operations

This is one of several built-in (predefined) macros. The format is

```
%REPEAT (expression) (text)
```

For example, to fill a block of memory with 100 NOP instructions,

```
%REPEAT (100)
  (NOP
   )
```

Control Flow Operations

The conditional assembly of section of code is provided by ASM51's control flow macro definition. The format is

```
%IF (expression) THEN (balanced_text)
[ELSE (balanced_text)] FI
```

For example,

```
INTRENAL  EQU  1 ; 1 = 8051 SERIAL I/O DRIVERS
             ; 0 = 8251 SERIAL I/O DRIVERS
.
.
%IF (INTERNAL) THEN
(INCHAR:  . ; 8051 DRIVERS
.
OUTCHR:   .
.
) ELSE
(INCHAR:  . ; 8251 DRIVERS
.
OUTCHR:   .
.
)
```

In this example, the symbol INTERNAL is given the value 1 to select I/O subroutines for the 8051’s serial port, or the value 0 to select I/O subroutines for an external UART, in this case the 8251. The IF macro causes ASM51 to assemble one set of drivers and skip over the other. Elsewhere in the program, the INCHAR and OUTCHR subroutines are used without consideration for the particular hardware configuration. As long as the program as assembled with the correct value for INTERNAL, the correct subroutine is executed.
Appendix B: 8051 C Programming

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF 8051 C

The advantages of programming the 8051 in C as compared to assembly are:

- Offers all the benefits of high-level, structured programming languages such as C, including the ease of writing subroutines
- Often relieves the programmer of the hardware details that the compiler handles on behalf of the programmer
- Easier to write, especially for large and complex programs
- Produces more readable program source codes

Nevertheless, 8051 C, being very similar to the conventional C language, also suffers from the following disadvantages:

- Processes the disadvantages of high-level, structured programming languages
- Generally generates larger machine codes
- Programmer has less control and less ability to directly interact with hardware

To compare between 8051 C and assembly language, consider the solutions to the Example—Write a program using Timer 0 to create a 1KHz square wave on P1.0.

A solution written below in 8051 C language:

```c
sbit portbit = P1^0; /*Use variable portbit to refer to P1.0*/
main ( )
{
    TMOD = 1;
    while (1)
    {
        TH0 = 0xFE;
        TL0 = 0xC;
        TR0 = 1;
        while (TF0 !=1);
        TR0 = 0;
        TF0 = 0;
        portbit = !(P1.^0);
    }
}
```

A solution written below in assembly language:

```asm
ORG 8100H
MOV TMOD, #01H ;16-bit timer mode
LOOP: MOV TH0, #0FEH  ;-500 (high byte)
       MOV TL0, #0CH   ;-500 (low byte)
       SETB TR0  ;start timer
       WAIT: JNB TF0, WAIT  ;wait for overflow
              CLR TR0  ;stop timer
              CLR TF0  ;clear timer overflow flag
              CPL P1.0  ;toggle port bit
              SJMP LOOP  ;repeat
END
```

STC MCU Limited.

website: www.STCMCU.com
Notice that both the assembly and C language solutions for the above example require almost the same number of lines. However, the difference lies in the readability of these programs. The C version seems more human than assembly, and is hence more readable. This often helps facilitate the human programmer's efforts to write even very complex programs. The assembly language version is more closely related to the machine code, and though less readable, often results in more compact machine code. As with this example, the resultant machine code from the assembly version takes 83 bytes while that of the C version requires 149 bytes, an increase of 79.5%!

The human programmer's choice of either high-level C language or assembly language for talking to the 8051, whose language is machine language, presents an interesting picture, as shown in following figure.

![Conversion between human, high-level, assembly, and machine language](image)

**8051 C COMPILERS**

We saw in the above figure that a compiler is needed to convert programs written in 8051 C language into machine language, just as an assembler is needed in the case of programs written in assembly language. A compiler basically acts just like an assembler, except that it is more complex since the difference between C and machine language is far greater than that between assembly and machine language. Hence the compiler faces a greater task to bridge that difference.

Currently, there exist various 8051 C compilers, which offer almost similar functions. All our examples and programs have been compiled and tested with Keil's μ Vision 2 IDE by Keil Software, an integrated 8051 program development environment that includes its C51 cross compiler for C. A cross compiler is a compiler that normally runs on a platform such as IBM compatible PCs but is meant to compile programs into codes to be run on other platforms such as the 8051.

**DATA TYPES**

8051 C is very much like the conventional C language, except that several extensions and adaptations have been made to make it suitable for the 8051 programming environment. The first concern for the 8051 C programmer is the data types. Recall that a data type is something we use to store data. Readers will be familiar with the basic C data types such as int, char, and float, which are used to create variables to store integers, characters, or floating-points. In 8051 C, all the basic C data types are supported, plus a few additional data types meant to be used specifically with the 8051.

The following table gives a list of the common data types used in 8051 C. The ones in bold are the specific 8051 extensions. The data type **bit** can be used to declare variables that reside in the 8051's bit-addressable locations (namely byte locations 20H to 2FH or bit locations 00H to 7FH). Obviously, these bit variables can only store bit values of either 0 or 1. As an example, the following C statement:

```c
bit flag = 0;
```

declares a bit variable called `flag` and initializes it to 0.
Data types used in 8051 C language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data Type</th>
<th>Bits</th>
<th>Bytes</th>
<th>Value Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>bit</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 to 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed char</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-128 to +127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned char</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0 to 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enum</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-32768 to +32767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed short</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-32768 to +32767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0 to 65535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed int</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-32768 to +32767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned int</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0 to 65535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signed long</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0 to 4,294,967,295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>±1.175494E-38 to ±3.402823E+38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sbit</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0 to 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sfr</strong></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0 to 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sfr16</strong></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0 to 65535</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The data type **sbit** is somewhat similar to the bit data type, except that it is normally used to declare 1-bit variables that reside in special function registes (SFRs). For example:

```c
sbit P = 0xD0;
```

declares the **sbit** variable P and specifies that it refers to bit address D0H, which is really the LSB of the PSW SFR. Notice the difference here in the usage of the assignment ("=") operator. In the context of **sbit** declarations, it indicates what address the **sbit** variable resides in, while in **bit** declarations, it is used to specify the initial value of the **bit** variable.

Besides directly assigning a bit address to an **sbit** variable, we could also use a previously defined **sfr** variable as the base address and assign our **sbit** variable to refer to a certain bit within that **sfr**. For example:

```c
sfr PSW = 0xA8;
sbit P = PSW^0;
```

This declares an **sfr** variable called PSW that refers to the byte address D0H and then uses it as the base address to refer to its LSB (bit 0). This is then assigned to an **sbit** variable, P. For this purpose, the carat symbol (^) is used to specify bit position 0 of the PSW.

A third alternative uses a constant byte address as the base address within which a certain bit is referred. As an illustration, the previous two statements can be replaced with the following:

```c
sbit P = 0xD0 ^ 0;
```

Meanwhile, the **sfr** data type is used to declare byte (8-bit) variables that are associated with SFRs. The statement:

```c
sfr IE = 0xA8;
```

declares an **sfr** variable IE that resides at byte address A8H. Recall that this address is where the Interrupt Enable (IE) SFR is located; therefore, the **sfr** data type is just a means to enable us to assign names for SFRs so that it is easier to remember.

The **sfr16** data type is very similar to **sfr** but, while the **sfr** data type is used for 8-bit SFRs, **sfr16** is used for 16-bit SFRs. For example, the following statement:

```c
sfr16 DPTR = 0x82;
```
declares a 16-bit variable DPTR whose lower-byte address is at 82H. Checking through the 8051 architecture, we find that this is the address of the DPL SFR, so again, the `sfr16` data type makes it easier for us to refer to the SFRs by name rather than address. There's just one thing left to mention. When declaring `sbit`, `sfr`, or `sfr16` variables, remember to do so outside main, otherwise you will get an error.

In actual fact though, all the SFRs in the 8051, including the individual flag, status, and control bits in the bit-addressable SFRs have already been declared in an include file, called reg51.h, which comes packaged with most 8051 C compilers. By using reg51.h, we can refer for instance to the interrupt enable register as simply IE rather than having to specify the address A8H, and to the data pointer as DPTR rather than 82H. All this makes 8051 C programs more human-readable and manageable. The contents of reg51.h are listed below.

```c
/*--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
REG51.H
Header file for generic 8051 microcontroller.
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

/* BYTE Register */

sbit IE1 = 0x8B;
sbit IT1 = 0x8A;
sbit IE0 = 0x89;
sbit IT0 = 0x88;

sbit EA = 0xAF;
sbit ES = 0xAC;
sbit ET1 = 0xAB;
sbit EX1 = 0xAA;
sbit ET0 = 0xA9;
sbit EX0 = 0xA8;

/* IP */

sbit PS = 0xBC;
sbit PT1 = 0xBB;
sbit PX1 = 0xBA;
sbit PT0 = 0xB9;
sbit PX0 = 0xB8;

/* SCON */

sbit SM0 = 0x9F;
sbit SM1 = 0x9E;
sbit SM2 = 0x9D;
sbit REN = 0x9C;

sbit TB8 = 0x9B;
sbit RB8 = 0x9A;
sbit T1 = 0x99;
sbit RI = 0x98;

/* BIT Register */

/* PSW */

sbit CY = 0xD7;
sbit AC = 0xD6;
sbit F0 = 0xD5;

sbit RS1 = 0xD4;
sbit RS0 = 0xD3;
sbit OV = 0xD2;
sbit P = 0xD0;

/* TCON */

sbit TF1 = 0x8F;
sbit TR1 = 0x8E;
sbit TF0 = 0x8D;
sbit TR0 = 0x8C;
```
MEMORY TYPES AND MODELS

The 8051 has various types of memory space, including internal and external code and data memory. When declaring variables, it is hence reasonable to wonder in which type of memory those variables would reside. For this purpose, several memory type specifiers are available for use, as shown in following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Type</th>
<th>Description (Size)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>code</td>
<td>Code memory (64 Kbytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>data</td>
<td>Directly addressable internal data memory (128 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idata</td>
<td>Indirectly addressable internal data memory (256 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bdata</td>
<td>Bit-addressable internal data memory (16 bytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xdata</td>
<td>External data memory (64 Kbytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pdata</td>
<td>Paged external data memory (256 bytes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first memory type specifier given in above table is `code`. This is used to specify that a variable is to reside in code memory, which has a range of up to 64 Kbytes. For example:

```
char code error_msg[] = "An error occurred";
```

declares a char array called error_msg that resides in code memory.

If you want to put a variable into data memory, then use either of the remaining five data memory specifiers in above table. Though the choice rests on you, bear in mind that each type of data memory affect the speed of access and the size of available data memory. For instance, consider the following declarations:

```
signed int data num1;
bit bdata numbit;
unsigned int xdata num2;
```

The first statement creates a signed int variable num1 that resides in internal data memory (00H to 7FH). The next line declares a bit variable numbit that is to reside in the bit-addressable memory locations (byte addresses 20H to 2FH), also known as `bdata`. Finally, the last line declares an unsigned int variable called num2 that resides in external data memory, `xdata`. Having a variable located in the directly addressable internal data memory speeds up access considerably; hence, for programs that are time-critical, the variables should be of type `data`. For other variants such as 8052 with internal data memory up to 256 bytes, the `idata` specifier may be used. Note however that this is slower than data since it must use indirect addressing. Meanwhile, if you would rather have your variables reside in external memory, you have the choice of declaring them as `pdata` or `xdata`. A variable declared to be in `pdata` resides in the first 256 bytes (a page) of external memory, while if more storage is required, `xdata` should be used, which allows for accessing up to 64 Kbytes of external data memory.

What if when declaring a variable you forget to explicitly specify what type of memory it should reside in, or you wish that all variables are assigned a default memory type without having to specify them one by one? In this case, we make use of memory models. The following table lists the various memory models that you can use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Memory Model</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Variables default to the internal data memory (data)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact</td>
<td>Variables default to the first 256 bytes of external data memory (pdata)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large</td>
<td>Variables default to external data memory (xdata)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A program is explicitly selected to be in a certain memory model by using the C directive, #pragma. Otherwise, the default memory model is small. It is recommended that programs use the small memory model as it allows for the fastest possible access by defaulting all variables to reside in internal data memory.

The compact memory model causes all variables to default to the first page of external data memory while the large memory model causes all variables to default to the full external data memory range of up to 64 Kbytes.

ARRAYS

Often, a group of variables used to store data of the same type need to be grouped together for better readability. For example, the ASCII table for decimal digits would be as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decimal Digit</th>
<th>ASCII Code In Hex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>30H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>31H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>32H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>33H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>34H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>35H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>36H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>37H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>38H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>39H</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To store such a table in an 8051 C program, an array could be used. An array is a group of variables of the same data type, all of which could be accessed by using the name of the array along with an appropriate index.

The array to store the decimal ASCII table is:

```c
int table[10] = {0x30, 0x31, 0x32, 0x33, 0x34, 0x35, 0x36, 0x37, 0x38, 0x39};
```

Notice that all the elements of an array are separated by commas. To access an individual element, an index starting from 0 is used. For instance, table[0] refers to the first element while table[9] refers to the last element in this ASCII table.

STRUCTURES

Sometime it is also desired that variables of different data types but which are related to each other in some way be grouped together. For example, the name, age, and date of birth of a person would be stored in different types of variables, but all refer to the person's personal details. In such a case, a structure can be declared. A structure is a group of related variables that could be of different data types. Such a structure is declared by:

```c
struct person {
    char name;
    int age;
    long DOB;
};
```

Once such a structure has been declared, it can be used like a data type specifier to create structure variables that have the member's name, age, and DOB. For example:

```c
struct person grace = {"Grace", 22, 01311980};
```
would create a structure variable grace to store the name, age, and data of birth of a person called Grace. Then in order to access the specific members within the person structure variable, use the variable name followed by the dot operator (.) and the member name. Therefore, grace.name, grace.age, grace.DOB would refer to Grace's name, age, and data of birth, respectively.

**POINTERS**

When programming the 8051 in assembly, sometimes register such as R0, R1, and DPTR are used to store the addresses of some data in a certain memory location. When data is accessed via these registers, indirect addressing is used. In this case, we say that R0, R1, or DPTR are used to point to the data, so they are essentially pointers.

Correspondingly in C, indirect access of data can be done through specially defined pointer variables. Pointers are simply just special types of variables, but whereas normal variables are used to directly store data, pointer variables are used to store the addresses of the data. Just bear in mind that whether you use normal variables or pointer variables, you still get to access the data in the end. It is just whether you go directly to where it is stored and get the data, as in the case of normal variables, or first consult a directory to check the location of that data before going there to get it, as in the case of pointer variables.

Declaring a pointer follows the format:

```
data_type       *pointer_name;
```

where

- `data_type` refers to which type of data that the pointer is pointing to
- `*` denotes that this is a pointer variable
- `pointer_name` is the name of the pointer

As an example, the following declarations:

```
int    * numPtr;
int    num;
numPtr = &num;
```

first declares a pointer variable called numPtr that will be used to point to data of type int. The second declaration declares a normal variable and is put there for comparison. The third line assigns the address of the num variable to the numPtr pointer. The address of any variable can be obtained by using the address operator, & as is used in this example. Bear in mind that once assigned, the numPtr pointer contains the address of the num variable, not the value of its data.

The above example could also be rewritten such that the pointer is straightaway initialized with an address when it is first declared:

```
int    num;    
int    * numPtr = &num;
```

In order to further illustrate the difference between normal variables and pointer variables, consider the following, which is not a full C program but simply a fragment to illustrate our point:

```
int    num = 7;
int    * numPtr = &num;
printf ("%d\n", num);
printf ("%d\n", numPtr);
printf ("%d\n", &num);
printf ("%d\n", *numPtr);
```
The first line declare a normal variable, num, which is initialized to contain the data 7. Next, a pointer variable, numPtr, is declared, which is initialized to point to the address of num. The next four lines use the printf( ) function, which causes some data to be printed to some display terminal connected to the serial port. The first such line displays the contents of the num variable, which is in this case the value 7. The next displays the contents of the numPtr pointer, which is really some weird-looking number that is the address of the num variable. The third such line also displays the address of the num variable because the address operator is used to obtain num's address. The last line displays the actual data to which the numPtr pointer is pointing, which is 7. The * symbol is called the indirection operator, and when used with a pointer, indirectly obtains the data whose address is pointed to by the pointer. Therefore, the output display on the terminal would show:

```
7
13452  (or some other weird-looking number)
13452  (or some other weird-looking number)
7
```

A Pointer's Memory Type

Recall that pointers are also variables, so the question arises where they should be stored. When declaring pointers, we can specify different types of memory areas that these pointers should be in, for example:

```
int    * xdata numPtr = & num;
```

This is the same as our previous pointer examples. We declare a pointer numPtr, which points to data of type int stored in the num variable. The difference here is the use of the memory type specifier xdata after the *. This is specifies that pointer numPtr should reside in external data memory (xdata), and we say that the pointer's memory type is xdata.

Typed Pointers

We can go even further when declaring pointers. Consider the example:

```
int    data * xdata   numPtr = #
```

The above statement declares the same pointer numPtr to reside in external data memory (xdata), and this pointer points to data of type int that is itself stored in the variable num in internal data memory (data). The memory type specifier, data, before the * specifies the data memory type while the memory type specifier, xdata, after the * specifies the pointer memory type.

Pointer declarations where the data memory types are explicitly specified are called typed pointers. Typed pointers have the property that you specify in your code where the data pointed by pointers should reside. The size of typed pointers depends on the data memory type and could be one or two bytes.

Untyped Pointers

When we do not explicitly state the data memory type when declaring pointers, we get untyped pointers, which are generic pointers that can point to data residing in any type of memory. Untyped pointers have the advantage that they can be used to point to any data independent of the type of memory in which the data is stored. All untyped pointers consist of 3 bytes, and are hence larger than typed pointers. Untyped pointers are also generally slower because the data memory type is not determined or known until the compiled program is run at runtime. The first byte of untyped pointers refers to the data memory type, which is simply a number according to the following table. The second and third bytes are, respectively, the higher-order and lower-order bytes of the address being pointed to.

An untyped pointer is declared just like normal C, where:

```
int    * xdata numPtr = & num;
```

does not explicitly specify the memory type of the data pointed to by the pointer. In this case, we are using untyped pointers.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Data Memory Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>idata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>xdata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>pdata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>data/bdata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUNCTIONS**

In programming the 8051 in assembly, we learnt the advantages of using subroutines to group together common and frequently used instructions. The same concept appears in 8051 C, but instead of calling them subroutines, we call them functions. As in conventional C, a function must be declared and defined. A function definition includes a list of the number and types of inputs, and the type of the output (return type), plus a description of the internal contents, or what is to be done within that function.

The format of a typical function definition is as follows:

```c
return_type    function_name (arguments)    [memory]  [reentrant]  [interrupt]  [using]  
{  
    ...  
}  
```

where

- `return_type` refers to the data type of the return (output) value
- `function_name` is any name that you wish to call the function as
- `arguments` is the list of the type and number of input (argument) values
- `memory` refers to an explicit memory model (small, compact or large)
- `reentrant` refers to whether the function is reentrant (recursive)
- `interrupt` indicates that the function is actually an ISR
- `using` explicitly specifies which register bank to use

Consider a typical example, a function to calculate the sum of two numbers:

```c
int  sum (int a, int b)  
{  
    return  a + b;  
}  
```

This function is called sum and takes in two arguments, both of type int. The return type is also int, meaning that the output (return value) would be an int. Within the body of the function, delimited by braces, we see that the return value is basically the sum of the two arguments. In our example above, we omitted explicitly specifying the options: memory, reentrant, interrupt, and using. This means that the arguments passed to the function would be using the default small memory model, meaning that they would be stored in internal data memory. This function is also by default non-recursive and a normal function, not an ISR. Meanwhile, the default register bank is bank 0.

**Parameter Passing**

In 8051 C, parameters are passed to and from functions and used as function arguments (inputs). Nevertheless, the technical details of where and how these parameters are stored are transparent to the programmer, who does not need to worry about these technicalities. In 8051 C, parameters are passed through the register or through memory. Passing parameters through registers is faster and is the default way in which things are done. The registers used and their purpose are described in more detail below.
Registers used in parameter passing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Argument</th>
<th>Char / 1-Byte Pointer</th>
<th>INT / 2-Byte Pointer</th>
<th>Long/Float</th>
<th>Generic Pointer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>R6 &amp; R7</td>
<td>R4–R7</td>
<td>R1–R3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>R5</td>
<td>R4 &amp; R5</td>
<td>R4–R7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>R2 &amp; R3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Since there are only eight registers in the 8051, there may be situations where we do not have enough registers for parameter passing. When this happens, the remaining parameters can be passed through fixed memory locations. To specify that all parameters will be passed via memory, the NOREGPARMS control directive is used. To specify the reverse, use the REGPARMS control directive.

Return Values

Unlike parameters, which can be passed by using either registers or memory locations, output values must be returned from functions via registers. The following table shows the registers used in returning different types of values from functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return Type</th>
<th>Register</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bit</td>
<td>Carry Flag (C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char/unsigned char/1-byte pointer</td>
<td>R7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int/unsigned int/2-byte pointer</td>
<td>R6 &amp; R7</td>
<td>MSB in R6, LSB in R7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long/unsigned long</td>
<td>R4–R7</td>
<td>MSB in R4, LSB in R7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>R4–R7</td>
<td>32-bit IEEE format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generic pointer</td>
<td>R1–R3</td>
<td>Memory type in R3, MSB in R2, LSB in R1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix C: STC12C5410AD series Electrical Characteristics

### Absolute Maximum Ratings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Min</th>
<th>Max</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage temperature</td>
<td>TST</td>
<td>-55</td>
<td>+125</td>
<td>°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating temperature (I)</td>
<td>TA</td>
<td>-40</td>
<td>+85</td>
<td>°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating temperature (C)</td>
<td>TA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>+70</td>
<td>°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC power supply (5V)</td>
<td>VDD - VSS</td>
<td>-0.3</td>
<td>+6.0</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC power supply (3V)</td>
<td>VDD - VSS</td>
<td>-0.3</td>
<td>+4.0</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage on any pin</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-0.5</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DC Specification (5V MCU)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sym</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Test Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Typ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDD</td>
<td>Operating Voltage</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipd</td>
<td>Power Down Current</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>&lt;0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idl</td>
<td>Idle Current</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icc</td>
<td>Operating Current</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIL1</td>
<td>Input Low Voltage (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIL2</td>
<td>Input Low Voltage (RESET, XTAL1)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIH1</td>
<td>Input High Voltage (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIH2</td>
<td>Input High Voltage (RESET)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iol1</td>
<td>Sink Current for output low (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ioh1</td>
<td>Sourcing Current for output high (P0,P1,P2,P3) (Quasi-output)</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ioh2</td>
<td>Sourcing Current for output high (P0,P1,P2,P3) (Push-Pull, Strong-output)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIL</td>
<td>Logic 0 input current (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFL</td>
<td>Logic 1 to 0 transition current (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## DC Specification (3V MCU)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sym</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Test Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Min.</td>
<td>Typ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V_{DD}</td>
<td>Operating Voltage</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{PD}</td>
<td>Power Down Current</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>&lt;0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{IDL}</td>
<td>Idle Current</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{CC}</td>
<td>Operating Current</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V_{IL1}</td>
<td>Input Low (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V_{IL2}</td>
<td>Input low voltage (RESET,XTAL1)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V_{BH1}</td>
<td>Input High (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V_{BH2}</td>
<td>Input High (RESET)</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{OL1}</td>
<td>Sink Current for output low (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{OH1}</td>
<td>Sourcing Current for output high (P0,P1,P2,P3) (Quasi-output)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{OH2}</td>
<td>Sourcing Current for output high (P0,P1,P2,P3) (Push-Pull)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{IL}</td>
<td>Logic 0 input current (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_{TL}</td>
<td>Logic 1 to 0 transition current (P0,P1,P2,P3)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix D: Program for indirect addressing inner 256B RAM

;----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
; /* --- STC MCU International Limited -------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- STC 1T Series MCU the inner 256B normal RAM (indirect addressing) Demo --------------------------------*/
; /* --- Mobile: (86)13922809991 -----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Fax: 86-755-82905966 ---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Tel: 86-755-82948412 ---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* --- Web: www.STCMCU.com ---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/
; /* If you want to use the program or the program referenced in the article, please specify in which data and procedures from STC*/
; /*---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------*/

TEST_CONST EQU 5AH
;TEST_RAM EQU 03H
ORG 0000H
LJMP INITIAL
ORG 0050H
INITIAL:
   MOV R0, #253
   MOV R1, #3H
TEST_ALL_RAM:
   MOV R2, #0FFH
   TEST_ONE_RAM:
   MOV A, R2
   MOV @R1, A
   CLR A
   MOV A, @R1
   CJNE A, 2H, ERROR_DISPLAY
   DJNZ R2, TEST_ONE_RAM
   INC R1
   DJNZ R0, TEST_ALL_RAM
OK_DISPLAY:
   MOV P1, #11111110B
   Wait1:
   SJMP Wait1
ERROR_DISPLAY:
   MOV A, R1
   MOV P1, A
Wait2:
   SJMP Wait2
END
Appendix E: Using Serial port expand I/O interface

STC12C5410AD series MCU serial port mode0 can be used for expand IO if UART is free in your application. UART Mode0 is a synchronous shift register, the baudrate is fixed at fosc/12, RXD pin (P3.0) is the data I/O port, and TXD pin (P3.1) is clock output port, data width is 8 bits, always sent / received the lowest bit at first.

(1) Using 74HC165 expand parallel input ports

Please refer to the following circuit which using 2 pcs 74HC165 to expand 16 input I/Os

74HC165 is a 8-bit parallel input shift register, when S/L (Shift/Load) pin is falling to low level, the parallel port data is read into internal register, and now, if S/L is raising to high and ClockDisable pin (15 pin) is low level, then clock signal from CP pin is enable. At this time register data will be output from the Dh pin (9 pin) with the clock input.

```
... MOV R7,#05H ;read 5 groups data
    MOV R0,#20H ;set buffer address
START: CLR P1.0 ;S/L = 0, load port data
    SETB P1.0 ;S/L = 1, lock data and enable clock
    MOV R1,#02H ;2 bytes per group
    RXDAT:MOV SCON,#00010000B       ;set serial as mode 0 and enable receive data
    WAIT: JNB RI,WAIT ;wait for receive complete
            CLR RI ;clear receive complete flag
            MOV A,SBUF ;read data to ACC
            MOV @R0,A ;save data to buffer
            INC R0 ;modify buffer ptr
            DJNZ R1,RXDAT ;read next byte
            DJNZ R7,START ;read next group
...```

(2) Using 74HC164 expand parallel output ports

Please refer to the following circuit which using 2 pcs 74HC164 to expand 16 output I/Os

When serial port is working in MODE0, the serial data is input/output from RXD(P3.0) pin and serial clock is output from TXD(P3.1). Serial data is always starting transmission from the lowest bit.

```
START:  MOV R7,#02H        ;output 2 bytes data
         MOV R0,#30H        ;set buffer address
         MOV SCON,#00000000B ;set serial as mode 0
SEND:   MOV A,@R0         ;read data from buffer
         MOV SBUF,A        ;start send data
WAIT:   JNB TI,WAIT      ;wait for send complete
         CLR TI           ;clear send complete flag
         INC R0           ;modify buffer ptr
         DJNZ R7,SEND     ;send next data
         …
```
Appendix F: Use STC MCU common I/O driving LCD Display
NAME LcdDriver

#include<reg52.h>

;********************************************************************************
;the LCD is 1/3 duty and 1/3 bias; 3Com*24Seg; 9 display RAM;
;
;Com0:  Com0Data0:   Seg7 Seg6 Seg5 Seg4 Seg3 Seg2 Seg1 Seg0
;       Com0Data1:   Seg15 Seg14 Seg13 Seg12 Seg11 Seg10 Seg9 Seg8
;       Com0Data2:   Seg23 Seg22 Seg21 Seg20 Seg19 Seg18 Seg17 Seg16
;Com1:  Com1Data0:   Seg7 Seg6 Seg5 Seg4 Seg3 Seg2 Seg1 Seg0
;       Com1Data1:   Seg15 Seg14 Seg13 Seg12 Seg11 Seg10 Seg9 Seg8
;       Com1Data2:   Seg23 Seg22 Seg21 Seg20 Seg19 Seg18 Seg17 Seg16
;Com2:  Com2Data0:   Seg7 Seg6 Seg5 Seg4 Seg3 Seg2 Seg1 Seg0
;       Com2Data1:   Seg15 Seg14 Seg13 Seg12 Seg11 Seg10 Seg9 Seg8
;       Com2Data2:   Seg23 Seg22 Seg21 Seg20 Seg19 Seg18 Seg17 Seg16

;********************************************************************************
;Com0:   P3^0,P3^1  when P3^0 = P3^1 = 1        then Com0=VCC(=5V);
;       P3^0 = P3^1 = 0        then Com0=GND(=0V);
;       P3^0 = 1, P3^1=0      then Com0=1/2 VCC;
;Com1:  P3^2,P3^3   the same as the Com0
;Com2:  P3^4,P3^5   the same as the Com0

sbit  SEG0  =P0^0
sbit  SEG1  =P0^1
sbit  SEG2  =P0^2
sbit  SEG3  =P0^3
sbit  SEG4  =P0^4
sbit  SEG5  =P0^5
sbit  SEG6  =P0^6
sbit  SEG7  =P0^7
sbit  SEG8  =P1^0
sbit  SEG9  =P1^1
sbit  SEG10 =P1^2
sbit SEG11 = P1^3
sbit SEG12 = P1^4
sbit SEG13 = P1^5
sbit SEG14 = P1^6
sbit SEG15 = P1^7
sbit SEG16 = P2^0
sbit SEG17 = P2^1
sbit SEG18 = P2^2
sbit SEG19 = P2^3
sbit SEG20 = P2^4
sbit SEG21 = P2^5
sbit SEG22 = P2^6
sbit SEG23 = P2^7

;===============================================

;=======Interrupt=================================

CSEG AT 0000H
LJMP start

CSEG AT 000BH
LJMP int_t0

;=======register=================================

lcdd_bit SEGMENT BIT
  RSEG lcdd_bit
  OutFlag:   DBIT 1    ;the output display reverse flag

lcdd_data SEGMENT DATA
  RSEG lcdd_data
  Com0Data0:   DS  1
  Com0Data1:   DS  1
  Com0Data2:   DS  1
  Com1Data0:   DS  1
  Com1Data1:   DS  1
  Com1Data2:   DS  1
  Com2Data0:   DS  1
  Com2Data1:   DS  1
  Com2Data2:   DS  1
  TimeS:       DS  1
;=========Interrupt Code======================================
t0_int SEGMENT CODE
    RSEG t0_int
    USING 1

;*****************************************************************
;Time0 interrupt
;the system crystalloid is 22.1184MHz
;the time to get the Time0 interrupt is 2.5mS
;the whole duty is 2.5mS*6=15mS, including reverse
;*****************************************************************
int_t0:
    ORL TL0,#00H
    MOV TH0,#0EEH
    PUSH ACC
    PUSH PSW
    MOV PSW,#08H
    ACALL OutData
    POP PSW
    POP ACC
    RETI

;========SUB CODE==============================================
uart_sub SEGMENT CODE
    RSEG uart_sub
    USING 0

;*****************************************************************
;initial the display RAM data
;if want to display other, then you may add other data to this RAM
;Com0: Com0Data0, Com0Data1, Com0Data2
;Com1: Com1Data0, Com1Data1, Com1Data2
;Com2: Com2Data0, Com2Data1, Com2Data2
;*****************************************************************
InitComData: ;it will display "11111111"
    MOV Com0Data0, #24H
    MOV Com0Data1, #49H
    MOV Com0Data2, #92H
MOV Com1Data0, #92H
MOV Com1Data1, #24H
MOV Com1Data2, #49H
MOV Com2Data0, #00H
MOV Com2Data1, #00H
MOV Com2Data2, #00H
RET

;******************************
;reverse the display data
;******************************
RetComData:
    MOV R0, #Com0Data0
    MOV R7, #9
RetCom_0:
    MOV A, @R0
    CPL A
    MOV @R0, A
    INC R0
    DJNZ R7, RetCom_0
    RET

;******************************
;get the display Data and send to Output register
;******************************
OutData:
    INC TimeS
    MOV A, TimeS
    MOV P3, #11010101B
    CJNE A, #01H, OutData_1
    MOV P0, Com0Data0
    MOV P1, Com0Data1
    MOV P2, Com0Data2
    JNB OutFlag,OutData_00
    MOV P3, #11010111B
    RET
    OutData_1:
    MOV P0, Com0Data0
    MOV P1, Com0Data1
    MOV P2, Com0Data2
    JNB OutFlag,OutData_00
    MOV P3, #11010111B
    RET
    OutData_00:
OutData_00:
    MOV P3, #11010100B ;Com0 is work and is GND
    RET

OutData_1:
    CJNE A, #02H,OutData_2
    MOV P0, Com1Data0
    MOV P1, Com1Data1
    MOV P2, Com1Data2
    JNB OutFlag,OutData_10
    MOV P3, #11011101B ;Com1 is work and is VCC
    RET

OutData_10:
    MOV P3, #11010001B ;Com1 is work and is GND
    RET

OutData_2:
    MOV P0, Com2Data0
    MOV P1, Com2Data1
    MOV P2, Com2Data2
    JNB OutFlag,OutData_20
    MOV P3, #11110101B ;Com2 is work and is VCC
    SJMP OutData_21

OutData_20:
    MOV P3,#11000101B ;Com2 is work and is GND

OutData_21:
    MOV TimeS, #00H
    ACALL RetComData
    CPL OutFlag
    RET

;======Main Code=================================

uart_main SEGMENT CODE
    RSEG uart_main
    USING 0
start:

```
MOV SP,#40H
CLR OutFlag
MOV TimeS,#00H
MOV TL0,#00H
MOV TH0,#0EEH
MOV TMOD,#01H
MOV IE,#82H
ACALL InitComData
SETB TR0
```

Main:

```
NOP
SJMP Main
```

END
Appendix G: LED driven by an I/O port and Key Scan

It can save a lot of I/O ports that STC12C5410AD MCU I/O ports can used as the LED drivers and key detection concurrently because of their feature which they can be set to the weak pull, the strong pull (push-pull) output, only input (high impedance), open drain four modes.

When driving the LED, the I/O port should be set as strongly push-pull output, and the LED will be lighted when the output is high.

When testing the keys, the I/O port should be set as weak pull input, and then reading the status of external ports can test the keys.
Appendix H: How to reduce the Length of Code through Keil C

Setting as shown below in Keil C can maximum reduce about 10K to the length of original code

1. Choose the "Options for Target" in "Project" menu
2. Choose the option "C51" in "Options for Target"

3. Code Optimization, 9 common block subroutines
4. Click "OK", compile the program once again.
Appendix I: Notes of STC12C5410AD series Application

About reset circuit
If the system frequency is below 12MHz, the external reset circuit is not required. Reset pin can be connected to ground through the 1K resistor or can be connected directly to ground. The proposal to create PCB to retain RC reset circuit.

About Clock oscillator
If you need to use internal RC oscillator (4MHz ~ 8MHz because of manufacturing error and temperature drift), XTAL1 pin and XTAL2 pin must be floating. If you use a external active crystal oscillator, clock signal input from XTAL1 pin and XTAL2 pin floating.

About power
Power at both ends need to add a 47uF electrolytic capacitor and a 0.1uF capacitor, to remove the coupling and filtering.
Appendix J: Notes of STC12 series Replaced Traditional 8051

STC12C5410AD series MCU Timer0/Timer1/UART is fully compatible with the traditional 8051 MCU. After power on reset, the default input clock source is the divider 12 of system clock frequency, and UART baudrate generator is Timer 1. MCU instruction execution speed is faster than the traditional 8051 MCU 8 ~ 12 times in the same working environment, so software delay programs need to be adjusted.

ALE
Traditional 8051's ALE pin output signal on divide 6 the system clock frequency can be externally provided clock, if disable ALE output in STC12C5410AD series system, you can get clock source from CLKOUT0/P1.0, CLKOUT1/P1.1 or XTAL2 clock output. (Recommended a 200ohm series resistor to the XTAL2 pin). ALE pin is an disturbance source when traditional 8051's system clock frequency is too high. STC89xx series MCU add ALEOFF bit in AUXR register. While STC12C5410AD series MCU directly disable ALE pin dividing 6 the system clock output, and can remove ALE disturbance thoroughly. Please compare the following two registers.

AUXR register of STC89xx series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Add</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Bit7</th>
<th>Bit6</th>
<th>Bit5</th>
<th>Bit4</th>
<th>Bit3</th>
<th>Bit2</th>
<th>Bit1</th>
<th>Bit0</th>
<th>Reset Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>Auxiliary register 0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>EXTRAM</td>
<td>ALEOFF</td>
<td>xxx,xxxx00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AUXR register of STC12C5410AD series

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mnemonic</th>
<th>Add</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Bit7</th>
<th>Bit6</th>
<th>Bit5</th>
<th>Bit4</th>
<th>Bit3</th>
<th>Bit2</th>
<th>Bit1</th>
<th>Bit0</th>
<th>Reset Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUXR</td>
<td>8EH</td>
<td>Auxiliary register</td>
<td>T0x12</td>
<td>T1x12</td>
<td>UART M0x6</td>
<td>EADC1</td>
<td>SPI</td>
<td>ELVDI</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>000x,xxxx</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PSEN
Traditional 8051 execute external program through the PSEN signal, STC12C5410AD series is system MCU concept, integrated high-capacity internal program memory, do not need external program memory expansion generally, so have no PSEN signal, PSEN pin can be used as GPIO.

General Quasi-Bidirectional I/O
Traditional 8051 access I/O (signal transition or read status) timing is 12 clocks, STC12C5410AD series MCU is 4 clocks. When you need to read an external signal, if internal output a rising edge signal, for the traditional 8051, this process is 12 clocks, you can read at once, but for STC12C5410AD series MCU, this process is 4 clocks, when internal instructions is complete but external signal is not ready, so you must delay 1~2 nop operation.

I/O drive capability
STC12C5410AD series I/O port sink drive current is 20mA, has a strong drive capability, the port is not burn out when drive high current generally. STC89 series I/O port sink drive current is only 6mA, is not enough to drive high current. For the high current drive applications, it is strongly recommended to use STC12C5410AD series MCU.

Power consumption
Power consumption consists of two parts: crystal oscillator amplifier circuits and digital circuits. For crystal oscillator amplifier circuits, STC12C5410AD series is lower then STC89 series. For digital circuits, the higher clock frequency, the greater the power consumption. STC12C5410AD series MCU instruction execution speed is faster than the STC89 series MCU 3~24 times in the same working environment, so if you need to achieve the same efficiency, STC12C5410AD series required frequency is lower than STC89 series MCU.